

---

**ORDINARY MEETING**

**OF**

**ENVIRONMENT COMMITTEE**

**AGENDA**

**Time:** 9.15am  
**Date:** Thursday, 4 June 2015  
**Venue:** Committee Room 1  
Ground Floor, Council Offices  
101 Wakefield Street  
Wellington

---

**MEMBERSHIP**

Mayor Wade-Brown

Councillor Ahipene-Mercer  
Councillor Foster  
Councillor Free  
Councillor Lee  
Councillor Pannett (Chair)  
Councillor Ritchie  
Councillor Sparrow

**Have your say!**

*You can make a short presentation to the Councillors at this meeting. Please let us know by noon the working day before the meeting. You can do this either by phoning 803-8334, emailing [public.participation@wcc.govt.nz](mailto:public.participation@wcc.govt.nz) or writing to Democratic Services, Wellington City Council, PO Box 2199, Wellington, giving your name, phone number and the issue you would like to talk about.*

---

## **AREA OF FOCUS**

The Committee will focus on climate change initiatives, enhancing the city's open spaces, protecting biodiversity in plant, bird and animal life, and ensuring there are high quality outdoor areas for residents and visitors to enjoy. The committee is also responsible for waste minimisation, energy efficiency and the three waters (drinking water, stormwater and wastewater).

**Quorum:** 4 members

---

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**  
**4 JUNE 2015**

---

<b>Business</b>	<b>Page No.</b>
<b>1. Meeting Conduct</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.1 Apologies</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.2 Conflict of Interest Declarations</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.3 Confirmation of Minutes</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.4 Public Participation</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1.5 Items not on the Agenda</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>2. Strategy</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>2.1 Our Natural Capital: Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>3. Policy</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>3.1 Submission on New Zealand's Climate Change Target</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>4. Monitoring</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>4.1 Reports from Council Controlled Organisations for the Quarter Ending 31 March 2015</b>	<b>125</b>
<b>4.2 Final 2015/16 Statements of Intent for Council Controlled Organisations</b>	<b>197</b>
<b>4.3 2014/15 Third Quarter Report</b>	<b>275</b>
<b>5. Operational</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>5.1 Victoria Street Transformation - Park Naming</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>5.2 Forward Programme 2015</b>	<b>301</b>



## **1 Meeting Conduct**

### **1.1 Apologies**

The Chairperson invites notice from members of apologies, including apologies for lateness and early departure from the meeting, where leave of absence has not previously been granted.

### **1.2 Conflict of Interest Declarations**

Members are reminded of the need to be vigilant to stand aside from decision making when a conflict arises between their role as a member and any private or other external interest they might have.

### **1.3 Confirmation of Minutes**

The minutes of the meeting held on 23 April 2015 will be put to the Environment Committee for confirmation.

### **1.4 Public Participation**

A maximum of 60 minutes is set aside for public participation at the commencement of any meeting of the Council or committee that is open to the public. Under Standing Order 3.23.3 a written, oral or electronic application to address the meeting setting forth the subject, is required to be lodged with the Chief Executive by 12.00 noon of the working day prior to the meeting concerned, and subsequently approved by the Chairperson.

### **1.5 Items not on the Agenda**

The Chairperson will give notice of items not on the agenda as follows:

#### ***Matters Requiring Urgent Attention as Determined by Resolution of the Environment Committee.***

1. The reason why the item is not on the agenda; and
2. The reason why discussion of the item cannot be delayed until a subsequent meeting.

#### ***Minor Matters relating to the General Business of the Environment Committee.***

No resolution, decision, or recommendation may be made in respect of the item except to refer it to a subsequent meeting of the Environment Committee for further discussion.



---

## **2. Strategy**

---

# **OUR NATURAL CAPITAL: WELLINGTON'S BIODIVERSITY STRATEGY AND ACTION PLAN**

---

### **Purpose**

1. To seek Environment Committee approval for the final Our Natural Capital: Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan following public consultation.

### **Summary**

2. The draft Our Natural Capital: Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan was approved for public consultation by the Environment Committee on 16 December 2014. Public consultation took place between 22 January and 6 March 2015. 52 submissions were received. 26 submitters made an oral submission to the Environment Committee on 19 March 2015.
3. 91% supported or strongly supported the general direction, and 87% supported or strongly supported the guiding principles, goals and outcomes, 81% thought we had identified the right priorities, 89% thought we had identified the right organisations to work with, 73% thought we had identified the biggest issues facing our indigenous biodiversity.
4. A number of amendments have been made to the plan to provide clarity and ensure that we have appropriately covered all the major issues facing our indigenous biodiversity. The structure of the document has also been altered to make it more readable.
5. The paper contains an analysis of the submissions, and recommended changes to the strategy and action plan as a result.

### **Recommendations**

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.
2. Recommend that the strategy and action plan included as Attachment One be adopted as Council strategy.
3. Agree to delegate to the Environment Portfolio Leader the authority to make any changes to the Our Natural Capital: Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan required as a result of decisions of the Environment Committee, as well as minor editorial amendments.

### **Background**

6. Wellington was once cloaked in forest. Trees such as northern rata, with its bright red flowers, would have been a common sight. Rich wetlands were supported by streams with abundant eel and other native fish and insects. Weka cruised along the rocky coastline, and large numbers of little blue penguin emerged from the surf each night. The harbour was visited by whales, dolphins and porpoises.

7. Today there is 5% of original lowland forest and 1% of original coastal forest left. However, through Council and community efforts, we are actively managing our natural environment and restoring this biodiversity to Wellington. Restoration planting programmes focus on ecological needs; tui, kereru and kaka have become a regular sight and sound in Wellington, and along with saddleback, kakariki and North Island robin are breeding on mainland New Zealand, some for the first time in over 100 years.
8. In the future, as a result the implementation of Our Natural Capital – Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan, we will see populations of threatened and locally significant species growing, native flora and fauna thriving and dispersing to enable the restoration of the City's wider habitats. Other organisations will come to Wellington for advice on how to manage indigenous biodiversity in an urban context and Wellingtonians will be connected to nature. Wellington will be a renowned destination for international and domestic visitors because of its amazing combination of nature within a vibrant city.
9. Wellington City Council protects indigenous biodiversity as part of its role under the Resource Management Act (RMA) 1991 and to give effect to the Regional Policy Statement for the Wellington Region.
10. On 6 August 2014 the Environment Committee was informed of Biodiversity Action Plan (2007) review and the intention to bring a draft plan back to them for approval prior to consultation.
11. There was extensive pre-consultation during the development of the draft. Information gathered in past workshops through the Environment Forum (2013) and the development of Our Capital Spaces (2013) was used in the review of the plan. During the period of August – November 2014 there was also specific consultation with key stakeholder groups.
12. The draft Our Natural Capital: Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan was approved for public consultation by the Environment Committee on 16 December 2014. Public consultation took place between 22 January and 6 March 2015.
13. Consultation comprised:
  - Media releases
  - Council website
  - An email notification to key stakeholders including volunteer groups, governmental organisations and NGO's and residents associations.
  - Distribution of the draft plan and a summary document to libraries and Service Centre
  - Correspondence and meetings with the Council's Treaty Partners.
14. 52 submissions were received. 26 submitters made an oral submission to the Environment Committee on 19 March 2015.
15. Since public submissions, officers have met with the Environmental Reference Group and other submitters to clarify submissions and discuss proposed changes for the final plan.

## **Discussion**

16. There was strong support (91%) for the overall direction of the management plan.
17. Most submitters felt we had identified the right priorities and the biggest issues facing our indigenous biodiversity. Submitters were supportive of the focus on connecting with people as an integral part of the strategy, as well as the increased focus on research and monitoring.

18. While some submitters felt the document was readable, others felt that it was hard to follow. As a result, the structure has been altered to create a more obvious flow. The front part of the document can now be read to give a comprehensive account of where the Council is headed with its biodiversity objectives. The section on Wellington's biodiversity has been incorporated into the section now titled 'Wellington's Biodiversity Journey', which avoids repetition and sets the scene for our actions. This section now clearly outlines where we have come from, where we are now and where we see ourselves in the future.
19. The second half of the document still contains the detail around the action plan and the rationale behind each of the four themes. The introduction into this section has been renamed and reworded to more clearly state its purpose. Some maps have been deleted as submitters felt they didn't add any useful information, and others were put in the appendix.
20. The vision statement has been simplified and contains the goals, which clarifies what we want this document to achieve and further reduces sections and needless repetition. The summary and introduction have been rewritten to clarify the intent of the plan at the beginning of the document.
21. The role of the strategy and action plan in relation to exotic biodiversity has been clarified, by stating that "the protection of biodiversity not native to Wellington is not addressed in this strategy except where exotic species are currently protecting indigenous values such as providing habitat or shelter or can be used as a mechanism to connect people with nature."
22. A number of submitters raised the exclusion of the **marine environment** from the plan, in particular Tapu Te Ranga Marine reserve. Mention of the marine reserve has now been increased within the document where relevant, and the marine environment more openly acknowledged. Council's role with regards to the marine environment has been clarified with a new appendix detailing policy context and clarification that Council's role in the marine environment is in terms of advocacy and negating land based effects. .
23. Other submissions were concerning the lack of focus and strong statements around protecting our **freshwater ecosystems**. The sections on freshwater have been augmented (particularly our response to the threats to freshwater systems) and more information included on restoring our waterways, including three new guidelines stating there should be no further loss of natural streams within Wellington City; that the impact of land based activities on our freshwater and marine ecosystems should be recognised and addressed through all Council projects and that all Council projects should follow the principles of Water Sensitive Urban Design. Small urban streams have also received more acknowledgement. New actions under streams are to "Identify and prioritise streams that should be restored from their current state"; "Support or seek funding with agencies such as Million Metre Streams, supporting community groups to apply for funding via these organisations" and "Work with local farmers to fence and plant riparian areas on their land."
24. A new concept plan (Community Catchments) has also been introduced to increase the focus on catchments and freshwater systems, as well as bring in community based initiatives. This allowed some of the stream focus to be moved from Blue Belt to the new concept plan to make the focus of each clearer.
25. There was strong support for a focus on **pest management**. New paragraphs have been added to outline our approach to prioritising sites and species for control. Some submitters felt that pest management should be a separate section; however officer's advice is to retain it in its current location as it is one of a number of threats and needs to be considered in conjunction with these. The strategy as it stands gives enough

direction to create the pest management implementation plan. There has also been a new long term action added as a result of submissions to “Work with other stakeholders to explore the possibility of making Miramar Peninsula pest free” and an action to recognise current work - “Ensure that animal pest control within a buffer zone around Zealandia is sufficient to allow for successful breeding”.

26. A number of submitters wanted an increased focus on **cat management**. In addition to the current actions around reviewing the animal control bylaw and running awareness and education programmes, a new action is to “investigate subsidising microchipping of cats near sensitive wildlife areas as a voluntary approach”.
27. A number of submitters raised the issue of **herbicides and chemical use**. As a result we have amended and added the following guidelines – “While recognising the necessity of toxin and chemical use, alternatives such as biocontrol, new technologies, and bait station placement will be considered to gradually reduce the amount of toxins and chemicals entering the environment.” And “Chemical and toxin free approaches will be promoted where practicable, such as in small urban backyards.” Also included is a new action to “Work with the community to explore options for chemical free pest control and recommend chemical free approaches for small scale operations”.
28. Many submitters felt the protection of **biodiversity on private land** was a crucial part of achieving our objectives. No changes to the plan were required as concerns will be addressed through current actions for a review of the Conservation Sites in the District Plan and ensuring that changes to the District Plan adequately protect biodiversity values.
29. Submitters also felt that the **impacts of development** were one of the biggest issues facing biodiversity in Wellington (along with pest management as already discussed). The section of the document discussing Council’s response to threats posed by development (habitat loss, fragmentation and aquatic ecosystem degradation) has been expanded, ensuring Council’s infrastructure practices reduce the impact on our biodiversity, including the issue of lighting in sensitive wildlife areas, more commentary on integrated catchment management planning and the GWRC Whaitua process and highlighting the need to integrate Council’s water sensitive urban design guidelines into all relevant Council plans and policies.
30. There were submissions both for and against actions regarding criteria for track development and restricting development in sensitive areas. Conservation groups support the need for criteria and restrictions and mountain bikers felt their contribution wasn’t acknowledged in a positive way. Mountain biking now has received increased acknowledgement in the role it plays with connecting people to nature and the need to ensure people have access to nature. While the action for developing criteria for trail development is still included, it has been amended and it now clearly states that stakeholders (mountain bikers, walkers and conservation groups) will be involved in the process.
31. The main recommendations for the Restore section were on giving planting **guidance to community groups** and the general public. New actions are to “Develop and publish plant lists and guides for zones around Wellington (based on species that originally grew there) so people can be informed about the appropriate species to plant”; “Work with community partners to establish a teaching garden to educate people on the difference between similar plant species (both weed and native)” and to “Facilitate the coordination between community environmental groups, including potential mergers, to ensure a sustainable community contribution to conservation.”
32. Submitters were supportive of the Council’s proposed role in **research and monitoring** to enable us to effectively meet our goals. This section has been revised

to more clearly communicate the Council's role and to link our monitoring programme into the performance measures. Other research (which has been included under the action plan) requested by submitters is on the microhabitat requirements of threatened plant species (including monitoring their survival after planting); monitoring the abundance and distribution of high threat pest plants on public land. There was also feedback from submitters on their desire to see more native tree species planted as specimen and street trees. A further action has been added to assist the Council in achieving this - "Carry out research on indigenous tree species to determine suitability for specimen and street tree planting".

33. The section on Measuring our Performance has been rewritten to show the City Biodiversity Index in terms of output and outcome measurements. The section on targets has been increased and enhanced to more clearly communicate our operational monitoring as described in the plan. This has strengthened the link between measuring our performance and the objectives in the action plan. It also shows clearly where we have come from since the first Council biodiversity plan (2007) and what our targets are for the future (2020).
34. A further concern of submitters was to **integrate this strategy across Council** and make sure that decisions within Council give effect to it. To address this concern, a new action has been added to "add requirement for 'consideration of impact on indigenous biodiversity' to Council report templates" to give it a similar cross-Council significance to climate change, as both underpin our quality of life.
35. The two sets of guidelines (Community tiered support and ecosourcing guidelines) have been removed from the plan. This plan was a good place to test these ideas with our community and although they were well received (86% of submitters supported the proposal for tiered support for community groups), there needs to be further discussion with the community before they are finalised. Removing them and referencing them in the plan instead (they will be placed on the Council website once finalised) also gives flexibility to update them over the life of the plan. A new action is to "Review eco-sourcing guidelines for use in different practical contexts, involving relevant organisations and community groups".
36. The final strategy and action plan is included as Attachment 1.

### **Expectations and costs**

37. It is important that we meet any public expectations that are set by adopting Our Natural Capital. Many of the actions in the plan build on our existing programmes and will be carried out with existing funding.
38. However, there are new activities and expanded activities that will require resourcing which have been identified and that are currently not budgeted for. They do not have to be met immediately, but delivering all the outcomes in Our Natural Capital will require some additional investment. New initiatives will be considered for inclusion in the 2015-2016 Annual Plan.
39. Implementation of this plan requires working in partnership with others and gaining leverage from partner programmes and initiatives. This includes supporting the community, which give us a return of at least \$4 for every \$1 spent.

### **Next Actions**

40. Once finalised, Our Natural Capital will be formatted. It will be available on line and in hard copy. Many of the actions are currently funded and these will be implemented

accordingly. Work will be done on new initiatives to be considered for future funding rounds.

**Attachments**

- Attachment 1. Our Natural Capital - Wellington's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan Page 14
- Attachment 2. Summary of Submissions on Our Natural Capital Page 111

Author	Myfanwy Emeny, Team Leader Biodiversity and Urban Ecology
Authoriser	Greg Orchard, Chief Operating Officer

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

The consultation and engagement process has been outlined in the Background section.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

Both Ngati Toa and Port Nicholson Block Settlement Trust were consulted through the development of this document. They are supportive of the actions and strategy.

### **Financial implications**

The Action Plan outlines the short, medium and long term actions coming out of this strategy and where new funding may be required. Additional funding will be subject to approval through the annual plan process.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

This strategy supports our legislative requirements, as outlined in the Policy section.

### **Risks / legal**

None

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

This plan will complement the Climate Change Action Plan and assist with the implementation of actions within that plan.

### **Communications Plan**

None



# Our Natural Capital

Wellington's biodiversity strategy and action plan 2015

Absolutely Positively  
Wellington City Council  
Me Heke Ki Pōneke

Cover photo: **Juvenile New Zealand fur seal at Frank Kitts Park, Wellington City.**  
The main Wellington seal colony is at Sinclair Head on the edge of Te Kopahau Reserve. This is a 'haul out' area for New Zealand fur seals during winter (May-October) while breeding season is November-January. New Zealand fur seals are also seen around Wellington Harbour. If around seals, people are advised to always stay at least 10 m away and allow them some space. Also keep dogs on lead. NZ fur seals, particularly within the central city, connect people with the natural world and represent the link between the marine and terrestrial environments.

## CONTENTS

1. SUMMARY.....	4
<b>Part One: Strategy</b>	
2. INTRODUCTION.....	7
2.2 What is natural capital? .....	7
2.3 What is biodiversity? .....	7
2.4 Why is this important?.....	9
3. MĀORI AND MANA WHENUA RELATIONSHIP TO BIODIVERSITY .....	11
4. VISION.....	12
5. GUIDING PRINCIPLES .....	13
6. POLICY FRAMEWORK.....	15
WELLINGTON'S BIODIVERSITY JOURNEY .....	16
7.1 Past.....	16
7.2 Present .....	17
7.3 Future.....	24
8. CONCEPT PLANS .....	26
8.1 Wildlife Safe Wellington.....	26
8.2 Blue Belt .....	26
8.3 Community Catchments .....	28
<b>Part Two: Action Plan and rationale</b>	
9. ACTION PLAN .....	30
1. Protect.....	30
2. Restore .....	34
3. Connect .....	36
4. Research .....	40
10. MEASURING WELLINGTON CITY COUNCIL'S PERFORMANCE.....	44
10.1 City Biodiversity Index.....	44
10.3 Operational monitoring .....	46
11. RATIONALE FOR GOALS, OBJECTIVES AND ACTIONS.....	48
11.1 Protect.....	49
11.2 Restore .....	59
11.3 Connect .....	66
11.4 Research.....	74
12. GLOSSARY .....	81
APPENDIX 1 – Policy Context.....	84
APPENDIX 2 - Ecological Significance Criteria.....	88
APPENDIX 3 – Wellington's vegetation .....	90
APPENDIX 4 – Significant Ecological Sites.....	91
APPENDIX 5 - Nationally threatened, regionally threatened and locally significant species..	92
APPENDIX 6 – Environmental pests.....	95

## 1. SUMMARY

*Our Natural Capital is about Wellington's indigenous biodiversity. These are the species that occur or occurred naturally in Wellington.*

Our Natural Capital is the Wellington City Council's Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan. It creates a shared vision for Wellington City's indigenous biodiversity. The strategy outlines our vision, goals and objectives, and sets the priorities that give our work direction and purpose, underpinned by a set of guiding principles.

The aim of the strategy is to protect and restore our indigenous biodiversity. In order to protect and restore our indigenous biodiversity we have to connect people with it and carry out research so we can better manage it. These are the four themes under which our biodiversity management guidelines, goals, objectives and actions are grouped.

To achieve our biodiversity goals we will aim to protect the ecologically significant areas on both private and public land. We will restore these areas, create safe buffer zones around them and connect them together. We will reduce pest numbers throughout Wellington City to a point where our native species can survive and expand. Throughout the urban environment we will focus on raising awareness of the issues facing indigenous biodiversity and connecting people to their natural environment. We will enable our community to continue restoration work across all of our reserves and we will support them in these efforts.

We recognise that Wellington is an urban environment and will continue to contain a wide range of species, both exotic and indigenous. As a city we need to take into account the role of all species in contributing to our cultural identity and our role in protecting species that are threatened in their original habitat, but exotic biodiversity is only considered within this plan where it has a direct role in the survival of indigenous species. The strategy realises that healthy biodiversity contributes to healthy environments and that creates healthy people. It also recognises that healthy biodiversity contributes to our economic sustainability, through tourism, by providing a desirable base for businesses, and contributing to our quality of life.

It is the Council's responsibility to recognise, protect and maintain indigenous biodiversity, but we won't be able to achieve our desired outcomes without working closely with our partners.

Since the 2007 Wellington Biodiversity Action Plan was approved, we have moved from a position of needing to identify much of our significant biodiversity to actively managing it. Our protection and restoration programmes now focus on ecological needs. We continue to question our techniques and work to improve our knowledge, and refine our approach. The Council's role continues to strengthen, and we are known for being a collaborative organisation. However, we are still facing some major challenges such as the ongoing degradation of our aquatic ecosystems and the development pressures faced through the needs of our growing city.

There are also wider issues that affect the health of Wellington's indigenous biodiversity, including land and water use, waste, response to natural disasters and transport. While these have an effect on biodiversity and contribute to the success of this strategy, they are dealt with under other plans and policies, as are issues of city wide resilience.

This strategy ensures that international, national and regional targets relating to biodiversity are translated into local action, and that Wellington City is positioned as a world leader in urban biodiversity. Our Natural Capital covers biodiversity within Council boundaries and jurisdiction, but acknowledges that biodiversity does not recognise these boundaries.

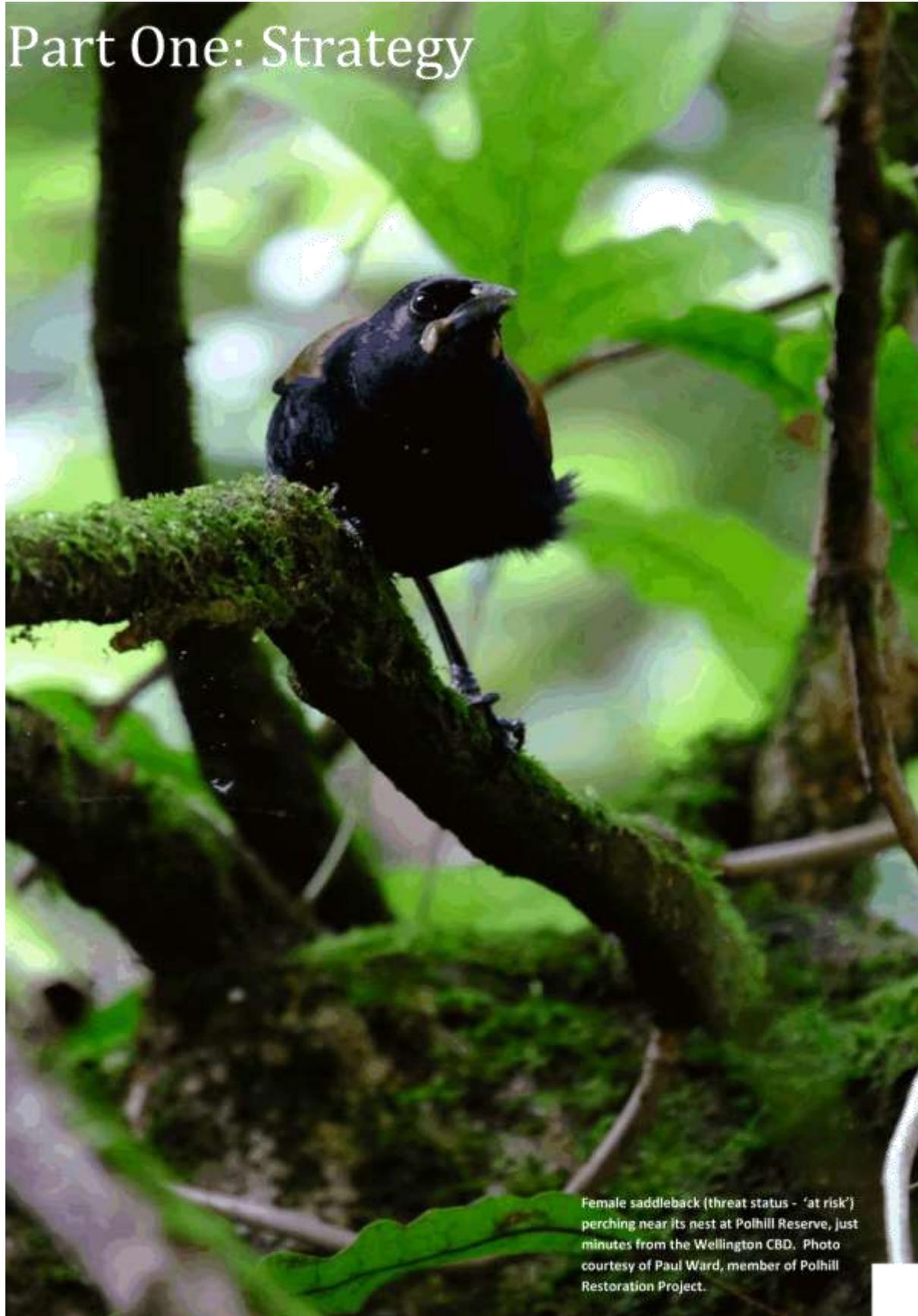
We will achieve our goal of protecting biodiversity by focusing on the protection of priority biodiversity sites on public and private land and rare, threatened or locally significant species; controlling pest animal and pest plant species to sufficient levels and eradicate them if possible, and managing the impact of urban growth and human activity on all ecosystems and remaining habitat.

To restore biodiversity we will increase the number and size of indigenous species and their habitats and create resilient ecosystems; we will improve aquatic ecosystem health across the city; put restoration programmes in place for rare, threatened or locally significant species and develop ecological networks across the landscape.

People will be connected with biodiversity by making it a common experience for all Wellingtonians; we will help people to understand the importance and value of biodiversity to their wellbeing; and enable them to take action to protect and restore biodiversity. A range of partners will work with us to achieve a shared vision for Wellington's biodiversity.

We will gain an increased understanding and knowledge of biodiversity, actively share this knowledge and use it to improve our programmes; we will gain a better understanding of our biodiversity management through enhanced monitoring programmes.

Wellington's residents have made it clear that having an attractive and healthy city environment is important to them, and that they'll work alongside us to achieve this.



## 2. INTRODUCTION

This plan supports Wellington's wider vision to be the "Smart Capital", and be internationally recognised for its connection with and love of nature. Wellington's open spaces and natural areas are part of what make Wellington an exciting and vibrant city in which to live, work and visit. Our physical proximity to nature plays a key role in our excellent quality of life, which as a city is our greatest strength. Wellington City Council is also unique in that we manage most of the publically owned open space land (around 4500 hectares).

The purpose of this plan is about ensuring Wellington indigenous biodiversity is protected and restored. Part of ensuring the ongoing protection and restoration of our biodiversity is to get people to value and respect it. We can achieve this through allowing people to form a connection with the natural world. To ensure the best outcome for our biodiversity, we also need to carry out research to create and refine innovative biodiversity management practices.

The protection of biodiversity not native to Wellington is not addressed in this strategy except where exotic species are currently protecting indigenous values such as providing habitat or shelter or can be used as a mechanism to connect people with nature.

Some of the aspects in this plan are aspirational, whereas others are easily achievable. Our community has told us they desire both as part of a comprehensive strategy, provided Council reports back regularly on what has been accomplished. Some actions depend on our partners to implement, and Council will have a facilitation role. Some actions are dependent on future funding decisions, planning decisions, and open to statutory changes.

### 2.2 What is natural capital?

We are a "Natural Capital" due to our natural environment and our nature-driven attractions. It is part of what makes us the "coolest little capital in the world". It is an important part of what makes people want to live and work here, and helps to attract visitors.

Natural capital is our stock of natural assets, which includes biodiversity as well as earth, air and water. Cities depend on a healthy natural environment that continuously provides a range of benefits, known as 'ecosystem services'. Healthy ecosystems are the foundation for sustainable cities, influencing and affecting human well-being and most economic activity.

Biodiversity is an integral part of this range of services. The cost to replace, replicate or restore these ecosystem services far outweighs the cost of maintaining and protecting these functions today. The biodiversity that contributes to these services exists in our reserves, parks, urban gardens, waterways, wetlands and coast.

### 2.3 What is biodiversity?

Biological diversity – or biodiversity – is the complete variety of life on earth, and people are an integral part of this. Biodiversity is easiest to understand when you think of the different kinds of plants and animals around us and all the species that support and link them. "High biodiversity" can mean that there are a lot of different species, while "biodiversity loss" means that these species become extinct. Biodiversity is more than plants and animals, however. Biodiversity also includes:

- genetic diversity, which is the variability in the genetic make-up amongst individuals of the same species
- species diversity, which is the variety of species within a particular area

ecosystem diversity, which is the variety of ecosystem types and associated biological communities or habitats (eg scrubland, forest, sand dunes, wetlands, streams).

***Biodiversity incorporates all biological life, including fungi and micro-organisms, the genes they contain and the ecosystems of which they form a part. These life forms contribute to essential ecological processes.***

#### **Global biodiversity**

The protection of biodiversity is a global issue and is an essential ingredient of sustainable development. The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD) recognises that biodiversity is about plants and animals as well as people and our need for food, medicines, fresh air and water, shelter, and a clean and healthy environment. The CBD was reviewed at the 11th Conference of Parties (COP11) in Aichi, Japan in 2011 and a new strategic plan *Living in Harmony with Nature* was developed.

New Zealand is a signatory to the CBD and is bound by the Aichi agreement. *New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy* (2000) was prepared as part of New Zealand's commitment to biodiversity protection, and established national goals to "turn the tide" on biodiversity decline and included action points for local authorities. Retaining a high level of indigenous biodiversity will result in a high level of global biodiversity. The New Zealand Government is in the process of updating the *New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy* to incorporate the Aichi Targets.

***Globally, biodiversity is in decline and the rate of biodiversity loss is accelerating.***

#### **Indigenous Biodiversity**

New Zealand is an internationally recognised 'hotspot' for biodiversity. This is because we have exceptionally high numbers of endemic species (species found nowhere else in the world). This high endemism is largely the result of our long isolation from other land masses and diverse habitat and climate, which has allowed unique flora and fauna to develop. Around 90 percent of New Zealand's insects and marine molluscs are endemic. This is also true for 80 percent of our vascular plants (which includes trees, ferns and flowering plants); 25 percent of bird species; all of our 60 reptiles; our four remaining species of frog and all our species of bat. In comparison, Britain which is a similar size to New Zealand has only two endemic species.

***Biodiversity conservation is about ensuring the:***

- ***viability of naturally occurring local populations of species***
- ***resilience of the range of habitats and ecosystems that makes Wellington unique***

## 2.4 Why is this important?

All Wellingtonians (including the Council) have a positive or negative effect on biodiversity, both global and local. This comes through political choices, jobs, economic activities, and daily actions. There is a huge opportunity for all of us to become more aware and more responsible; to enhance biodiversity generally through positive actions, small and large. Perhaps the greatest challenge is to make everyone realise that they have an impact on biodiversity and can play a part in its conservation.

Humans depend on our natural capital (including biodiversity) for a wide range of services, often called ecosystem services, which make life possible. Resilient and stable ecosystems are essential to sustain all of our activities in a functioning environment. The most obvious ecosystem services include the food we eat, the water we drink, the air we breathe, and the plant materials we use for fuel, fibre, building materials and medicines.

There are also many less visible ecosystem services, such as water management, the millions of tonnes of carbon stored by our forests, natural storm defences provided by sand dunes, or the pollination of plants by insects. Without healthy biological resources and ecosystem processes, we would be without basic services such as the production of raw materials, clean water, waste decomposition, soil conservation and climate regulation.

Even less visible are cultural ecosystem services such as the inspiration we take from wildlife and the natural environment, which influences our health and wellbeing. Much of Wellington's distinctive identity, its sense of place, is bound in its natural areas. Ecotourism is important in attracting national and international visitors who visit areas such as Makara Peak Mountain Bike Park, Otari-Wilton's Bush, Zealandia and Taputeranga Marine Reserve. This brings business arising from recreation in our open spaces. There is also intrinsic value in biodiversity and for many, particularly Māori; it is an essential part of their world view.

All life on earth – humans included – depends on a varied and diverse natural environment.

Wellington's natural capital gives us the following services:

- **Freshwater** – Wellington is reliant on drinking water from outside the city boundaries, but this freshwater is reliant on healthy forest catchments and healthy groundwater supplies from artesian wells in the Hutt City area
- **Local climate and air quality regulation** – natural vegetation helps to moderate extremes, and plays a role in improving air quality and reducing pollution
- **Energy** – much our energy comes from solar and wind power
- **Carbon sequestration and storage** – the City's native bush and exotic forestry is an important part of Wellington's climate change strategy and helps Wellington move towards being carbon neutral
- **Moderation of extreme events due to climate change** – natural ecosystems have an important role in protecting infrastructure and housing from increasingly frequent and severe weather events.
- **Waste-water treatment** – at present streams and the coastal environment are a vital part of our waste-water network. Ecosystems such as wetlands also filter waste and act as a natural buffer to the surrounding environment
- **Pollination services** – healthy ecosystems and a diverse range of pollinators will pollinate many plants, including edibles and ornamentals

- **Recreation and mental and physical health benefits** - recreating in green space is not only a good form of physical exercise but also lets people relax
- **Tourism and economics** – Wellington’s natural environment is increasingly one of our selling points for domestic and international tourists, which in turn provides considerable economic benefits.
- **Cultural and spiritual wellbeing and sense of identity** - language, knowledge and the natural environment have been intimately related throughout human history. Biodiversity, ecosystems and natural landscapes have been the source of inspiration for much of our art, culture and increasingly for science. Nature is a common element of all traditional knowledge, and associated customs are important for creating a sense of belonging
- **Soil formation and stabilisation** - soil filters our wastewater, provides essential nutrients to our forests and crops, helps regulate temperature and is the foundation for our cities and towns

### 3. MĀORI AND MANA WHENUA RELATIONSHIP TO BIODIVERSITY

Mana whenua of Te Whanganui ā Tara are Taranaki Whānui and Ngāti Toa Rangatira. Mana whenua consider that the relationship with biodiversity is an intrinsic and important part of their responsibilities as Kaitiaki within their whaitua/rohe/takiwā. As mana whenua they encourage collaboration and partnership to ensure that together we care for the environment entrusted to us.

“Whatungarongaro te tangata, toitu te whenua”  
“As man disappears from sight, the land remains”

Wellington City Council acknowledges the mana whenua status of Taranaki Whānui ki te Upoko o te Ika and Ngāti Toa Rangatira to the Wellington City area and we will work in partnership with iwi groups in the development and delivery of this strategy. We will also support and work with other Māori groups who are active in restoring the mauri of the area. In achieving the vision for Our Natural Capital we will work in partnership with Māori, acknowledging the connection tangata whenua have with our city's natural taonga and weaving the principles of tikanga Māori, kaitiakitanga and manaakitanga through the work we do.

We acknowledge the unique relationship Māori have with New Zealand's natural taonga – our indigenous biodiversity - as tangata whenua, and their role as kaitiaki. We also recognise and value the Māori world view in understanding and communicating the unique status of our natural taonga. The holistic approach of the Māori world view speaks of the interconnectedness of species and ecosystems, and the importance of managing at an ecosystem and a landscape scale. It also encompasses the need for the sustainable management of natural resources.

We have strived to ensure the strategy is aligned with Māori approaches to resource management by looking at whole systems, the relationships between these systems, and by recognising the connection of the people with the land.

“Toitu te marae a Tane, toitu te marae a Tangaroa, toitu te iwi”

“Care for the domain of Tane Mahuta and Tangaroa, so too will the people endure”

## 4. VISION

### **Wellington is Our Natural Capital:**

We haven't lost any more species indigenous to Wellington and the size of ecologically significant areas has not been reduced. The population size of previously threatened and locally significant species has grown and areas with the potential for future restoration are recognised and valued.

All known original ecosystems are found within Wellington, and a range of indigenous biodiversity thrives within them. These areas provide source populations that can disperse to surrounding areas, enhancing and enabling the ecological restoration of the city's wider habitats.

Wellingtonians are connected to nature. They are knowledgeable and passionate about Wellington's biodiversity and want to live in a city of abundant nature that is in close proximity to them. They have become kaitiaki of the natural environment and take action to support its protection and restoration.

Others come to Wellington City Council for advice on how to manage indigenous biodiversity in an urban context, due to the knowledge we have gained through research programmes. We actively share this knowledge and use it to continually improve our own biodiversity management.

## 5. GUIDING PRINCIPLES

### ***We will build on our natural capital***

This strategy will help to build and enhance Wellington's natural capital. We will respect the importance of indigenous biodiversity to New Zealand and its right to exist. The Council's work to protect and restore Wellington's indigenous biodiversity will recognise this. We will protect the high value areas, and restore other areas that allow the city's biodiversity as a whole to thrive.

### ***We will work within our city context***

Wellington's natural environment has been heavily modified and consists of a complex mixture of species and habitats across urban, suburban and rural areas. While some introduced species pose a threat to native ecosystems, many do not and are part of Wellington's rich cultural heritage. This strategy acknowledges this and our biodiversity management will work within these novel ecosystems. We will focus on the function provided by species and recognise that ecological function can sit across a range of different land uses.

### ***We will weave biodiversity through our city's DNA***

Our indigenous biodiversity is part of our local economy and its conservation is an investment that will yield benefits for present and future generations. Everything we do will seek to bring the importance of nature into mainstream thinking. We will do this by telling the stories of the city's natural and cultural heritage, celebrating and sharing success, and promoting the role of biodiversity in creating a unique identity and sense of place for Wellington, in New Zealand and in the world.

### ***We will provide direction and leadership***

As a city, Wellington will provide leadership in highlighting the value of incorporating indigenous biodiversity in urban sustainable development, and will promote the importance of cities that have a connection with and respect for nature. The Council will provide leadership that reflects these values through our policies, strategies and management plans.

### ***We will work collaboratively***

The Council is committed to working with iwi, government, agencies, landowners, businesses, researchers and the community. We recognise that we need to share knowledge, costs and benefits, to be clear about our different roles and responsibilities, and to have the capability and resources to contribute.

### ***We will recognise the significance of people's connection with nature***

We will recognise the importance of public awareness and education for ensuring the conservation of biodiversity. All Wellingtonians engage with nature at some point in their daily lives and we will acknowledge and build on these experiences. We will promote and enhance people's awareness of and connection to nature. We recognise that these experiences actively contribute to people's sense of health and wellbeing.

***We will learn from the relationship between Māori and biodiversity***

Matauranga Māori and the wealth of traditional knowledge in the conservation, management and sustainable use of biodiversity will be recognised, promoted and used with the involvement of those who possess this knowledge. We will learn from the principles of manaakitanga, wairua, and kaitiakitanga and include these in everything we do.

***We will actively engage with research***

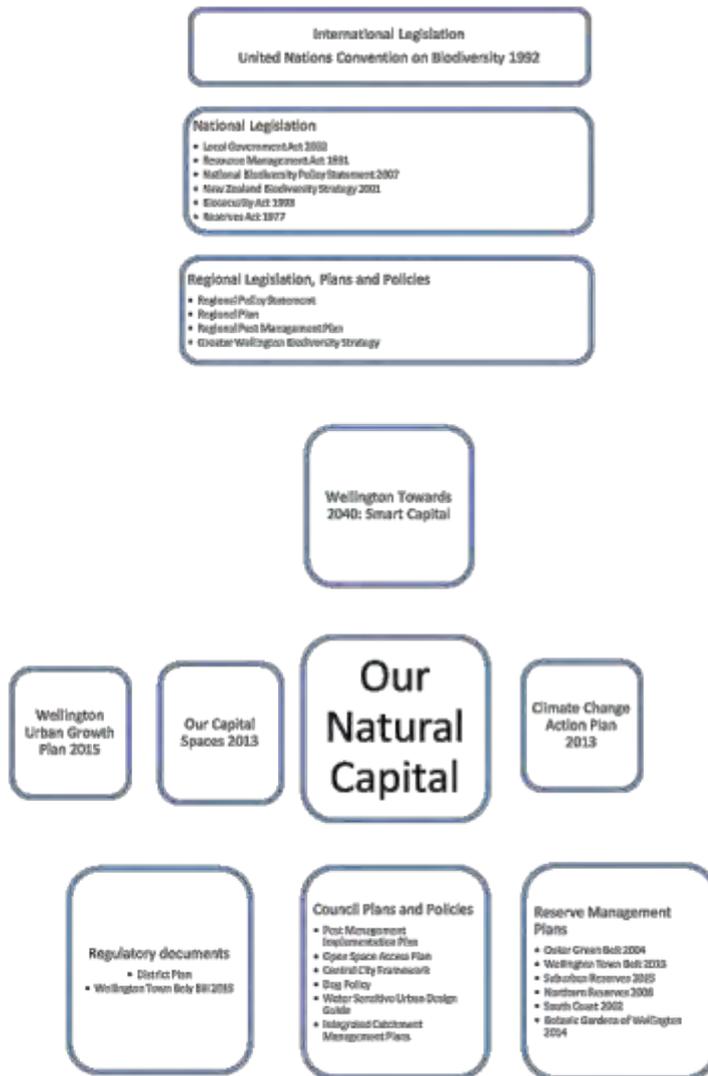
The actions in Our Natural Capital will be evidence-based and monitored, informed by research where this exists. We recognise that we do not fully understand the complex interactions between the urban environment, introduced species of plants and animals and native ecosystem functioning. We will not avoid action because of a lack of knowledge, but will instead use this as an opportunity to increase our knowledge. We will be adaptive and aim for continual improvement as new knowledge is gained, and we will actively seek and share this knowledge.

## 6. POLICY FRAMEWORK

Our Natural Capital underpins everything that we do as a City.

The city is part of a greater whole and needs to be seen in the context of the agencies that have responsibilities for the Wellington region and the country as a whole. This includes national and regional policy influencing biodiversity as well as Wellington City Council's strategy, policy and planning documents. For a more comprehensive description of policy context see Appendix 1.

**Our Natural Capital Policy framework:**



## WELLINGTON'S BIODIVERSITY JOURNEY

### 7.1 Past

Wellington once had flora and fauna as diverse and abundant as any other coastal site in the lower North Island. It was once cloaked in lowland broadleaf-podocarp forest. Trees such as northern rata, with its bright red flowers, would have been a common sight, along with rimu, matai, kahikatea and totara. These would have been emerging through a solid canopy of tawa, kohekohe, kamahi, titoki, pukatea and kowhai. The forest interior would have been thick with climbers like kiekie and supplejack, and the forest floor carpeted with ferns<sup>1,2</sup>. Early European settlers described a number of birds including saddleback, piopio, robin, kokako, stitchbird, banded rail, little spotted kiwi, weka, and huia. Local Māori brought kereru and kaka to the Thorndon village for barter and kakariki were prolific.

The main wetland areas were dominated by flax, rush, raupo and cabbage tree. Flowing into these were major Wellington stream systems, which had abundant eel, koaro, bullies, koura, various galaxiid species and summer swarms of mayflies and other freshwater insects.

Geckos and skinks were easily found in the forests and around the coast and native frogs lived in dark forested streambeds. In summer the forest would have been alive with insects. At night, the morepork (ruru) and laughing owl (whekau) came out to hunt and the calls of brown and little spotted kiwi echoed throughout the forests.

The rocky coastline was the winter haul-out for large groups of male fur seal. Weka cruised the beaches investigating seaweed and driftwood. Large numbers of little blue penguin would have emerged from the surf each night and the coastal ranges covered in sooty and fluttering shearwater burrows. The wind-buffed and salt-laden coastal escarpments facing the Cook Strait (Wellington's south coast), as well as the harbour escarpments, were covered with a mix of coastal forest, dense coastal scrub, flax and tussockland, and scree. The coastal forest was dominated by kohekohe, ngaio, northern rata, akiraho and kowhai, while the dense coastal scrub was characterised by tauhinu, mingimingi, matagouri, prostrate kowhai, pohuehue and speargrass. Tuatara scurried through these coastal forests feeding on large insects, small lizards and sea bird eggs. The coastal waters and harbour would have supported a great number and diversity of fish. The harbour was visited by whales, dolphins and porpoises.

Early settlers were unaware of the extent of their impact on our indigenous biodiversity, and their priorities were about establishing a life in this new city. Much biodiversity was destroyed when Wellington was cleared for human settlement and the trend of losing biodiversity as the city grew continued in one form or another until the present day.

---

<sup>1</sup> Gabites, Isobel (1993). *Wellington's Living Cloak: A Guide to the Natural Plant Communities*. Wellington Botanical Society/Victoria University Press, Wellington.

<sup>2</sup> Boffa Miskell (1998). *Wellington's Native Vegetation: A Brief Survey of Early Historical Records*. Prepared by Boffa Miskell Ltd for Wellington City Council.

## 7.2 Present

Today we have 5% of our original lowland broadleaf-podocarp forest and 1% of our original coastal forest remaining. We are dealing with these fragmented sites supporting our remaining biodiversity, many of these within the heart of our city. Most of our wetlands have been lost and our streams piped and filled. However, since 2007, we have gained a good picture of where Wellington’s ecologically significant sites are within Wellington and these have been mapped. We have 517 identified ecologically significant sites across the city (see Appendix 4), most of which are protected on public land. These sites can be seen in more detail on the Wellington City Council website.

We also have a lot more information on the location of our threatened species. We have moved from a position of needing to identify much of our significant biodiversity to actively managing it. Our restoration programmes have developed from a focus on operational requirements and amenity value to a focus on ecological needs. The Council’s role in biodiversity protection and restoration has continued to strengthen, and other organisations respect our achievements.

We have moved from the identification of significant sites, to the identification and protection of the species within those sites and refining our techniques for restoration. We have acknowledged, and continue to acknowledge, the role that people play in Wellington’s biodiversity journey.

Our bird monitoring programme has expanded and we have conducted the first study showing the distribution of native lizards within the city. We have a diverse range of species in Wellington.

Wellington’s indigenous biodiversity today is maintained by habitats that can be broadly grouped into nine different categories.

Habitat	Current cover (ha)
• Lowland forest	932
• Coastal forest	59
• Scrub and shrublands	116
• Coastal scrub	813
• Coastal fringe	1.5
• Offshore islands	3.4
• Wetlands	3.5
• Streams	260km
• Urban area	4190

Harbour and coastal waters 8900 Each of these habitats supports a unique community of species and faces a different range of threats; although habitat loss and pest species are common threats across all habitats.

### Forest

#### Lowland forest

Today, the original lowland broadleaf-podocarp forest that remains is mostly found in gullies and remote areas out of the reaches of development, fire and early logging. Some areas have also been preserved by early Wellingtonians. Otari-Wilton’s Bush and the Wellington Botanic Garden native forest remnant are some of the best examples of these.

These remaining areas of ancient forest are now accompanied by regenerating forest dominated by the ever-present mahoe. These new forests are growing up through the gorse that colonised Wellington's retired farmland and are now a valued part of Wellington's open space<sup>3</sup>. They also have an important role in buffering the ancient forest from the effects of fragmentation.

The remnants of original forest are important seed sources for the regenerating areas. The regenerating areas are important for the health and eventual restoration of many forest species, including birds such as kaka, kakariki and bellbird, and even the long-tailed bat.

Many animals that would have once occurred in Wellington's forests are now extinct in the region, while others – such as Wellington's green gecko – are thought to be in critical decline. However, the combination of the work of Zealandia and the ongoing predator control by the city and regional councils now means a number of iconic (and formerly rare or locally extinct) bird species are now commonly experienced by Wellingtonians. Tui, kereru and kaka have become a regular sight and sound in Wellington and, along with saddleback, kakariki and North Island robin are breeding outside the safety of a fence on the mainland for the first time in over 100 years. Tuatara have also been reintroduced to the sanctuary, as have giant weta, while some lizards have been identified as having translocation potential. Invertebrates such as the giant pill millipede and large land snails may also be released in the sanctuary one day.

#### **Coastal forest**

Some small remnants of original coastal forest can be found along the harbour escarpment, as well as some areas along the south coast. Spooky Gully within Te Kopahou Reserve is a good example of a south coast forest remnant, with its spectacular tree hebe forest interwoven with scramblers such as native jasmine and native clematis.

The coastal escarpment is an important habitat for many species that are now threatened, due mainly to habitat loss. One example is the speargrass weevil. The speargrass weevil and Hutton's speargrass weevil live on speargrass around the south coast. However, speargrass has been decreasing due to grazing, pig rooting and out competition by weeds, so the weevil's habitat is being lost. Another example is the geometrid moth, a striking orange, black and white moth. Again, the main threat to this species is habitat loss, in this case the decline of its host plant pinatoro.

#### **Scrub and shrublands**

Wellington has two main kinds of scrub and shrubland communities: grey scrub and manuka/kanuka shrubland. These ecosystems are a special part of Wellington's biodiversity, are important transitional communities in ecological succession, and are essential habitat for lizards, insects, and some birds.

##### **Grey scrub**

Grey scrub tends to occur in the relatively exposed environments of Wellington's south-west peninsula. Grey scrub is characterised by small-leaved divaricate shrubs (shrubs that have fine, right-angled branches with a woody, tangled appearance), and climbers such as

---

<sup>3</sup> Park, Geoff (1999). *An Inventory of the Surviving Traces of the Primary Forest of Wellington City*. Prepared for Wellington City Council.

pohuehue. It is called grey scrub because it appears grey from a distance. In Wellington's grey scrub, you will generally find small leaved coprosmas, pohuehue, coastal tree daisy, tauhinu, kowhai, manuka and bush lawyer. Te Kopahou has one area of dracophyllum, which is locally significant. Grey scrub is also habitat for the nationally vulnerable plant shrubby tororaro and regionally threatened matagouri.

#### **Manuka/kanuka shrubland**

Manuka/kanuka shrubland is generally found on disturbed, previously forested land and lightly grazed hill country. It has become relatively rare in Wellington as gorse has taken over its ecological niche. Wellington's remaining manuka/kanuka shrublands are important to protect to maintain a natural process of forest succession. Research has found that forest growing up through gorse has less diversity of species than forest that grows up through kanuka/manuka, and that some plant groups, such as podocarps, orchids, and small leaved shrubs, are less common in gorse than in manuka/kanuka shrubland<sup>4</sup>.

#### **Coastal scrub**

The scrub of the coastal scarp has fared a little better than the coastal forest but is still in serious decline<sup>5</sup>. Matagouri is now endangered in the Wellington area, however pohuehue, mingimingi, tauhinu and taupata are still a relatively common sight along the coast, as are flax-clad cliffs.

### **Coastline**

#### **Coastal fringe**

Wellington's coastal fringe is a dynamic mix of rocky foreshore, coastal turf communities, and coastal dunes.

Wellington's rocky foreshore defines the "wild coast" experience, but on closer inspection the rocky foreshore is actually an intricate mix of coastal turf communities (or herbfields), coastal shrubland, sedges, grasses, and rushes. A great example can be found at Hue-te-Taka (Moa Point).

The unifying feature of Wellington's coastal communities is that they are adapted to tolerate very salty and windy environments. The coastal turf communities are characterised by low-growing dense mats of herbs, often with very fleshy leaves that protect the plant from desiccation (for example NZ iceplant, shore bindweed, glasswort). Sedges, grasses and rushes growing in these areas are also specialists at withstanding salt and dehydration. Many also tolerate very low nutrient levels and shifting sands. You can also find coastal shrubs in some of these areas, including tauhinu, sand pimelea and sand coprosma.

Coastal dunes form where there is shelter from strong waves, a supply of sand, and onshore winds<sup>6</sup>. The side closest to the sea (foredune) is very dynamic, and sand-binding plants have

<sup>4</sup> Sullivan, J.J.; Williams, P.A.; Timmins, S.A. (2007). Secondary forest succession differs through naturalised gorse and native kānuka near Wellington and Nelson. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology* 31.

<sup>5</sup> Sawyer, J.W.D (2004). *Plant Conservation Strategy: Wellington Conservancy 2004-2010*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

<sup>6</sup> Milne, R. & Sawyer, J. (2002). *Coastal foredune vegetation in Wellington Conservancy*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

an important role. The two main native sand-binders are pingao and spinifex; however, the introduced marram grass is now most commonly seen. Other native species of coastal foredunes are sand tussock, sand coprosma, and sand daphne. An important site for coastal dunes in Wellington is from Owhiro Bay to Karori Stream. In the past, all five native foredune species have been recorded in this area, but in the last 10 years only sand tussock, spinifex and pingao have been found. This area is one of the only sites in the North Island where “Marlborough minimac” geckos occur. Common, brown, and copper skinks and common geckos have also been recorded here<sup>7</sup>.

The interface between the land and the sea is an important access area for many species. The coastal fringe provides habitat for many seabird species, but many of these bird species are now threatened. The banded dotterel is one example; this bird nests in soil, shingle or sand dunes using little, if any, nest material. This means that its breeding ground is easily disturbed by vehicles, people, and pets. Banded dotterel were found breeding on the South Coast in 2014. The little blue penguin is another example. The “little blue” is the smallest penguin in the world, and adults come ashore in Wellington between May and June to prepare nests, laying eggs from August to November. The landscape has been modified, and their habitat destroyed as a consequence. While many of them have adapted to nest under houses or reserves around the coast, many are killed by vehicles, pets, ferrets and stoats.

Wellington’s wild coast also has a number of seal “haul-outs”; the most accessible site is at Red Rocks/Sinclair Head. Between May and October, male fur seals rest up here between feeding.

#### Offshore islands

The only island that sits within Wellington District is Tapu Te Ranga in Island Bay. Tapu Te Ranga is typical of Wellington’s south coast environment and, as an island, potentially offers a safer place for nesting and roosting seabirds. Tapu Te Ranga is designated as a Conservation Site in the District Plan. It is characterised by flaxland, salt marsh and scrubland, and is home to two rare plants found nowhere else in Wellington: *Crassula moschata* and *Suaeda novae-zelandiae*.

#### Coastal waters

Wellington’s coastal waters are home to marine mammals such as the common dolphin and orca, and Wellington Harbour has unique marine features including a giant kelp forest and a population of rare sponge. The waters of Wellington’s south coast support a rich and varied mix of plants and animals, due partly to a complex topography and wide variety of habitats. The high biodiversity is also due to the collision of three major oceanic currents, the result being a mix of warm Pacific and cold sub-Antarctic waters. The community of plants and animals found here is unique in New Zealand, with many species occurring at the northern and southern limits of their range. At least 100 different species of algae (seaweed) have been recorded on the south coast, and sea horses, many fish species, crayfish and paua can all still be found. Even Wellington’s intertidal zone is filled with a rich number of seaweeds, shellfish and other invertebrates.

---

<sup>7</sup> Meizer S & Bell, T. (2014). Lizard survey of Wellington City Council-administered parks & reserves: final report. Unpublished EcoGecko Consultants Ltd report prepared for the Wellington Council, June 2014.

Nationwide, scientists estimate that as much as 80 percent of New Zealand's indigenous biodiversity may be found in the sea. Yet less than 1 percent has ever been surveyed. On average, seven new marine species are identified every fortnight.

The marine environment is also very important for many of our freshwater fish species. Almost half of them are diadromous, using both the streams and the sea to complete their life cycle. Our native eels are thought to breed in deep ocean trenches somewhere near Tonga. Their larvae return to New Zealand on the ocean currents and re-enter the stream systems. The adults never return as they die after spawning.

Wellington city is also the access point to Taputeranga Marine Reserve, which was established in 2008. Taputeranga Marine Reserve is the first marine reserve in the heart of a city and is home to over 180 species of fish and is particularly rich in invertebrates such as octopus, rock lobster, crabs and starfish. Only minutes away from downtown Wellington, it gives residents and visitors the opportunity to experience the highly biodiverse marine life of the Cook Strait.

## Freshwater

### Streams

Streams are one of the Wellington region's threatened ecosystems. The streams are also affected by what happens in their catchments, which is the area of land drained by that stream system. Wellington's streams can be described simply as rural streams and urban streams. Rural streams include lower Karori Stream, Makara Stream and Ohariu Stream – as well as some of the more remote streams, such as Oteranga Stream. Much of the country associated with these rural streams has a long history of farming and grazing, and these streams are often characterised by a lack of riparian vegetation. Some rural streams, such as Waiariki and Opau Streams, also flow through areas of fragmented or regenerating forest.

Urban streams include Owhiro Stream, Kaiwharawhara, Ngauranga and the Porirua Stream system, as well as the "lost streams" (now piped) of Te Aro, Houghton Bay, Miramar and the inner city. The Porirua Stream system, or catchment, is the largest in Wellington, running north from Johnsonville to exit at Porirua Harbour. There are also small local streams throughout Wellington which, although often fragmented, also have important biodiversity values and can provide habitat for landlocked populations of native fish such as banded kokopu. Urban streams have been, and continue to be, heavily modified and influenced by residential development and urban living.

Streams provide habitat and food for hundreds of plants and animals – from algae to eels. They also provide freshwater for people and animals to drink and places for people to play<sup>8</sup>. Although many of Wellington's streams are small, and some are even dry at certain times of the year (ephemeral), their biological health is important both for the species they support and also for the harbour and sea they flow into.

Stream margins, or riparian areas, are an important part of stream biodiversity – providing riparian habitat as well as improving water quality and habitat by providing shelter for fish,

---

<sup>8</sup> Report from the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment, Water quality in New Zealand: Understanding the Science, March 2012

lowering water temperature, removing sediment, filtering out some pollutants, preventing damage to stream banks, and increasing bird and insect life.

Nearly all of New Zealand's freshwater fish species migrate between freshwater and the sea during their lives and this is an important part of their breeding cycle. This means that if streams are lost, or if there are barriers to fish passage, then fish will become extinct from that particular stream. Giant kokopu, long finned eel and short jawed kokopu are all nationally threatened fish that are known to live in Wellington.

#### **Wetlands**

Wetlands include swamps, bogs, shallow lakes and salt marshes – essentially, any area of land covered by water for some period of time<sup>9</sup>. Man-made ponds are not normally considered to be a wetland. Wetlands are important places for biodiversity – they support more bird species than any other ecosystem. Wetlands are also important places for water purification (trapping sediment and removing excess nutrients), for preventing flood damage, for healthy fisheries, and for recreation<sup>10</sup>.

Most of Wellington's wetlands have been drained, filled and built on. Those that remain are mostly small swamps, usually characterised by raupo, carex and harakeke. These include a raupo wetland in Opau Valley, a carex wetland in Hawkins Hill and a wetland in Takarau Gorge. There is also a small estuary at the mouth of the Kaiwharawhara Stream and a recreated wetland at the head of the Kaiwharawhara catchment, within Zealandia.

#### **Salt marsh estuary**

Wellington's only salt marsh estuary is located at Makara Beach. It is the only area in Wellington suitable for inanga spawning<sup>11</sup>. Estuaries are incredibly rich biodiversity spots due to the combination of terrestrial and wetland plants, seashore life and wading birds. At Makara Beach Estuary there is a community of saltmarsh ribbonwood, as well as salt turf, sedges and rushes. It is an important area for white-faced heron, rare freshwater snails, and black flounder breeding.

#### **Urban, Suburban and Rural Areas**

Approximately 5500 hectares of Wellington are in a built urban environment, compared with 4207 hectares of Council-owned open "green" space. The urban environment also includes 1200 kilometres of road reserve. About 65% of the total City is rural land.

It is possible for an amazing amount of biodiversity to be found in these environments. There are about as many wild native plants in New Zealand cities (350–550 species or 14–22 percent of the flora) as in National Parks (440–660 spp. or 17–26 percent) (Given & Meurk

---

<sup>9</sup> Greater Wellington (2003). Wetland Action Plan.

<sup>10</sup> Russi D., ten Brink P., Farmer A., Badura T., Coates D., Förster J., Kumar R. and Davidson N. 2013. "The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity for Water and Wetlands." IEEP, London and Brussels; Ramsar Secretariat, Gland.

<sup>11</sup> Taylor, M.J. & Kelly, G.R. (2001) Inanga spawning habitats in the Wellington Region, and their potential for restoration. NIWA, report prepared for Wellington Regional Council.

2000)<sup>12</sup>. Some rural land is reverting back to native bush in parts of Makara and South Karori and contains areas of indigenous vegetation and habitat for indigenous fauna.

Much of Wellington's land environment<sup>13</sup> that has been identified as acutely threatened<sup>14</sup> sits within the built urban and rural areas. The majority of this land is privately owned. Planning that protects and restores the indigenous remnants within these areas is critical to the survival of many species, mitigating the effects typical of human occupation<sup>15</sup>.

Private gardens can greatly contribute to the overall biodiversity of the city through suitable plant choice and gardening practices. This not only provides a habitat for the plants themselves, but also creating an attractive environment for indigenous birds, lizards and insects.

People's interaction with the natural environment also plays a key role; it is within the urban area, including Wellington's central business district, that most people experience these interactions. An awareness of the value of biodiversity in our own backyards can lead to an appreciation of the ecological importance of the wider landscape. In this context, social objectives can be as important as ecological outcomes<sup>16</sup>. People in Wellington are increasingly aware of our indigenous biodiversity, but often this isn't translated into action.

#### Introduced species

New Zealand is characterised by a mix of native and introduced species, which make up the country's total biodiversity. New Zealand has the highest number of introduced mammals of any country in the world and the second highest number of introduced birds. We also now have more introduced species of vascular plants in the wild than native ones, and this number is increasing all the time.

Many of the pressures on New Zealand's indigenous biodiversity are from plants and animals that were introduced with the arrival of humans. These species were introduced into Wellington from other parts of the country, as well as from overseas. However, these introduced species are neither all "good" nor all "bad".

Introduced species can threaten our indigenous biodiversity through processes such as out-competition, hybridisation, predation, and browsing. But they can also provide benefits depending on the situation in which they are found.

---

<sup>12</sup> Given, D.; Meurk, C. D. (2000). Biodiversity of the urban environment: the importance of indigenous species and the role urban environments can play in their preservation. In: Stewart, G. H.; Ignatieva, M. E. ed. Urban biodiversity and ecology as a basis for holistic planning and design. Proceedings of a workshop held at Lincoln University 28–29 October 2000. *Lincoln University International Centre for Nature Conservation No. 2*. Christchurch, Wickliffe Press. Pp. 22–33.

<sup>13</sup> Leathwick, J.; Morgan, F.; Wilson, G.; Rutledge, D.; McLeod, M.; Johnston, K. (2003). *Land Environments of New Zealand: Technical Guide*. Auckland: David Bateman Ltd.

<sup>14</sup> Walker, S.; Price, R.; Rutledge, D. (2005). *New Zealand's remaining indigenous cover: recent changes and biodiversity protection needs*. Report no: LC0405/038 prepared for Department of Conservation, by Landcare Research.

<sup>15</sup> Clarkson, B.; Wehi, P.; Brabyn, L. (2007). *Bringing back nature into cities: Urban land environments, indigenous cover and urban restoration*. CBER report No. 52. University of Waikato, Hamilton.

<sup>16</sup> Kivington, M.; Allen, W. (2005). *Social aspects of biodiversity in the urban environment*. In *Greening the City*. Royal New Zealand Institute of Horticulture (inc.).

Introduced species can provide complementary food for a range of indigenous species. For example, the presence of bottlebrush from Australia provides a feeding source for tui. A forest stand, whether indigenous or exotic, provides an extra dimension of habitat (height) in comparison with grassland. This is reflected in the indigenous insect and bird populations that find cover in these habitats.

Our primary production is dependent on introduced biodiversity in agriculture, horticulture and forestry. The revenue from this introduced biodiversity also enables us to further protect our indigenous biodiversity.

Introduced species can be used to effectively convey conservation messages and used as examples for education purposes, such as at Wellington Zoo and the Wellington Botanic Garden. The messages of conservation and sustainability can be shared regardless of the provenance of the species involved. These places also run breeding and propagation programmes, safeguarding global genetic biodiversity in a controlled environment.

Wellingtonians value many introduced species for aesthetic, cultural, and heritage reasons. Introduced species can enable the community to identify with the city by providing evidence of its past in the existing environment. For example, the Wellington Botanic Garden has some of the oldest radiata pine in the country (dating back to the 1860s), which went on to become New Zealand's main timber tree. One area of significance to local iwi is a karaka grove between Red Rocks/Pariwhero and Sinclair Head/Te Rimurapa, which is associated with a pre-European Māori settlement site. Karaka is native to the north of the North Island, but has been introduced to Wellington. Pohutukawa, another introduction to Wellington from the north of the North Island, is also of cultural significance and contributes to Wellington's sense of place.

The challenge is to find a balance between the benefits provided by introduced species and the threats they may present to local biodiversity. This balance is best determined on a case-by-case basis.

#### **Surrounding districts**

Wellington's biodiversity does not end at the edge of Wellington City's boundaries, neighbouring areas are very important. For example, many birds migrate to and from Kapiti Island in the north-west, the Tararuas to the north, and the Rimutakas to the east. Stream systems, such as that drained by the Porirua Stream, can incorporate multiple districts within their catchment area. Although this action plan focusses on Wellington City's biodiversity, we must be aware that it is not confined to legal boundaries and ensure that we work with our neighbours to ensure local biodiversity protection.

### **7.3 Future**

In the future, as a result of adaptive management, partnerships, and ongoing investment, Wellington has achieved the biodiversity goals stated in 2015.

Our significant ecosystems are healthy and resilient to change. They are valued and no longer under threat from people's actions. They contain a complex array of habitats and a large diversity of indigenous plants and animals thrive within them.

Urban and backyard conservation is at the centre of everything we do. We support and initiate restoration programmes across people's backyards as well as within reserves. Wellingtonians willingly contribute to the ongoing restoration and protection of their natural

environment. They know how important it is for them to spend time in natural areas and they eagerly do so, whether joining a community planting beside Owhiro stream, picnicking in Otari-Wilton's Bush, mountain biking in the Wellington Town Belt or snorkelling in Taputeranga Marine Reserve. There is national recognition of the role of urban parks in helping people to begin their natural journey, and the benefits to people encountering indigenous wildlife within our cities.

Restoration planting within reserves, large native street trees and people planting in their own backyards has created stepping stones between isolated remnants. This allows indigenous wildlife to disperse to surrounding areas, assisting in the ecological restoration of the city's wider habitats. All ecologically significant sites are protected and have large buffer zones, expanding and protecting them; and corridors where possible, linking areas through recently established community planting.

We have moved from focusing on planting for habitat creation to managing species in clever and innovative ways, working closely with our partners. We know exactly where our threatened species are and what they need within an urban context, and we are actively managing them to achieve their lasting protection. The species spilling out from sites such as Zealandia and Otari-Wilton's Bush inspire people to take action in their own backyards to make our city safe for indigenous wildlife.

Less effort is required to control and eradicate pest species and we continue to refine our methodologies, working closely with the community. We have reduced our dependence on toxins and chemical pest control, instead using innovative trapping methods and biocontrol to deal with environmental pests. Biocontrol agents have eliminated the threats of weed species such as tradescantia and darwins barberry. Miramar Peninsula has been designated as New Zealand's first pest free urban area and the difference to our biodiversity is noticeable.

Catchments all have coordinated groups of volunteers working across them. They are well vegetated and all streams have wide riparian strips dense with native vegetation. Streams within reserves have been daylighted, creating further habitat for indigenous freshwater species and areas for nature play. Barriers to fish passage have been removed and artificial wetlands capture and treat stormwater.

We have a clear understanding of how the aquatic system within Wellington works and despite ongoing growth, we manage our stormwater in a way that doesn't create any adverse effects on our freshwater or marine environments. We advocate for the marine environment and our role in this is supported and recognised by our partners.

Wellington is a sought-after destination for international and domestic visitors because of its amazing combination of natural areas and thriving wildlife within a vibrant city. Healthy ecosystems and accessible natural areas are seen as an inseparable part of our economic growth.

When other cities are trying to restore biodiversity in an urban context, they use Wellington as a case study for how it can be done. We share the knowledge we have and use it to continually improve our own biodiversity management.

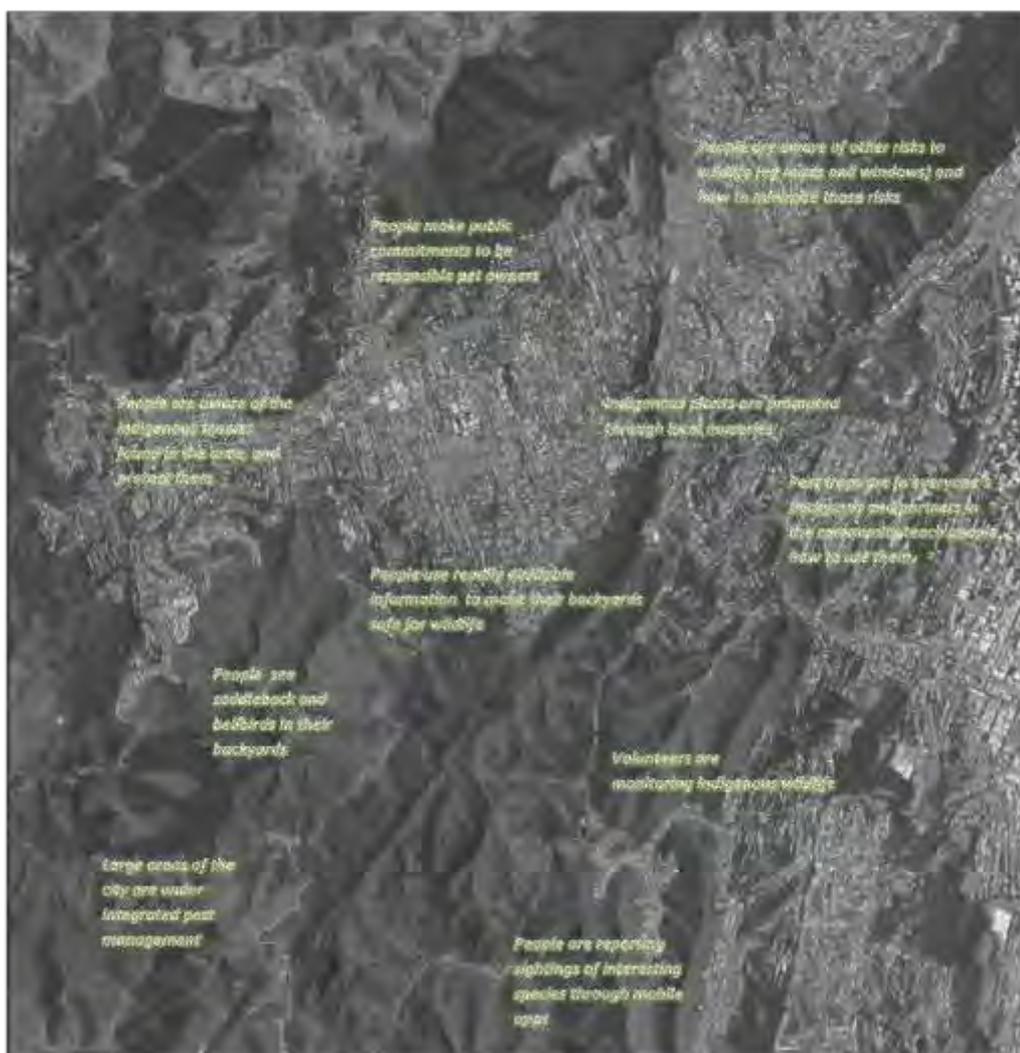
## 8. CONCEPT PLANS

These concept plans are an illustrative example of what the actions could look like when pulled together under a single overarching project. They describe generally, in narrative and with illustrations, the vision of each project and what its goals and objectives are. They provide a set of actions that, if followed, should ensure that the vision is realised.

### 8.1 Wildlife Safe Wellington

Wildlife Safe Wellington is about creating a safe haven for indigenous fauna through the city by maximising pest animal control and getting people planting in their backyards. It's an opportunity for a city to be the place where people connect with our indigenous fauna. This project strengthens current populations of indigenous fauna and allows them to spread.

Wildlife Safe Wellington means that nesting success of indigenous bird species has improved; people are aware of indigenous flora and fauna and are planting indigenous plant species in their backyards; they are visiting natural areas to experience indigenous biodiversity; backyards across the city are safe for and supporting indigenous wildlife, all Council reserves in Wellington are indigenous wildlife-friendly refuges.

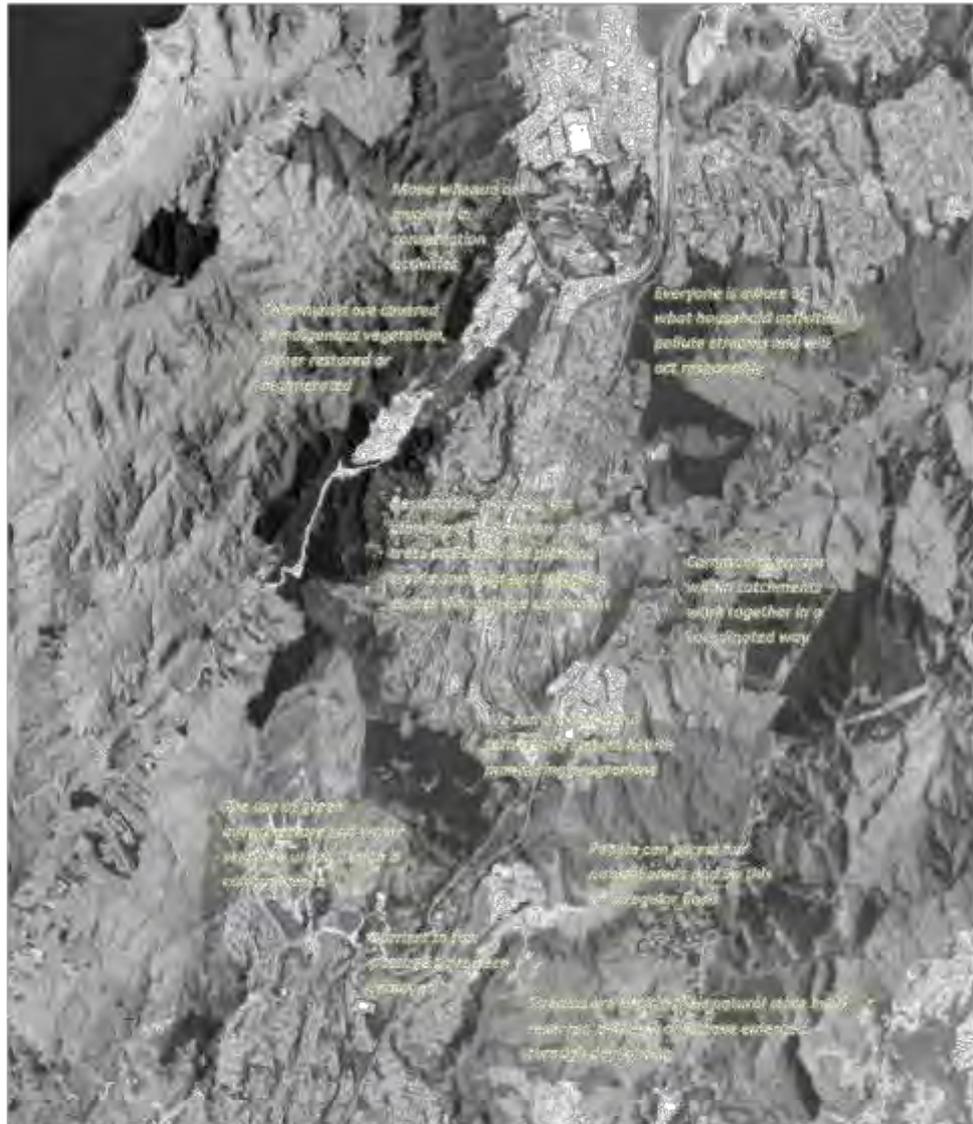




### 8.3 Community Catchments

Wellington is a city of catchments, which have people at their core. Community catchments is about carrying out integrated whole of ecosystem approaches to restoration. Building healthy terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems and strong communities.

Community restoration projects, whether focused on land or streams, will work together on a catchment based approach to enable holistic restoration. Biodiversity will be connected between land and stream, across different reaches of streams and across both public and private land. Individuals will be encouraged and supported to take action, and meaningfully contribute to monitoring the results of those actions.





## 9. ACTION PLAN

In order to establish healthy and resilient indigenous biodiversity within Wellington, we need to focus on certain areas. We need to protect what we have, we need to restore what is degraded, we need to research the requirements of our biodiversity and the best methods for looking after it, and we need to connect people to it.

These actions are covered under the following areas: protect, restore, connect and research.

Many of the actions will be funded through budgets developed for the relevant asset management plans and annual plans.

Other actions will be funded through alternative budget sources. This means funds will be sought from sources such as sponsorship and grants in liaison with key internal and external partners such as government agencies, educational institutes and non-government-organisations. The actions outlined in this plan will be prioritised as part of Wellington City Council's planning and budgeting processes and itemised into work programmes.

*Funding: N = New funding required, E = Existing funding, Ex = Expansion of existing funding or reprioritisation within existing resources*

*Priority: 1 = Action essential to success of plan; 2 = Action important to the success of plan; 3 = Action useful to the success of the plan.*

*Time frame for completion: Ongoing, Short (1-3 years), Medium (3-5 years) or Long (5-10 years).*

### 1. PROTECT

<b>GOAL 1.1 – Priority biodiversity sites on public and private land are protected</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
1.1.1 Protect all areas of ecological significance on Council-owned land through active management, working with partners such as Greater Wellington Regional Council (GWRC)	a. Ensure that all ecologically significant areas on Council-owned land are vested as reserves	E	1	Ongoing
	b. When reviewing or preparing reserve management plans, ensure that biodiversity is recognised and provided for	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Create ecological management plans for all areas of ecologically significant public land, linking with local community groups, GWRC and iwi where applicable	E	1	Long
	d. Develop a master plan for Te Kopahau Reserve	E	1	Short
1.1.2 Identify and protect all areas of ecological significance on privately owned land through District Plan protection	a. Review Conservation Sites listed in the District Plan as part of the DP review	E	1	Short
	b. Include in the District Plan mechanisms to better protect significant ecological areas on private land	E	1	Short
	c. If there is an ecologically significant site on Open Space zoned land, investigate changing that zone to Conservation	E	3	Medium

<b>GOAL 1.2 – Rare, threatened or locally significant species are protected</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
1.2.1 Work with partners, including the Department of Conservation (DOC), community groups and others, to ensure that no nationally or regionally threatened or locally significant species is lost	a. Partner with relevant organisations for the in-situ and ex-situ protection of threatened species through the development of action plans for nationally or regionally threatened and locally significant species	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Be actively involved in the New Zealand	E	3	Ongoing

to Wellington, and ensure that genetic diversity is retained as far as possible	Indigenous Flora Seed Bank by contributing knowledge, seeds and appropriate permits.			
	c. Work with partners to locate and map all nationally or regionally threatened and locally significant species	E	1	Ongoing
1.2.2 Ensure that animal pest control is sufficient to allow for the survival of nationally or regionally threatened and locally significant species	a. Develop a set of guidelines for animal pest control methods based on the biodiversity outcomes we want to achieve	E	1	Short
	b. Establish the optimal bait station network across our reserve network and the frequency with which this network needs to be maintained	Ex	1	Short
	c. Ensure that animal pest control within a buffer zone around Zealandia is sufficient to allow for successful breeding	Ex	1	Short
	d. Establish criteria and protocols to decide which species within Wellington warrant additional protection if discovered through monitoring programme	Ex	2	Short

<b>GOAL 1.3 – Pest species are controlled to sufficient levels to protect our biodiversity, and eradicated if possible</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
1.3.1 Control pest animals and plants that threaten sites of ecological significance	a. Develop a revised pest management implementation plan and review the pest management programme to determine whether the size, scope, scale, intensity and duration are likely to sustain viable populations of key species (including vegetation and processes, birds, lizards, fish and invertebrates) within the Council's open space network and where possible on relevant private land	E	1	Short
	b. Carry out pest control based on priority sites in accordance with ecological significance criteria and priority threats	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Support other organisations carrying out control activities that fit with Council priorities	E	1	Ongoing
	d. Expand the number of hectares of ecologically significant public land under integrated pest control from 52% in 2014 to meet agreed target of 70% by 2020 and 100% by 2025	Ex	1	Long
	e. Identify and address gaps in the possum control network	N	2	Medium
	f. Adapt the National Pest Control Agency guidelines for ethical and humane practices for animal pest control for use by Council, its contractors and volunteers	E	3	Short
1.3.2 Control pest animals and plants with the greatest potential to have adverse impacts on indigenous biodiversity	a. Work with GWRC to maintain a list of Wellington pest plants with the greatest potential to increase their range and pose a threat to areas of ecological significance, and prioritise their control	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Carry out pest control based on priority species with the greatest potential to have adverse impacts, across all public land	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Work with other organisations (including GWRC, DOC, Predator Free NZ, Zero Invasive Predators) to ensure we are using the best methodologies for controlling pest species			
	d. Protect key lizard populations in known high	Ex	1	Short

	priority areas - review pest control for mustelids, hedgehogs and rodents, particularly in south coast parks such as Red Rocks, Moa Point, Point Donset, Tarakena Bay and Palmer Head			
	e. Continue sustained control of feral goats across the south-west peninsula with the ongoing aim of ultimately eradicating feral goats. Continue to seek more tools including regulatory tools to achieve eradication	E	2	Ongoing
	f. Work closely with the New Zealand Transport Agency (NZTA) and OnTrack to remove significant environmental pest plants from transport corridors not owned by the Council	N	2	Medium
1.3.3 Increase the area of land under integrated pest control by supporting landowners, occupiers and community groups to take an active role in controlling pest plants and animals and preventing the spread of pests in the city	a. Support the capacity of new and existing community groups to engage in pest animal and pest plant control	Ex	1	Short
	b. Implement animal pest control in the areas of rural land to the south-west of Zealandia	E	2	Short
	c. Work with other stakeholders to explore the possibility of making Miramar Peninsula pest free	Ex	3	Long

<b>GOAL 1.4 – The impact of urban growth and human activity on all ecosystems and remaining habitat is managed</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
1.4.1 Ensure that all ecological and recreation values of open spaces are recognised in the District Plan, including for their future potential as part of a city green network, and for the ecosystem services they deliver such as health and wellbeing benefits	a. Identify all sites of ecological significance and sites that are important, or could be, for maintaining or enhancing connectivity between ecologically significant sites.	E	1	Short
	b. Initiate a review of Conservation sites in the District Plan to ensure that all the sites identified in 1.4.1.a on public land (including important buffer zones and corridors) are listed as Conservation Sites or Open Space	E	1	Short
	c. Seek to protect all the sites on private land sites identified in 1.4.1.a through a review of Conservation sites in the District Plan, voluntary agreements and /or acquisition	E	1	Short
	d. Identify areas of road reserve that could be reclassified as reserve and carry out road stopping, where those areas are not needed for roading purposes, they contain forest remnants or significant vegetation over 0.5ha in area and adjoin an existing reserve	N	2	Long
1.4.2 Increase regulatory protection through the District Plan provisions for all sites of ecological significance (including ecological linkages) to prevent further clearance and fragmentation	a. Provide specialist ecological advice on District Plan changes and conditions on consents	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Ensure District Plan changes adequately protect biodiversity values through goals, policies and rules	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Monitor regulatory effectiveness to ensure that compliance around biodiversity protection and restoration is achieved	Ex	2	Ongoing
1.4.3 Reduce impacts of urban development and land-use on aquatic ecosystems	a. Assist Wellington Water and stakeholders to complete Integrated Catchment Management Plans for Wellington's eight catchments: Lambton Harbour/Oriental Bay, Evans Bay, Island Bay/Houghton Bay, Lyall Bay, South-east Coast, Owhiro Bay, Kāwharawhara, and Onslow/Ngearanga/Horokiki	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Work with GWRC and within the Council to ensure no new permanent barriers to fish	E	1	Ongoing

**Item 2.1 Attachment 1**

	passage are created through works in streams or stormwater systems where these link significant stream habitat together.			
	c. Ensure that Council chemical use has no net negative impact on aquatic ecosystems	E	1	Ongoing
	d. Build on our relationship with partners working on the protection of the marine environment, focussing on education programmes.	E	1	Ongoing
	e. Retain all streams on reserve land in a natural state	E	1	Ongoing
	f. Under District Plan provisions, and considering the approach set out in Policy 43 of the RPS (protecting the aquatic ecological function of water bodies), prevent any further loss of whitebait spawning sites, and require that any significant works within whitebait spawning areas restores their operation	E	1	Short
	g. Integrate best practice WSUD into Council projects	E	2	Ongoing
	h. Complete mapping of streams as part of asset mapping of all stormwater infrastructure	E	2	Short
	i. Develop technical detail of Water Sensitive Urban Design (WSUD) in the Code of Practice for Land Development	E	2	Short
	j. Develop updated guidelines for earthworks on small sites in collaboration with GWRC	E	2	Short
	k. Identify and prioritise streams that should be kept in their natural state and strengthen provisions in the District Plan for their protection	E	2	Short
	l. Ensure there are provisions in the District Plan to protect and enhance riparian strips	E	2	Short
	m. Ensure that all contractors working in and around streams have undertaken sediment control training	Ex	2	Medium
	n. Develop at least one example of best practice WSUD in a high-profile location	N	3	Long
1.4.4 Ensure existing biodiversity is conserved and enhanced on proposed development sites	a. Develop evidence based guidelines and criteria (working with stakeholders) for trail development on Council owned land to balance recreational needs with ecological values.	E	2	Short
	b. Educate and advise landowners and developers around methods for protecting natural values in developments and sub-divisions, including enhancing ecosystems and recreational opportunities through habitat creation, pest control, low-impact urban design and water sensitive urban design	Ex	1	Medium
	c. Provide consent officers with access to up-to-date information and interpretation of information so they can make informed decisions	E	2	Ongoing
	d. Investigate the impact of street lighting on biodiversity as part of new developments	E	3	Long
1.4.5 Advocate for biodiversity values to be included in all Council plans, strategies and programmes that potentially impact on these values	a. We will incorporate biodiversity principles into Council plans and policies such as the Code of Practice for Land Development, Subdivision Design Guidelines.	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Consider the impact of future climate change on all biodiversity management activities	E	2	Ongoing

**2. RESTORE**

<b>GOAL 2.1: The loss or decline of our indigenous biodiversity is reversed, and self-sustaining and resilient ecosystems created</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
2.1.1 Create resilient and self-sustaining ecosystems	a. Continue the Council's restoration planting programme of at least 45,000 native eco-sourced plants annually	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Create a city wide planting strategy (including suburban areas and the CBD) to ensure a representative range of sites across the different ecosystems – forest, shrubland, wetland, streamside (riparian), rocky shore and coastal – are included as part of the Council's restoration planting programme	E	1	Ongoing
	c. As part of the strategy, ensure that a mix of plant types is included in the restoration planting programme, including emergent trees, climbers and groundcovers	E	1	Ongoing
	d. Write citywide guidelines for enrichment planting, including where best to source plant propagules, different species' habitat requirements, the importance of mycorrhizal associations, and the most effective methods of propagation	E	2	Short
2.1.2 Continue to use eco-sourced plant material and promote it to the wider community	a. Review eco-sourcing guidelines for use in different practical contexts, involving relevant organisations and community groups	E	1	Short
	b. Continue the provision of eco-sourced plants through Berhampore Nursery	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Work with community and private nurseries to ensure they all have seed collection permits and are following eco-sourcing guidelines	E	1	Short
2.1.3 Restore the function of ecosystems, recognising the role that all species may play	a. Evaluate the ecological function of large exotic trees on public land and if removals are required (eg for safety reasons), consider replacing that function before removals occur	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Trial ways of restoring native forest underneath a canopy of exotic conifers to build on our knowledge of long term restoration options in these environments	E	1	Short
	c. Initiate a programme to gradually replace over-mature conifers with native vegetation over 20-30 years, in accordance with priorities in existing management plans such as the Wellington Town Belt Management Plan	E	2	Ongoing
	d. Ensure that future Council amenity and landscape planting (including street trees) will not threaten indigenous biodiversity, and enhance indigenous biodiversity where practicable	E	2	Ongoing
	e. Trial the practice of damaging weed trees where appropriate and leaving them standing (veteranisation) to create cavities for birds, lizards and insects	Ex	2	Short
<b>GOAL 2.2: Aquatic ecosystem health across the city is improved</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
2.2.1 Continue stream restoration programmes in accordance with	a. Continue streamside (riparian) planting programme (including indigenous vegetation)	E	1	Ongoing

community and catchment priorities	buffers)			
	b. Identify and prioritise streams that should be restored from their current state	E	1	Short
	c. Support or seek funding with agencies such as Million Metre Streams, supporting community groups to apply for funding via these organisations	E	1	Short
	d. Ensure all Council works in stream are in accordance with GWRC best practice guidelines	E	1	Ongoing
	e. Conduct walkover of Kaiwharawhara, Owhiro and Haape streams to map and identify barriers to fish passage	N	1	Short
	f. Seek to restore (daylight) piped sections of stream within large natural catchments to contribute to overall stream network health	E	2	Ongoing
	g. Prioritise barriers to fish passage and schedule their modification or removal as part of an annual programme	N	2	Medium
	h. Work with local farmers to fence and plant riparian areas on their land.	N	2	Long

<b>GOAL 2.3: Restoration programmes are in place for rare, threatened or locally significant species</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
2.3.1 Ensure threatened fauna has the habitat needed to complete lifecycles	a. Plant food species for threatened fauna as part of restoration planting programmes	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Install suitable nesting sites for cavity nesting species in reserves where these species are known to be present.	N	2	Short
2.3.2 Re-establish populations of threatened plants in Wellington	a. Propagate threatened species at Council nurseries for planting as part of the restoration planting programme	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Work with community and professional nurseries on the propagation of threatened species	E	1	Ongoing
2.3.3 Work in partnership with other organisations to develop species restoration programmes for both terrestrial and aquatic species	a. Work with DOC to ensure the Council is following 'threatened species recovery plans' where these are in place	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Support other organisations with restoration programmes where these are already in place	E	2	Ongoing
	c. Consult other organisations to ensure current species restoration programmes are being followed	E	2	Short
	d. Work with relevant organisations to investigate the restoration of indigenous fauna through reintroduction programmes	N	2	Medium

<b>GOAL 2.4: Ecological networks are developed across the landscape</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
2.4.1 Create connections between reserves for key plant and animal species (ie create a Green Network Plan)	a. Identify key species for which connections would be beneficial and can be achieved	E	1	Short
	b. Identify individual dispersal mechanisms and requirements for each of these key species and where current populations are located	E	1	Short
	c. Carry out restoration planting and strategic street planting where practicable to allow for travel of these key species between core areas	E	2	Medium
	d. Prepare a discussion paper on roadside reserves as potential corridors between remnants	E	2	Medium
	e. Work with private landowners to close gaps	N	2	Long

	between identified ecologically significant areas where the reserve network is not sufficient			
2.4.2 Work with private landowners to restore areas of ecological significance	a. Assist landowners with seeking grants to fund the ecological restoration on sites with identified ecologically significant areas	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Identify and prioritise the areas of private land that contain large areas of prime and secondary forest remnant or wetlands and work with landowners of these sites on restoration programmes	E	1	Short
	c. Give advice to private landowners on restoration planting	E	2	Ongoing
	d. Work with QEII to protect ecologically significant sites on private land	Ex	2	Short
	e. Identify, create and implement incentives to get people to care for biodiversity on private land	Ex	2	Medium
	f. Work with private landowners to create ecological restoration plans for areas of ecological significance	Ex	2	Long
2.4.3 Work with Porirua City Council, Lower Hutt City Council, GWRC and DOC to ensure cross-boundary management of important catchments and ecosystems	a. Work with Porirua City Council, GWRC and Ngāti Toa on the implementation of the Porirua Harbour Strategy	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Work with GWRC on the establishment and implementation of the Porirua and Wellington Harbour Whatūias	E	1	Short
	c. Work with GWRC to identify the spread of species between Belmont Regional Park and Council Northern reserves	Ex	3	Medium

### 3. CONNECT

GOAL 3.1: Biodiversity is a common experience for all Wellingtonians				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
3.1.1 Ensure all Wellingtonians encounter nature on a daily basis	a. Promote and increase use of native plantings in Council amenity planting, particularly within the central city.	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Investigate the use of live feed cameras on bird nests (eg kaka and/or little blue penguin, and/or underwater marine environment in inner harbour) and promote these images to the public	N	2	Medium
	c. Increase the number of large trees planted in the central city, focussing in particular on the east-west connections. Explore the use of suitable local native tree species.	Ex	2	Long
	d. Make green infrastructure and water-sensitive urban design (WSUD) standard as part of new buildings and upgrades within the Council property portfolio	N	2	Long
	e. Incorporate indigenous biodiversity into Wellington's urban design strategies	E	3	Medium
	f. Include New Zealand nature and natural imagery into public space upgrade projects	E	3	Medium
	g. Install green roofs and walls on at least one public building in the central city and surrounds	N	3	Medium
3.1.2 Ensure Wellingtonians connect with nature as part of recreation activities	a. Ensure all Wellingtonians in suburban and urban areas can access a natural space within a 10-minute walk or cycle	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Support the development of community gardens	E	2	Ongoing

	and edible planting groups			
	c. Restore natural areas near key recreational areas such as sportsfields and playgrounds	E	2	Medium
	d. Promote cycling and walking links through and along the appropriate green and blue networks	E	3	Ongoing
	e. Ensure legal protection over private land provides for public access where practicable	E	3	Ongoing
	f. Promote and protect areas which provide tranquil green space to assist with mental health and wellbeing	N	3	Long

<b>GOAL 3.2: People understand the importance and value of biodiversity to their wellbeing</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
3.2.1 Raise Wellingtonians' awareness of the significance and value of biodiversity	a. Educate the public around Council use of indigenous vegetation to increase community awareness and appreciation of local plants eg through Otari-Wilton's Bush, garden beds and traffic island displays; identify suitable indigenous species for specimen planting where appropriate	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Celebrate our indigenous biodiversity and our successes in relation to its conservation	E	2	Ongoing
	c. Create and install interpretive signage within key reserve areas to educate people about the biodiversity values of that area	N	2	Ongoing
	d. Create and install interpretation materials telling stories of cultural and natural history and promoting community restoration initiatives	N	3	Long
3.2.2 Use technology to connect people with biodiversity and ensure that people have access to current information on biodiversity	a. Inform and educate the public through a number of activities and programmes, including production of communications such as our e-newsletter Branch Out	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Promote Nature Watch as a citizen science tool to collect information on biodiversity and environmental pest species	E	2	Ongoing
	c. Have all biodiversity information and research available through the Council website	E	2	Medium
	d. Develop an easily used species identification guide for lizards and implement standardised lizard reporting procedures	E	3	Short
	e. Create a physical public research hub where the community can access research advice and reference collections	N	3	Medium
	f. Develop smart and easily accessible information to enable people to access areas of high biodiversity, including smart phone applications and interactive mapping	E	3	Medium
3.2.3 Give children and youth the opportunity to experience and learn about nature	a. Create the Children's Garden at the Wellington Botanic Garden to fire the imagination of children and inspire adventures	N	1	Short
	b. Create opportunities for schools to get involved in conservation initiatives and edible planting and identify which schools are near to reserves that could be "adopted"	E	1	Short
	c. Continue to produce educational resources at Otari-Wilton's Bush to enhance visits by schools and other interested parties	E	2	Ongoing
	d. Where appropriate and aligned with our strategy, continue support for environmental	E	2	Ongoing

	education programmes eg Enviroschools, Wellington Zoo's Bush Builders programme and the Zealandia education programme			
e.	Review the Council's environmental education approach and develop a more coherent approach to working with children, schools and other environmental education providers	E	2	Short
f.	Create at least one natural playscape and use natural elements in other playground upgrades	N	2	Medium
g.	Identify and promote outdoor recreation opportunities for children and youth	F	J	Short

<b>GOAL 3.3: More people are connected to nature, so take action to protect and restore biodiversity</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
3.3.1 Promote responsible pet ownership to protect wildlife in our open spaces	a. Review the animal control bylaw and use it to minimise the impact of pets on native biodiversity	E	2	Short
	b. Work with partner organisations to reduce the impact of cats (domestic, stray and feral) on our indigenous wildlife. Run education and awareness programmes to encourage people to desex cats and keep them indoors as much as possible.	N	2	Short
	c. Investigate subsidising microchipping for cats near sensitive wildlife areas as a voluntary approach.	E	2	Short
	d. Work with partners to run a behaviour change programme informing people of the need to keep dogs on leashes near sensitive wildlife areas to protect ground dwelling/nesting birds, such as coastal penguin habitat and in forests during crucial fledging periods	N	2	Medium
3.3.3 Promote enhanced biodiversity awareness in all Council practices	a. Work with all Council business units and Council controlled organisations to have input into relevant Council standards and policy	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Run at least one internal training programme per year on issues relating to biodiversity. These should initially focus on threatened environments such as streams and dunes	E	2	Ongoing
3.3.5 Increase active participation in biodiversity projects and celebrate that action	a. Publicise biodiversity projects through Council channels and work with NatureSpace portal to assist people to volunteer and get involved	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Publicise the Council's and other organisations' activities, events and achievements relating to Wellington's biodiversity through social media, media articles and publications	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Promote opportunities for people to participate in decision-making affecting biodiversity (RMA processes, submitting to Council, joining ERG etc)	E	2	Ongoing
3.3.6 Engage the wider community in Citizen Science projects	a. Continue involvement in the annual backyard bird survey and the Kereru Count	E	2	Ongoing
	b. Engage the community in other species-based programmes such as lizard monitoring, potentially using NatureWatch as a tool	N	2	Ongoing
	c. Lead one BioBlitz (terrestrial and aquatic) within Wellington every 3 years	N	2	Short
3.3.7 Encourage and support individuals and households to take action to support biodiversity	a. Continue to support annual initiatives with partner organisations that encourage all people to remove weeds from their gardens and plant	E	1	Ongoing

Item 2.1 Attachment 1

	native plants instead			
	b. Implement an awareness programme about environmental weeds (including native weeds), the impact of garden dumping and risk of birds and wind spreading seeds to nearby parks and reserves	E	1	Short
	c. Encourage people to have wildlife friendly backyards by providing information on creating habitat and planting food species	E	1	Short
	d. Work with the community to explore options for chemical free pest control and recommend chemical free approaches for small scale operations	E	3	Medium
	e. Promote backyard trapping by providing information and facilitating the supply of equipment	N	1	Short
	f. Develop and publish plant lists and guides for zones around Wellington (based on species that originally grew there) so people can be informed about the appropriate species to plant	E	1	Short
	g. Work with partners (including Wellington Water) to provide and promote information on the impact of household activities, such as car washing and the use of paint and chemicals, on water pollution	Ex	2	Ongoing
	h. Investigate possible options to get more green waste from the city going to the compost facility at the Southern Landfill	Ex	2	Medium
	i. Work with community partners to establish a teaching garden to educate people on the difference between similar plant species (both weed and native)	Ex	2	Medium

GOAL 3.4: We work with a range of partners towards a shared vision for Wellington's biodiversity				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
3.4.1 Work in partnership with iwi and other Māori groups	a. Ensure local mana whenua have the opportunity to be involved in conservation initiatives	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Identify areas of traditional Māori use and biodiversity value, and work with iwi to conduct an assessment of biodiversity sites of cultural significance	E	2	Medium
	c. Identify opportunities on Council parks and reserves where rongoa Māori can be celebrated, plants labelled and interpretation provided	E	3	Medium
	d. Identify opportunities on Council parks and reserves where species required for raranga can be cultivated eg pa harakeke	E	3	Medium
	e. Explore opportunities to use appropriate traditional structures and buildings in our interpretation (for example pou whenua, waharoa	E	3	Long
3.4.2 Collaborate with partners to achieve agreed goals, effectively utilising resources and creating strong partnerships	a. Continue relationships between organisations with a strong biodiversity focus, such as Wellington Zoo, WWF-New Zealand, Zealandia and Forest & Bird	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Partner with other agencies to support the NatureSpace portal for community restoration work	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Continue to support Restoration Day	E	1	Ongoing

	d. Facilitate discussions to agree a shared direction for Wellington region's biodiversity outcomes with partners to ensure efficiencies by not duplicating work and responsibilities	E	1	Short
3.4.3 Work with partners to identify opportunities for increased business involvement and support	a. Pursue opportunities for business involvement and partnerships including sponsorship, planting programmes, encouraging sustainable business practices. Support and encourage corporate volunteer programmes	E	2	Ongoing
	b. Develop guidelines with other organisations that use corporate volunteers, such as DOC and GWRC, to establish in which sites corporates should engage	E	2	Medium
3.4.4 Support and build the capacity of existing and new community groups engaging in biodiversity projects	a. Continue the Living City grants scheme with an ongoing financial commitment of at least \$80,000 per annum to support projects on public and private land that have biodiversity benefits for Wellington	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Continue to provide at least 34,000 native eco-sourced plants annually to the community	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Continue support for environmental restoration groups through the provision of plants, materials, technical advice and in-kind support	E	1	Ongoing
	d. Develop an annual programme of training and workshops to complement Restoration Day (in partnership with DOC, GWRC and NGOs)	E	1	Short
	e. Facilitate the establishment of a community plant nursery network to promote best practice, access to training opportunities and cooperation	E	1	Short
	f. Ensure information on funding sources is available for community groups to carry out biodiversity conservation work. Promote funding sources available for private landowners to protect and manage biodiversity on their own land (including carbon credits)	E	2	Ongoing
	g. As part of a city wide planting strategy, identify where groups are working in areas with missing plant species, and ensure those groups have the ability to plant those species	E	2	Medium
	h. Facilitate the coordination between community environmental groups, including potential mergers, to ensure a sustainable community contribution to conservation.	E	2	Ongoing

#### 4. RESEARCH

Goal 4.1: Wellington City Council has increased understanding and knowledge of biodiversity				
Objectives	Action	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
4.1.1 Identify and monitor locally important sites and species	a. Ensure that all known populations of threatened plants are captured digitally and monitored	Ex	1	Ongoing
	b. Ensure that staff collect information on new populations of locally important species	E	1	Ongoing
	c. To ensure we have accurate information, re-survey the boundaries of ecologically significant sites	N	1	Short
	d. Conduct a bat survey to establish whether populations are present in Wellington	N	2	Short
	e. Follow up surveys for Ngahere geckos, barking geckos, spotted skinks, Kupe skinks and ornate	N	2	Short

	skinks using more intensive methods in surveyed parks and reserves with good habitat			
	f. Support researchers gathering information on invertebrates	<i>N</i>	3	<i>Medium</i>
4.1.2 Identify habitat requirements for key species	a. Compile information on the nesting requirements for key bird species and work out where species are present with limited breeding habitat	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	b. Compile information on habitat and dispersal requirements for all freshwater fish species	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	c. Compile information on the microhabitat requirements of all threatened plant species	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	d. Establish the dispersal requirements of sensitive forest-dependent species, such as North Island robins	<i>Ex</i>	2	<i>Medium</i>
4.1.3 Ensure the Council has relevant and current information on the requirements of threatened species	a. Establish regular meetings with DOC biodiversity staff to ensure all information on rare, threatened or locally significant species is shared, including reports of dead animals and recent sightings	<i>E</i>	2	<i>Short</i>
	b. Continue to gather knowledge on the threats to threatened species and use this knowledge to adapt management programmes	<i>E</i>	2	<i>Ongoing</i>

<b>Goal 4.2: Environmental monitoring is consistent across the city, region and country and informs our biodiversity management</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
4.2.1 Follow international best practice for citywide biodiversity monitoring	a. Carry out the City Biodiversity Index (see 10.1) and put information on Council website. Re-evaluate every 5 years to monitor progress.	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
4.2.2 Monitor biodiversity indicators and outcomes in collaboration with partners	a. Set up consistent terrestrial outcomes monitoring framework and annual programme (incorporating existing monitoring work) in a collaborative approach with other key organisations – to include vegetation monitoring, bird monitoring, lizard monitoring	<i>Ex</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	b. Set up consistent biosecurity output monitoring to evaluate effectiveness of pest animal and plant control programmes	<i>N</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	c. Ensure common indicators for biodiversity monitoring are used so data can be easily aggregated	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Short</i>
	d. Carry out a monitoring programme for Wellington's streams using the Macroinvertebrate Community Index (MCI)	<i>N</i>	1	<i>Medium</i>
	e. We will work with Greater Wellington Regional Council to monitor the abundance and distribution of high threat Regional Pest Management Plan pest plants on public land	<i>Ex</i>	2	<i>Medium</i>
	f. Work with other organisations to establish monitoring techniques suitable for community groups and individual landowners	<i>E</i>	2	<i>Short</i>
	g. Establish best practice monitoring for urban environments	<i>Ex</i>	2	<i>Medium</i>
	h. Set up permanent 20x20 forest plots in reserves across the city and a programme to reevaluate current plots	<i>E</i>	2	<i>Medium</i>
4.2.3 Monitor effects of stormwater runoff on the freshwater and marine	a. Work with Wellington Water to implement the global discharge consent	<i>E</i>	1	<i>Ongoing</i>
	b. Work with Hutt City Council to support	<i>E</i>	2	<i>Ongoing</i>

environment	GWRC's Wellington Harbour sediment investigation monitoring looking at levels of sediment build-up and effects on biodiversity			(every 5 years)
	c. Support research through Victoria University Coastal Ecology lab on the effects of heavy metals and sediment on the marine environment	N	2	Medium
4.2.4 Set up systems to ensure monitoring information is used to improve management of biodiversity, taking climate change into consideration	a. Continue review of Council restoration programmes through monitoring planting success	E	1	Ongoing
	b. Continue review of environmental weed species and their spread in Wellington through weed mapping	E	1	Ongoing
	c. Carry out research on indigenous tree species to determine suitability for specimen and street tree planting	E	2	Medium
	d. In order to obtain information on predator presence, conduct monitoring for pests in all the parks with high numbers of lizard or bird densities and species	N	2	Medium
	e. Monitor the survival of all planted threatened species to improve knowledge of microhabitat requirements	E	2	Ongoing

<b>Goal 4.3: We actively seek and share knowledge about Wellington's biodiversity</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
4.3.1 Continually identify and coordinate local research needs	a. Fund university research to work on projects aligned with the Council's urban ecology research needs	Ex	1	Short
	b. Maintain a research database collating all past and potential research topics	E	2	Medium
	c. Work with Victoria University and Zealandia to develop a centre of excellence in ecological restoration, and encourage and publicise research with a purpose	E	2	Long
4.3.2 Establish a biodiversity network for information sharing	a. Facilitate discussions with key people to decide the best method for interagency cooperation and collaboration on biodiversity related matters, and ensure the implementation of an agreed system	E	1	Short
	b. Support initiatives from other organisations on the development of a biodiversity information-sharing mechanism	E	2	Medium
4.3.3 Have one source of information for everyone	a. Capture all high level biodiversity information related to the Council in the GIS system in a way it can be shared with external organisations	E	1	Short
	b. Develop processes so that information available to the public is updated at the same time as other Council databases	E	3	Medium

<b>Goal 4.4: Through knowledge we have gained, we are continually improving our biodiversity management</b>				
Objectives	Actions	Funding	Priority	Timeframe
4.4.1 Continue to improve our internal expertise and capacity in biodiversity conservation	a. Ensure staff have the ability to set up and monitor forest plots and the ability to carry out rapid vegetation assessment surveys	E	1	Short
	b. Remain informed about the impact of climate change to ensure current species selection is appropriate	E	2	Ongoing
	c. Add requirement for 'consideration of impact on indigenous biodiversity' to Council report templates	E	1	Short

**Item 2.1 Attachment 1**

4.4.2 Ensure that the community can get involved in research, including monitoring	a. Facilitate training programmes for community groups that want to carry out monitoring across all terrestrial and aquatic environments	<i>E</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>Short</i>
	b. Develop a meaningful community stream health monitoring programme and a mechanism for the collection and sharing of that information	<i>N</i>	<i>3</i>	<i>Medium</i>
4.4.3 Promote best practice in biodiversity protection locally, regionally, nationally and worldwide	a. Ensure that all knowledge gained through Council programmes is shared through appropriate forums and the Nature Space website	<i>E</i>	<i>1</i>	<i>Short</i>

## 10. MEASURING WELLINGTON CITY COUNCIL'S PERFORMANCE

Accurately and openly monitoring biodiversity trends (and the results of actions we are taking) is essential to determine if progress has been made. Performance measures are used to translate goals and objectives into measurable indicators of progress. They are a vital part of an adaptive management approach, and provide useful information for decision makers to evaluate if actions are successful in addressing goals and objectives.

In addition to these performance measures, Council will establish a consistent monitoring framework (see objective 4.2.2) which will bring together existing monitoring and address any gaps.

Performance measures have been divided into two categories, the **City Biodiversity Index** (which measures outcomes) and **Operational monitoring** (which measures outputs).

Unfortunately there is limited historical data in some areas available to measure our progress against. In these cases we need to establish baseline information to ensure that our progress into the future can be measured.

### 10.1 City Biodiversity Index

The following indicators are from the City Biodiversity Index<sup>17</sup> and will be used as a baseline measure for the city, and then a measure by which we can assess our progress. The aim is to see an increase in all these indicator measures to increase over time. This index provides high level monitoring to look at long term trends and how we are tracking to achieve our outcomes. City wide bird counts are incorporated into this index, and also reported through Council annual plans.

Indicator	Explanation	How to calculate
1. Proportion of natural areas in Wellington City	<i>Natural ecosystems harbour more species than disturbed ones, hence the percentage of natural areas compared to that of the total city area gives an indication of the biodiversity richness. Natural areas comprise predominantly native species and natural ecosystems, which are no longer, or only slightly influenced by human actions, except where such action is intended to protect or restore native biodiversity.</i>	(Total area of natural areas, restored and regenerated areas) / (Total area of city) * 100%
2. Connectivity between ecological sites	<i>Fragmentation of natural areas is one of the main threats to biodiversity in a city. The fragmentation of natural areas affects species differently. To encourage positive action to increase connectivity or reduce barriers to connectivity, it is more meaningful to measure connectivity rather than fragmented plots. This indicator score can be improved when more of the fragments are connected.</i>	$\frac{1}{A_{total}} = (A1^2 + A2^2 + A3^2 + \dots + An^2)$ <p>Where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>· n is the total number of connected natural areas</li> <li>· Atotal is the total area of all natural areas</li> <li>· A1 to An are areas that are distinct from each other (i.e. not connected). They may consist of areas that are the sum of two or more smaller patches which are connected (less than 100m apart).</li> </ul>

<sup>17</sup> Convention on Biological Diversity. User's Manual for the City Biodiversity Index. 2012.

		<p>However, exceptions to the above rule includes anthropogenic barriers such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Roads (15m or more in width; or are smaller but have a high traffic volume of more than 5000 cars per day)</li> <li>- Any other artificial structures that the Council would consider as a barrier</li> </ul>
3. Native biodiversity in built-up areas (bird species)	<p><i>Cities comprise largely of urban, suburban and rural sites with minimal natural features. However, built-up areas do harbour biodiversity. Some urban, suburban and rural sites have more biodiversity than others. By enhancing certain features in such areas, the biodiversity could improve. Hence, native biodiversity in urban, suburban and rural sites should be an indicator. We have the most data on bird species, therefore this taxonomic group will be used as the indicator. Implementing appropriate measures such as planting, may attract birds into these areas of the city.</i></p>	<p>The total number of native bird species in built-up areas which includes urban parks, golf courses, private gardens, cemeteries, roadside planting and impermeable surfaces like buildings and roads.</p>
4. Change in number of native species	<p><i>Five key taxonomic groups have been selected as "core indicators" – birds, vascular plants, butterflies, lizards and freshwater fish. The indicators will measure the change in number of species over time rather than the absolute number of the species. Conducting more surveys on the target groups will result in the finding of and reintroducing 'extinct' native species would help to increase the number of extant native species.</i></p>	<p>Once a baseline has been established, net change in species from one survey to the next is measured as: Total increase in number of species (as a result of rediscovery, new species found, re-introduction) minus the number of species that have gone locally extinct</p>
5. Proportion of protected natural areas	<p><i>Protected or secured natural areas indicate the city's commitment to biodiversity conservation. The definition of protected natural areas includes legally protected, formally secured areas, and other administratively protected areas.</i></p>	<p>(Area of protected or secured natural area) / (Total area of the city) *100%</p>
6. Climate regulation: carbon storage and cooling effect of vegetation	<p><i>Two important aspects of climate regulation are carbon storage and cooling effects provided by vegetation, in particular tree canopy cover. Canopy cover of trees, which includes those that are naturally occurring and planted, is accepted as an indirect measure of the carbon sequestration and storage services. The extent of tree canopy cover can also act as a proxy measure for filtering of air and numerous other biodiversity benefits.</i></p>	<p>Tree canopy cover can be measured via satellite and LIDAR imagery.  {Tree canopy cover} / {Total terrestrial area of the city} * 100%</p>
7. Amount of accessible green space	<p><i>Biodiversity provides invaluable recreational, spiritual, cultural and educational services. It is essential for physical and psychological health. This measure ensures social equity within the community with regards to equal access to natural areas</i></p>	<p>(Area of parks and reserves with natural areas) / 1000 persons</p>
8. Proportion of invasive exotic species (as opposed to native)	<p><i>Exotic invasive species are species whose introduction and/ or spread threaten biodiversity. It is inevitable in cities, which are open to external influences, to have</i></p>	<p>To ensure that the comparison of invasive exotic species with that of native species is meaningful, it needs to be a comparison of identical taxonomic groups. Therefore</p>

species)	<i>exotic species. Exotic species which are not invasive or detrimental to native species are not considered in this indicator. In fact in many cities, exotic species enhance the diversity.</i>	for this measure we will look at vascular plants and bird species. (Number of invasive exotic species) / (Number of native species) * 100%
9. Regulation of the quantity of water	<i>Climate change is in many places predicted to result in increased variability in precipitation which in urban landscapes translates to high peaks in water-flow and damage to construction, business and transport. Open space and vegetation has a significant effect in reducing the rate of flow of water through the urban landscape. This indicator looks at the proportion of all permeable areas to the total terrestrial area of the city.</i>	Proportion of all permeable areas (including areas identified in indicator 1 plus other parks, roadside greenery, green roofs, private gardens, streams etc) to total terrestrial area of the city (excluding marine areas and artificial permeable surfaces)  (Total permeable area) / (Total terrestrial area of the city) * 100%
10. Number of formal education visits per child to natural areas	<i>Involving our young people with nature is an essential part of achieving our goals. This measure gives an indication of school children's use of recreational services provided by ecosystems and ensures that our green spaces are being utilised by formal education providers.</i>	Number of formal education visits per child below 16 years to parks and reserves with natural areas. The Council will have to work with schools to gather information on this measure.
11. Number of biodiversity projects implemented by the city annually	<i>This indicator measures the number of biodiversity related projects and programmes that the Council is involved in, either as the main player or in partnership. Projects could include those about species conservation, biodiversity surveys and restoration projects. For a project or programme to be included in this indicator, biodiversity must be an important consideration. A programme designed to conserve non-native species, but threatened elsewhere, can also be considered.</i>	Total number of programmes and projects that are being implemented by the Council or in partnership or support of the Council.  This list will then be categorised by type into projects and programmes that are: 1. Biodiversity related 2. Ecosystem services related
12. Number of organisations/companies/NGOs/academic institutions with which the city is partnering in biodiversity activities, projects and programmes	<i>As it is impossible for any single agency to carry out all the activities, responsibilities, projects and programmes that have biodiversity implications, it is inevitable that engagement of all levels of the population must be facilitated. This measures the extent of informal and/or formal partnerships, or collaboration with other entities. Such partnerships should have substantial and long-term involvement from the Council.</i>	Total number of organisations/companies/NGOs/academic institutions with which the city is partnering in inter-agency cooperation around biodiversity activities, projects and programmes
13. Number of outreach or public awareness events held in Wellington City per year	<i>The event should either be organised entirely by the Council, or there should be a heavy involvement of the Council before the event to be considered for inclusion in the indicator. Events that just take place within Wellington city with no Council involvement or support will not be considered as part of this indicator.</i>	Total number of outreach or public awareness events held in Wellington city per year

### 10.3 Operational monitoring

These are short term output measures tracking on-the-ground implementation of management actions. Outputs measure activities carried out in order to reach outcomes. The following table shows the progress that has been made since the 2007 Wellington City

Council Biodiversity Action Plan, the situation in 2014 when Our Natural Capital was written and the targets we want to reach by the time this plan is scheduled for review in 2020.

Measure	2007 (actual)	2014 (actual)	2020 (target)
Ecological management plans created per year for sites with significant biodiversity value	0	4 per year	All significant ecological sites
Native plantings undertaken by the Council annually*	43,000	45,000	45,000
Survival of plants in Council plantings	65%	77%	90%
Native plants provided annually by the Council for community planting*	27,160	34,000	40,000
Number of enrichment species available for restoration planting	200	1000	2000
Total plants planted in Wellington for ecological restoration	700 000	1 240 000	2 000 000
Amount of land under active weed control (number of sites and hectares)	25 sites	75 sites	85 sites
	No information	570ha	1000ha
Reserves surveyed for high threat Regional Pest Management Plan pest plants on public land	25	50	85
Integrated pest control on Council reserve land (both weed control and control of at least two animal pests)*	No information	52%	70%
Number of sites where animal pest species are monitored	3	3	20
Number of behaviour change programmes (to address behaviour that has a negative impact on biodiversity) per year	0	1	2
Hours worked by environmental volunteers*	7,500	34,611	55,000

Our Natural Capital – Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan will undergo a comprehensive review, with community consultation, after 5 years, and the action plan updated.

\* LTP measures

## 11. RATIONALE FOR GOALS, OBJECTIVES AND ACTIONS

This section explains the reasoning behind the actions we are taking to achieve our vision. As with the action plan, it is organised into the four themes of protect, restore, connect and research.

This section is important to ensure that everyone understands the rationale behind the decisions we are making. We are dependent on our partners and community in assisting us to achieve our vision. To work collaboratively with them, and be leaders in this area, we need to explain why we have come to the conclusions that we have.

There are also guidelines within this section. While actions are specific and have measurable timeframes, the guidelines in this section inform how the Council will operate while carrying out those actions. These guidelines are for the Council and will be implemented throughout the Council's activities.

## 11.1 PROTECT

### 11.1.2 Introduction

The current state of our indigenous biodiversity is a legacy of human settlement and subsequent land-use changes. Much of Wellington's original habitat has been lost and altered beyond recognition. As a result there are now only small remnants that still resemble their original state. These are all modified to some extent, influenced by human processes and introduced animals and plants, many of which pose an ongoing threat. Although there has been a change in attitude to the environment, there are still a number of ongoing threats to indigenous biodiversity. This strategy recognises that we need to address these threats if we are to halt the decline of indigenous biodiversity in Wellington, and sets priorities for its protection. Our priorities for the sites we protect will be decided using our ecological significance criteria (Appendix 2). The strategy uses the Pressure-State-Response framework to identify and address threats.

- **Pressure** – Human activities exert pressures on the environment, changing both its quality and the quantity of natural resources.
- **State** – These changes alter the state, or condition, of the environment.
- **Response** – The human responses to these changes include any organised behaviour or policy that aims to reduce, prevent, or mitigate undesirable changes.

### 11.1.3 What do we need to protect biodiversity from?

#### 11.1.3 (a) Environmental pests

##### *Pressure and state*

Environmental pests (Appendix 6) are one of the greatest pressures on indigenous biodiversity. Pest animals have a negative effect on native species – including birds, reptiles and invertebrates – impacting ecosystems through predation and competition, as well as browsing damaging native vegetation. Pest plants can alter ecosystems, displacing native species, preventing natural succession and, in some cases, leading to canopy collapse. Amenity weeds are those that occur in such areas as sports fields, play areas, streets or civic gardens and are not the subject of this strategy except where they overlap with legal requirements for control.

##### **Plants**

Approximately 11 percent (2068 species) of all plants introduced to New Zealand have become established in the wild. Many of the 24,700 introduced species present could establish in the wild in the future. The greatest source of new pest plants is garden escapes and dumping of garden waste (it is estimated that 75 percent of terrestrial and 50 percent of freshwater weeds became established in this way). There are a number of pathways for pest plant spread and these will be considered by GWRC's Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP). Roads and railways are one pathway for infestation.

Pest plants pose a threat to native ecosystems as they can out-compete and prevent natural succession of native species. Replacement of native plant communities by exotic communities can isolate populations, reducing genetic variability. Closely related exotic

species can hybridise with indigenous species (such as South African iceplant (*Carpobrotus edulis*)). Non-local indigenous species can also be invasive. Karo (*Pittosporum crassifolium* and *P. ralphii*), karaka (*Corynocarpus laevigatus*), houpara (*Pseudopanax lessonii*) and pohutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*), all native to the northern North Island, have been introduced to the Wellington area and in some locations they are altering local plant communities.

To determine management options relating to pest plants and other exotic species, a number of factors need to be considered. Some exotic or non-local species have cultural or historic associations that will influence their management in specific sites or circumstances. For example, some karaka groves are culturally significant for local iwi and therefore protected. The value of some non-native species also needs to be recognised in providing valuable food and habitats for native species.

#### **Animals**

New Zealand also has a large number of introduced animal species – some of which are invasive and pose a significant threat to native ecosystems. These include mustelids (stoats, ferrets and weasels), possums, rats, hedgehogs, mice, cats and browsers such as goats, pigs, deer and rabbits.

These species pose a serious threat to native fauna. They find easy food in native ground and cavity-nesting bird species including saddleback, kakariki and kaka. Mustelids, possums, rats, cats and hedgehogs all predate on eggs, chicks, lizards and invertebrates. Mice feed on lizards and invertebrates. Of the mustelids stoats pose the greatest threat as they occupy a broader range of habitats and breed more quickly. Possums, rats and mice also consume vegetation and seeds, altering the composition of indigenous plant communities, and compete with native species for food. Browsers consume large quantities of vegetation thereby changing the structure of plant communities, preventing regeneration and, in some cases, resulting in removal of vegetation and the compaction of soils – aggravating erosion and creating sites for weed invasion.

Some introduced birds compete with indigenous species for resources, such as eastern rosella. Introduced fish, including brown trout, threaten freshwater ecosystems through predation, competition and habitat alteration. There are also a number of introduced invertebrates that pose a threat, including German and common wasps and Argentine ants.

There are a number of trends, such as increased temperature through climate change, which may increase the risk of new pest plants and animals becoming established in Wellington and making existing species harder to control. But there will also be opportunities offered by national and local innovations, and the continual development of new tools and techniques in pest management.

#### **Response**

The Council controls a range of pests on its land in accordance with its responsibilities under the National Pest Plant Accord, the Regional Pest Management Plan (RPMP) and other statutory responsibilities. Our primary focus for pest plants in recent years has been the control of species identified under the RPMP as the responsibility of landowners, specifically old man's beard, cathedral bells, wild ginger and banana passionfruit, as well as site-led management at sites of ecological significance. The sites may be whole sites such as a reserve, several sites in close proximity and with similar values, or the sites might be part of

a bigger site with areas of lesser biodiversity value that are lower in priority for management, such as primary remnant forest in a larger park.

Species will be prioritised for control in accordance with their ability to cause significant damage within each site and the sites are prioritised in accordance with the criteria in Appendix 2. Weeds are then prioritised for each site by tier (climbers, groundcovers then woody weeds) and feasibility of control. The site focus within particular reserves will be on sites of highest ecological value, under high threat, areas currently under a restoration programme or areas which have undergone previous control (where we don't want to lose the gains made). Each site will require its own specific programme to control the pests identified through the ranking process. Each site will be different and each programme will reflect those differences and reflect the control techniques required for each identified pest. Weed species may need the attention of specialist operators, for example large trees need to be treated by qualified arborists. Other factors such as weather, budget and labour resources will also have an influence on the methodology and timing of the programmes.

Council will assist with the eradication or control of pest species listed by GWRC as 'Total Control Species'. We will control pests on land that we own or occupy (including roadside verges for which we are responsible) in accordance with the RPMP rules. We will control species that occur on and threaten sites that are considered ecologically significant. We do not have authority to control weeds on private land without the permission of the land owner. In some instances we will gather this information as part of weed mapping to keep a watching brief on the spread and new incursions of weed species.

Wellington City Council funds possum control work across most of the city. They are controlled in partnership with GWRC within a portion of their three Key Native Ecosystem areas. Other species have been controlled in response to the needs of specific sites and available funding. Goat control has been carried out in response to growing goat numbers in the south-west of the city, and rabbits have been controlled in localised areas dependent on biodiversity needs. Mustelids are controlled in partnership with the community, determined by community priorities. Rats are currently controlled as by kill to possum control operations, but in some areas Council will be looking at intensifying our network where threatened species are found. Rats will be the target species in some of these instances.

Rodent control on private land is the responsibility of the landowner. Rodent control may be required by Council Environmental Health Officers for public health reasons rather than in accordance with the priorities set for the protection of biodiversity values. Other species which may be controlled by Council for public health reasons as opposed to protection of biodiversity include pigeons and ducks.

#### **Approaches to pest control**

The pests to be controlled within a site are those that have the potential to adversely affect the biodiversity values of the site. These are generally the widespread species, but can also include species that are currently localised in distribution but have the potential to become significant in the future. A precautionary approach is used. The best time to eradicate or contain a pest species, if it poses a future threat, is in the early stages of infestation, when populations are small and localised. Control costs at this point are relatively low. The more widespread and established a pest, the more difficult and expensive it is to control.

#### ***Species led programmes***

Species-led programmes are proactive, concentrating on a specific species throughout the region and what is required to control and restrict that species to minimise future threat. Species-led programmes are particularly relevant in managing weeds and pest animals in the early stages of establishment, when numbers are low and/or distribution is limited, and there is potential to minimise future control costs and environmental impacts. Species-led management must assess the potential impacts of a species, how fast and how well it establishes and spreads, and how practical it is to eradicate, contain or manage it. Rapid response to a species is the optimum, but factors such as the size of the infestation, ease of control, effectiveness of control methods and the need for the cooperation of other parties will also have an influence. Two priority groups under species led programmes are climbers and wilding trees.

#### ***Site-led programmes***

Site-led programmes focus on protecting identified values in ecologically significant sites. The focus is not on individual species but on the site, the values within the site and the threats to those values. These may be specific sites of ecological significance and/or rare, threatened or locally significant species. The sites may be whole sites such as a reserve, several sites in close proximity with similar values, or part of a bigger site, such as primary remnant forest in a larger park.

#### ***Pest control on private land***

Plant and animal pests occur across both public and private land. Where the Council is intensively managing pests on land with significant biodiversity values, it is essential to consider how the reinvasion of these sites from adjoining non-Council land can best be managed. Education of private landowners is one method but is generally a long-term project. There are certain circumstances where Council control of pests on neighbouring land would help prevent re-infestation of Council land and reduce the need for additional pest control. Landowner/occupier consent would have to be obtained to access the land.

A priority is to look at pest control on private land to create buffer zones around our ecologically significant areas. The impacts of private land ownership and the mobility of pest animals make it more difficult to implement, but for effective control of many pest animal species the co-operation of the community is essential.

As new subdivisions are developed, we also have to consider the future threat of garden escapes, introduction of weeds and some pest animals (including domestic cats) into these areas that have previously been only lightly affected. Land uses that disturb or alter the environment also have the potential to open up new areas to invasion by weeds.

#### ***Integrated pest control***

Consideration must also be given to the impacts of pest control on the environment, and the control of pests should not create opportunities for further and possibly worse pests. Within an urban context, the impact of removing one pest species on the rest of the ecosystem needs to be considered. To achieve integrated pest management, a "suite of pests" approach needs to be considered, targeting multiple pest species at once to bring their levels down together. This is particularly applicable to predators and will assist in avoiding competitor release and mesopredator release.

#### ***Methods used***

*Agrichemicals* are the main method used for controlling pest plants. Currently this is the chosen method given the scale of land and pest species we need to control, but we

recognise this level of chemical use as not desirable and other techniques will be explored over the life of this plan. *Biological control* is the use of naturally occurring parasites, predators and pathogens to control target species. Biological control is primarily used against pest plants, and is strictly controlled and researched nationally to ensure the agent cannot adversely affect native ecosystems. The benefits of biological control include reductions in the use of chemicals, cost-effectiveness and being highly targeted. *Vertebrate toxic agents* are primarily distributed through ground control involving a network of bait stations, and are used across most Council land, primarily targeting possums and reducing rodent numbers. They can also be used for localised ground poisoning operations that target rabbits. *Trapping* is the most effective method for targeting some animal pest species, primarily mustelids and hedgehogs, rats and complements the use of toxins. Trapping is recommended for small scale operations such as in backyards to limit the amount of toxin use. Some species cannot be trapped or poisoned, and *hunting* is the only option for control. These species include feral goats, pigs, rabbits and hares. *Fencing* is the most effective means for excluding goats, pigs, deer and livestock from sites with high biodiversity values or where the natural regeneration of native vegetation is the management objective.

#### 11.1.3 (b) Habitat loss and fragmentation

##### *Pressure and state*

Wellington's urban growth poses a threat to remaining indigenous ecosystems. Although large-scale habitat loss is not the threat it once was, there is a continued loss of indigenous habitat by development, land-use intensification and changes in land-use affecting bush remnants, streams and wetlands. The coastal environment is under pressures from subdivision and use, including existing infrastructure and buildings. There is also high demand for coastal sites for new and expanded infrastructure uses, including further reclamation and aquaculture. These all pose a threat to coastal habitats. The cumulative impact of incremental changes needs to be considered. Wellington's remaining indigenous forest is particularly fragmented and its streams modified. Some remaining bush remnants on private land currently have limited protection under the District Plan, making them vulnerable. The Wellington Urban Growth Plan anticipates an additional 45,000 residents in the city by 2045. Housing, business and infrastructure demands can have associated direct, indirect and cumulative effects on biodiversity which need to be addressed and avoided or mitigated early in the development process. Some emerging issues to do with urban development are the impact of light and sound on biodiversity. There is increasing evidence from overseas that street lights and lights within parks have negative impacts on plants, animals and their behaviour.

Habitat loss at a small scale may not appear to be significant but can lead to a degradation of wider ecosystem function at a city-wide scale. This can lead to remaining areas being too small to sustain the necessary processes and remove the areas used by mobile species to travel across the landscape. In urban areas, increased development puts more pressure on ecosystems' ability to cope and potentially reduces the effectiveness of the ecosystem services provided by Wellington's natural capital.

##### *Response*

We must promote and invest in actions to reduce the negative impacts of the city's growth and development on the environment, and use a range of regulatory and non-regulatory

tools to do this. There are a myriad of opportunities within Wellington for better management of our infrastructure. The Council's main mechanism for protecting indigenous biodiversity is through the provisions of the RMA 1991. In particular, the preparation of a District Plan that sets objectives, rules and policies that guide land use and the resource consent process. We will seek to strengthen the protection of our biodiversity through the District Plan, focussing on the primary forest remnants, and ensure alignment between the Council's strategies and policies to ensure biodiversity outcomes are achieved alongside economic development and other wellbeing outcomes. We will also look at Council's infrastructure practices to reduce the impact these have on our biodiversity, including the issues of street lighting. In addition to statutory policy and planning mechanisms and the delivery of services, the Council can also achieve its policy objectives to promote the protection of areas of ecological significance on private land through a number of voluntary measures as outlined in the Action Plan.

#### 11.1.3 (c) Aquatic ecosystem degradation

##### *Pressure and state*

Everything that goes into the stormwater system eventually ends up in our streams or in the harbour. Stormwater management remains a significant issue within built environments, especially as our city grows and the climate changes. Because stormwater travels from roads and roofs to streams, rivers and seas without treatment, contaminants in stormwater contribute to pollution of the receiving environment. As houses grow larger and sections grow relatively smaller, and with urban intensification, the resulting increase in impervious areas means increased volume and speed of stormwater runoff. Increased runoff and other activities (including stream realignment, piping, damming or creating new urban stormwater discharges) can significantly modify stream habitats.

Aquatic habitats are vulnerable to degradation through heavy metal and microbial pollution, and sediment linked to urban development and increased intensification. Increased areas of impervious surfaces – roads, roofs and car parks – leads to increased peak flow and volume of run-off and increased load on stormwater drains. Stormwater runoff is heavily influenced by surrounding land use and activities. Human and urban activities generate a wide range of contaminants that are often transported in stormwater. When it rains, contaminants are washed off hard surfaces and into stormwater networks. Research shows fairly conclusively that the sources of contamination are from buildings and neighbouring land uses. Roads are contributors, recipients and conveyors of contaminants from adjacent and often extensive contributing areas.

This contamination of stormwater can result in public health risks, close beaches and affect recreation, shellfish gathering, and cultural and tourism values as well as impacting on marine and freshwater ecosystems. Wellington and Porirua harbours, like other coastal environments surrounded by populated areas, receive significant volumes of stormwater with the potential to pollute their ecosystems.

Land development, especially on hill sites, can cause further erosion, resulting in greater sediment loading on aquatic ecosystems. Hydrodynamic modelling of Porirua Harbour indicates sedimentation rates average about 6mm per annum in the Onepoto arm and 9mm a year in the Pauatahanui Inlet. Work has shown that the biggest sediment contribution is from bare land under construction (37 percent), followed by pasture (33 percent) and with urban runoff contributing the rest (10 percent). Silt is smothering the seabed, affecting seagrass and shellfish beds, and may be depleting the harbour's ability to attract and retain

fish. Localised reduction in harbour depths is affecting navigability even for small vessels. These findings reinforce the importance of construction sediment and erosion control, and the need to manage sites in accordance with consent conditions.

Increased sediment affects aquatic ecosystem functioning and sedimentation can affect many miles of stream. Land-based effects from pollution and sediment can have a significant impact on the coastal marine area affecting values associated with the marine environment including recreation, kai moana gathering and cultural values.

Pollution from heavy metals and other chemicals can also affect biodiversity in the freshwater and marine environment. Monitoring conducted by GWRC in 2013/14 shows that water quality in the four streams monitored in the city – Porirua Stream, Makara Stream, Karori Stream and Kaiwharawhara Stream – are degraded having excessively high levels of dissolved phosphorus and (for all but Makara) nitrogen. Raised nitrogen and phosphorus levels cause algal blooms, impacting on ecosystem health. Cyanobacterial blooms within the lower Karori reservoir are also exacerbated by introduced fish, which has downstream ramifications. Common sources of excess nitrogen and phosphorus include fertilizer, herbicides and pesticides, sewers and septic systems entering the stormwater system, domestic soaps and detergents being disposed of from private properties. These streams also have excessive levels of *E. Coli*, making them unsafe to swim in. Despite this, the macroinvertebrate index (MCI) in these streams is still excellent to fair – showing that it is not too late to restore the health of these streams. This pollution also affects other species up the food chain, including sea birds and marine mammals such as orca.

#### **Response**

The Council is planning to address land use and growth impacts on soil, water and biodiversity within catchments as Wellington grows. This needs to happen primarily through planning and policy documents, and as part of Integrated Catchment Management Plans (ICMP) and the Whaitua process being run by GWRC.

An ICMP is a plan that takes a holistic approach to managing the inputs and outputs of a stormwater catchment. An integrated approach means taking a range of factors into consideration – activity and urban development in the catchment, the state of the stormwater and wastewater networks, levels of contamination, flooding – when planning how to improve things. In a broader sense, integrated catchment management planning is a subset of environmental planning. It aims for sustainable, resilient outcomes – the quality of water entering the receiving environment, for example – through joint land and water management. An integrated approach contrasts with one that treats the two elements separately. ICMPs also take into account the cyclical nature of an ecosystem, and use scientific and technical data to understand the natural world.

Both Integrated Catchment Management Plans and the Whaitua process are designed to ensure collaborative development of catchment specific programmes and an integrated approach to the management of land and water resources. This includes impacts on the harbour and coast as well as the streams that run through the city. We need to reduce the environmental impacts of urban development and transport, while enhancing our existing natural environmental assets – growing our natural capital.

We need to incorporate Wellington's Water Sensitive Urban Design (WSUD) guidelines into relevant Council plans and policy to minimise future effects on our aquatic ecosystems. We will also take the opportunity to incorporate WSUD into infrastructure upgrades and new

development to improve the treatment of stormwater runoff within urban catchments. The management of our closed landfills also must ensure that leachate doesn't enter our aquatic ecosystems.

Our coastal areas such as Taputeranga Marine Reserve are significant assets for the Council. Although management is not the Council's direct responsibility, we manage the coastal reserves adjoining the marine environment, footpaths, roads and other infrastructure that impacts directly on marine waters. Supporting, managing and improving the health of biodiversity and the functioning of infrastructure assets neighbouring the reserve is a priority.

Everyone in Wellington, property owner or not, shares a responsibility for keeping stormwater clean. There are many opportunities for education to increase the number of people that are aware of their impacts on our aquatic ecosystems. A recent survey in Porirua Harbour showed that 40 percent of people were not aware that the stormwater network drained untreated to our streams and sea. Existing education programmes can be strengthened, working closely with Wellington Water Limited where joint objectives can be met.

#### 11.1.3 (d) Climate change

##### *Pressure and state*

The effects of climate change on Wellington's indigenous ecosystems are difficult to predict exactly. Ministry for the Environment climate change predictions<sup>18</sup> for the Wellington Region suggest that Wellington City will experience increased temperatures, rainfall and wind, and sea level rise of at least 0.5m over the next 100 years.

This is leading to increased coastal erosion. Increased storm surges and inundation is damaging remaining dunes and other already fragmented coastal ecosystems (coastal turf communities, coastal scrub), as roads and landward development prevent them from adapting to change by "retreating" landward. The capacity of stormwater systems will be exceeded more frequently due to heavy rainfall events leading to surface flooding and increased number of sewer overflows. More frequent and intense rainfall events will lead to more erosion and landslides, threatening property, infrastructure and the "green ribbon" provided by road reserves and streamside areas. Climate change may lead to an increase in the proliferation of pest species, and subtropical pests may become established – requiring new approaches to pest management.

##### *Response*

Our response to the pressures presented by climate change is described in the Council's Climate Change Action Plan (2013). The main linkages with this plan relate to the implementation of Water-Sensitive Urban Design into future urban development (including the use of more water permeable media for surface drainage), increasing the city's ability to sequester carbon by increasing vegetated areas and the importance of pest control in maintaining existing forest cover. With climate change in mind, we also need to ensure that

---

<sup>18</sup> Ministry for the Environment (2008). *Climate Change Effects and Impacts Assessment: A Guidance Manual for Local Government in New Zealand*. 2nd Edition. Mullan B; Wratt D; Dean S; Hollis M; Allan S; Williams T, Kenny G and MFE. Ministry for the Environment, Wellington.

the species we select for planting are continually revised, so we are confident in their ability to handle current and future changes in conditions. Dune restoration can also be used to protect our coastal environment from further damage, and ensuring healthy kelp and seaweed beds around the reefs will absorb energy from the waves.

#### 11.1.4 Guidelines

##### *Environmental pests*

1. Preventing new species of pest plants and animals from establishing is more effective than eradicating or controlling them.
2. If total exclusion or eradication is not practical or economic, eradication in discrete areas, combined with containment in specific areas and preventing future spread is the next priority.
3. Where pests are established and widespread, and eradication is impractical or uneconomic, the focus will be on controlling them to minimise their adverse impacts on areas with the highest biodiversity values.
4. A precautionary principle will be used when we believe a pest species poses a serious threat to priority ecosystems or species. A lack of detailed knowledge or understanding of a pest plant or animal's full potential for damage is not a reason to do nothing.
5. All pest management must be environmentally, socially, culturally sustainable and financially prudent. Consideration must also be given to the impact of pest control on the environment and the management required. Control of pests should not create opportunities for further and possibly worse pests.
6. All animal pest control will be carried out in accordance with the Animal Welfare Act 1999 to ensure it is carried out humanely.
7. Any traps used by the Council, agents of the Council or groups supported by the Council must meet the requirements of approved best practice. If traps are used in urban reserves or near to residential properties they must be safe for non-target species.
8. Regular, ongoing baiting will be undertaken to ensure that pest populations remain at low levels and less toxin is required.
9. New technologies will be trialled and evaluated as part of the animal predator control network.
10. Qualified hunters will be employed to carry out any hunting operations on Council land and adequate notification of hunting operations will be given to ensure health and safety requirements are met.
11. Fencing effort will be prioritised along the Outer Green Belt where grazing areas are adjacent to ecologically significant areas such as Otari-Wilton's Bush, Khandallah Park and Redwood Bush.
12. All agrichemicals and vertebrate toxic agents will be used safely within guidelines by suitably qualified staff, contractors and volunteers where appropriate.
13. While recognising the necessity of toxin and chemical use, alternatives such as biocontrol, new technologies, and bait station placement will be considered to gradually reduce the amount of toxins and chemicals entering the environment.
14. Chemical and toxin free approaches will be promoted where practicable, such as in small urban backyards.
15. Native vegetation should not be accidentally damaged during the use of agrichemicals, and where possible we will reduce our reliance on these chemicals by exploring new techniques.
16. Biological control will be used where practicable for species that are widespread and in high densities, current examples being Darwin's barberry, tradescantia and gorse.

*Habitat loss and fragmentation*

17. Soil disturbance within ecologically significant sites should be minimised. Ground disturbance, within these sites will undergo evaluation as to whether it should proceed.
18. The Council Parks, Sport & Recreation team will advocate for the protection of natural areas across the Council's business groups, and provide information and advice on the ecological impacts of proposed activities and advice and examples of good practice to reduce or mitigate any impacts.

*Aquatic ecosystems*

19. There should be no further loss of natural streams within Wellington City
20. The impact of land based activities on our freshwater and marine ecosystems will be recognised and addressed through all Council projects
21. All Council projects should follow the principles of Water Sensitive Urban Design

## 11.2 RESTORE

### 11.2.2 Introduction

In addition to protecting indigenous biodiversity, its restoration is also essential for Wellington to become a truly Natural Capital. Much of the Council's restoration work is based around the restoration planting programme to increase the area of indigenous vegetation cover in the city, based on the assumption that if the habitat needs of species are met, species diversity will increase and ecological functions will be enhanced.

Our key focus areas to restore our indigenous biodiversity are:

**Ecologically significant sites** that closely resemble Wellington's original natural environment. We value these systems because they are rare and irreplaceable.

**Ecological functions** that are provided by species diversity or habitat structure to support a broad array of species.

**Remaining natural open spaces** that form an important part of wider ecological networks through supporting biodiversity and/or providing future restoration sites. These areas may not be considered of high ecological significance in isolation, but form the backbone of our green spaces and are a crucial feature in the restoration of our city.

**Nationally, regionally and locally significant species** that are rare or threatened in New Zealand or the Wellington region, uncommon in Wellington City, have cultural importance, or their loss would threaten the functioning of remaining indigenous ecosystems.

We are aiming to achieve self-sustaining ecosystems that can maintain their structure, species composition and function with ever decreasing input from Council. We also want these to be resilient ecosystems that can deal with (and recover from) the disturbance from outside urban influences, while retaining the same essential structure and functions.

#### Restoration planting programme

The Council's Berhampore Nursery grows around 100,000 native plants every year, of which 45,000 are planted and maintained by the Council for habitat and species restoration. An additional 35,000 are distributed among community groups and residents for the same purpose. The nursery grows up to 100 species, from hardy pioneer species to emergent tree species. The plants are all grown from eco-sourced seeds, collected by Council staff. Many community nurseries are also involved in growing plants for restoration programmes across the city, including Forest & Bird – Wellington Branch.

We use plants that would have originally occurred in the ecosystem as they are adapted for that area. This keeps the distinctiveness of Wellington's local flora, avoids the risk of planting species that could become invasive and, as local plants are better suited to Wellington's conditions, they are quicker to establish and more likely to survive. We also want to recreate habitat for Wellington's indigenous fauna and the best way of doing this is to look at what grew here originally. Ecosourcing means a much higher commitment in terms of seed collection but is the best way to protect and restore our indigenous biodiversity. Ecosourcing guidelines can be found on the Wellington City Council website.

### 11.2.3 Priority areas for restoration planting

#### **Restoring the integrity of areas**

To restore the ecological integrity of core areas of indigenous forests and shrubland, we need to ensure that there are no gaps in the vegetation cover, thereby reducing potential for weed invasion and establishment. Where areas of habitat can be increased and made denser, the adverse impacts facing forest remnants will be somewhat reduced. Large intact areas are also much easier to efficiently manage than small fragmented areas, and more likely to be resilient and self-sustaining.

Increasing the size and complexity of habitat increases available resources and creates more ecosystem niches, supporting a greater diversity of species and larger populations – making them more sustainable. Larger, intact forest areas have higher quality interior habitat. Planting buffer zones around the outside of these areas not only increases the size but reduces the edge effects.

Weed control, construction work, slips and trail building create canopy gaps, disturb the soil and release buried weed seeds. For this reason the restoration planting programme is tied in very tightly with our environmental weed control and trail programme. Canopy gaps can also be caused by natural processes such as tree fall.

Ensuring the integrity of our few remaining sand dunes is also very important. Not only are dunes a threatened ecosystem within Wellington, healthy functioning dunes provide a defence for the city in the event of large storms. Our native sand-binders (spinifex and pingao) produce dunes with a low regular profile, which are more stable. Vegetation won't stop the erosion of the dune, but native sand-binding species are critical for its recovery after a storm event. This was proven in the storm of June 2013 where the dune at Island Bay protected the infrastructure behind it, and is already on its way to recovery. The seawall, however, had no dune in front of it due to the restricted size of the beach and was severely damaged by the force of the waves.

#### **Restoring missing species**

Despite historical clearance of native forest, some areas of Wellington have experienced natural regeneration comprising a mixture of exotic and native species. In most of these sites the usual successional sequence has been altered owing to the presence of exotic species such as gorse and Darwin's barberry. Areas where natives are regenerating through gorse tend to lack the species richness of natural succession as would occur through kanuka, leading to a different final forest composition<sup>19</sup>. Within many areas of regenerating forest as well as restored planting areas, there is now single tier forest with little structural complexity, and there is little evidence of missing species returning to these areas naturally.

Owing to the lack of seed sources and natural dispersal mechanisms for the more common canopy and emergent species, areas where natives have naturally regenerated through gorse tend to be mahoe-dominant. To restore Wellington's native forest to anything like its original state will require enrichment planting in certain areas to increase species diversity and restore functioning ecosystems.

---

<sup>19</sup> Sullivan, J. J., Williams, P. A., & Timmins, S. M. (2007). Secondary forest succession differs through naturalised gorse and native kanuka near Wellington and Nelson. *New Zealand Journal of Ecology*, 31(1), 22-38.

Even in many of Wellington's more mature forest remnants there is a lack of some of the species that are considered to be indicators of primary forest, including large podocarps. As well as the podocarps and missing tree species, a range of plant types are required to increase the complexity of a functioning ecosystem. In many areas the forest floor, understorey, subcanopy and emergent layer are missing. Plant types within these layers need to include not just trees and shrubs but grasses, ferns, fungi, climbers and epiphytes to ensure that each tier of the ecosystem holds a full range of representative species.

Threatened plant conservation will also entail restoring these species to their original habitats. This involves the need for careful sourcing of seed, propagating, planting in appropriate locations and monitoring to observe survival. Species which would be restored under this approach include *Muehlenbeckia astonii*, *Muehlenbeckia ephedroides*, *Pimelia aridula* and *Euphorbia glauca*.

Another challenge faced in Wellington is the gradual transition of the conifer forest (pines and macrocarpas) across the city (primarily within the Wellington Town Belt) back into native forest. By 2065 we are aiming to have 65 percent of the Wellington Town Belt in indigenous forest. This needs to be a gradual transition from one vegetation type to the other. Underplanting can accelerate the successional development under these degraded exotic conifer forests<sup>20</sup>.

#### Restoring connectivity

At present, many areas of remnant habitat are not large enough to ensure long-term survival of populations of different species in isolation. In the urban area, it is often difficult if not impossible to extend the size of these core areas through buffer planting. To allow populations to expand and survive localised extinctions or reductions in populations, strategically located clusters of vegetation that provide core habitat for indigenous invertebrates, birds and lizards need to be connected. There is the potential to create a greater area of habitat by linking together these remnants. Creating connectivity across the landscape for fauna also enables them to cross-pollinate plants and disperse seeds.

Creating connectivity between our fragmented areas of habitat facilitates wildlife movement and connects significant areas of vegetation. Ensuring connectivity across the reserve network increases the resilience of populations, as they can be mobile in the face of events such as fluctuating food supply, increasing population and human-induced habitat changes. Without linkages between natural areas, individuals and populations can become isolated, which reduces their food supply and restricts their breeding ability. Animals often rely upon vegetated areas for movement because they cannot move through more inhospitable urban environments.

The aim for restoring our ecological connectivity is not to create continuous vegetated corridors but rather focus on existing natural areas and restoration projects that can contribute to a patchwork of habitats and refuges across the landscape. Such existing areas include parks, road reserves, horticultural and amenity areas, streambanks, coastal fringes, open space and backyards. These areas can be valuable for their undeveloped character and

---

<sup>20</sup> Forbes, S., Norton, D., Carswell, F. *Underplanting degraded exotic Pinus with indigenous conifers assists forest restoration*. Ecological Management & Restoration. 2014 Ecological Society of Australia and Wiley Publishing Asia Pty Ltd.

ability to provide connectivity through the surrounding landscape. Wellington is fortunate in its level of native regeneration, so some of these areas can restore themselves to a certain extent with minimal human intervention.

In the urban environment we tend to plant forest patches as “stepping stones” as opposed to a continuous forest tract (corridor). This is a practical solution where city infrastructure is also a priority. Stepping stones through the city facilitate movement of mobile species, for example allowing them to rest and feed while moving between core areas. Tall stature vegetation in the right location can be used to fill this function. Appropriate use of species within urban design is a key part of creating this connectivity through the urban and suburban landscape.

To understand the functional connectivity of habitats, we need to consider the behaviour of the species, the distance it can move and its ability to be supported by the habitats through which it must move. Some target species may use corridors only a few trees wide, utilise stepping stones or may fly over open ground to reach quality remnants/patches. And others require corridors tens of metres wide. There will always be species that have trouble passing barriers. For some lizards, ground-dwelling invertebrates and even sedentary, understory-inhabiting birds, we need to ensure that the areas these species are currently living in are of a quality that can sustain the population.

Wellington City also has several significant regional ecological linkages that need to be considered. The two main cross-boundary terrestrial linkages within Wellington are links into Belmont Regional Park and into Porirua Scenic Reserve. There is also a significant link for highly mobile bird species across Wellington Harbour to Matiu-Somes Island and Eastbourne. The principal cross-boundary freshwater link is within the Porirua catchment.

#### **11.2.4 Beyond planting**

##### **Habitat restoration**

As well as planting, there are other requirements for restoring habitat for key species that can't be met in the short term by planting.

Within vegetated ecosystems, the role of logs and leaf litter cannot be underestimated. Leaf litter provides food and shelter for invertebrates. As well as playing an important role as decomposers, invertebrates are essential components of the food web for lizards and insectivorous birds. Rotting logs are good habitat for wētā, lizards and food for other invertebrates. In many areas that are naturally regenerating or being planted, there isn't much natural material to be found on the forest floor.

In an urbanised environment, we have changed things so much that “unnatural” aspects (such as built structures) and introduced species might be forming an important part of the habitat. Within many of the reserves, exotic species are currently filling the role that natives would have originally played. Substituting planting for mature stands of vegetation reduces the functionality of the vegetation as it takes many years to create mature vegetation as habitat for species. This must be considered before any removal of vegetation, whether native or exotic. This is particularly the case when it comes to emergent tree species such as solitary macrocarpas and pines within established native forest canopy. While the intention within ecologically significant areas is gradual replacement to indigenous species, this is a lengthy process and in the meantime these large trees fill an important function in terms of

creating habitat. They can also provide a food source, as is the case with kaka feeding on the sap of pine trees. Another role that these large older trees play is providing the right niche for cavity nesting species, which includes kaka, kakariki, and saddleback.

Habitat can also be created through good urban design, aside from planting. If rock walls are designed with gaps and spaces, not only can plants find a home, but they can also provide a great place for lizards. In addition, habitat restoration does not have to be limited to a terrestrial environment. In Wellington advances have been made in the restoration of marine plant communities and further experimentation in this area is required.

Also to consider is that human intervention has occasionally created areas suited to certain indigenous species. For example, grazing creates grasslands perfectly suited to native skink species. Case by case decisions will be made whether intervention will continue for the sake of the species, or if local extinction of species as natural processes continue and habitats change is an acceptable part of the restoration process. This will depend on the threat status of the species and whether the intervention is acceptable as part of ongoing management.

#### **Restoring our waterways**

Wetlands and streams are a priority for restoration as we have lost 99 percent of the wetlands in Wellington and most of our original streams are piped. Planting streamside (riparian) zones around streams is also important for water quality as it slows runoff and filters sediment before it reaches the stream. Sites for riparian restoration are prioritised around sediment source significance and the impact on the stream and harbour depositional environments.

Actions that can minimise excessive stream sedimentation include the establishment of a sufficient riparian zone and bank stabilisation (ideally using soft engineering solutions). A sufficient riparian zone is commonly considered to be at least 10 metres wide (with a width of 15–20 metres being preferable) and consist of native woody vegetation. Within a heavily urbanised context a 5m setback might be considered adequate, whereas in a rural context at least 10m would be appropriate. Both overstorey and understorey vegetation are needed for a fully functioning riparian zone. A healthy riparian zone is important for reducing sedimentation, as well as restoring safe habitat for instream fauna. Vegetation shades the stream (native fish prefer cool temperatures) and overhanging vegetation allows detritus and insects to fall into the stream, providing a food source.

Another key to creating functioning freshwater ecosystems is to allow fish to travel throughout our catchments. Fish passage within Wellington catchments is limited by large drops, high water velocities, perched structures, low water depths and the presence of physical barriers, including weirs, culverts and fords, which block waterways. A priority will be to restore fish passage throughout the catchments that are still largely in a natural state. These will be assessed by monitoring the species above and below the barrier, identifying how much additional habitat will be opened up by the removal of the barrier, ensuring the barrier removal will not allow access to undesirable species (such as trout) and the feasibility and cost of barrier removal. Options are complete removal of barrier, creation of structures that allow fish passage, retrofitting existing structures such as culverts, and identifying areas of concern that could be addressed as upgrades occur.

Waterways can also be restored through the recreation of stream habitat, and we will aim to daylight streams where this is practical. We will be ready to make the most of opportunities to daylight streams where these arise through proposed infrastructure projects. Streams need to have sufficient room around them for their natural processes to occur, which in most cases means allowing riparian areas that may erode as the stream channel migrates. When infrastructure is proposed near streams, we will ensure that riparian areas are of sufficient width to allow for this channel migration and appropriate riparian planting. For this reason, we will promote the daylighting of streams within reserves where there is enough room for these natural processes.

### 11.2.5 Guidelines

#### *Restoring integrity*

1. Restoring the integrity and habitat complexity of our ecologically significant areas is a priority.
2. Our ecologically significant core areas will be buffered through planting where possible to increase their integrity.
3. Our ecologically significant areas will be linked together through corridors and stepping stones to allow species to move between them.
4. Threatened plant species will be restored to areas they are known to have existed.
5. Eco-sourced species will be used for all restoration planting.
6. Canopy gaps created as a result of weed control or construction work (including trail building) will be a high priority for restoration planting. Sites will be replanted as soon as possible, to reduce opportunities for new pest plants to become established.
7. Canopy gaps created through tree fall will be monitored and will be planted if there is insufficient native seed source, a weed seed bank in the soil, or if it offers an opportunity to enrich species diversity through the planting of emergent tree species.
8. Weedy sites around the edge of forest remnants will be planted as part of restoring the buffer zones.
9. Weed control on sand dunes will be immediately followed by planting to ensure that sand is not mobilised. Fertiliser will be used where we need to encourage existing sand-binders to cover bare sand.
10. Maintenance after planting will prioritise controlling weed species that inhibit survival rates

#### *Missing species*

11. Large-scale targeted "enrichment" plantings will occur across the city to reintroduce missing species and create a seed source for the city.
12. Within the few forest remnants where the canopy is intact and there are indigenous plants in every tier, no further planting is required. This only applies in a handful of sites in Wellington, including the core area of Otari-Wilton's Bush and Huntleigh Park. Within these sites, enhancement planting will only occur if monitoring shows little evidence of natural recovery.

#### *Connectivity*

13. When planting for connectivity through the landscape for flora and fauna, we will work towards the following recommendations<sup>21</sup>:

---

<sup>21</sup> Maria Ignatieva, M., Meurk, C., van Roon, M., Simcock, R., Stewart, G. *Urban Greening Manual: How to put Nature Into our Neighbourhoods*. Manaaki Whenua Press, 2008.

- >5-hectare patches at about 5-kilometre spacings
- >1-hectare patches at about 1-kilometre spacings
- 0.02-hectare groves at about 200-metre spacings

14. When planting street trees, we will consider their role in connectivity and whether they can be a visual attractant to move indigenous birds along a desired route
15. When we aim to re-establish connectivity for any species we will consider the following movements: daily foraging, dispersal to find new territory, seasonal movements following food sources, and long distance migration.
16. For larger highly mobile bird species (such as tui, kereru and kaka), connectivity will be focussed on ensuring large trees and groups of trees are available in strategic locations.
17. For shy and forest-dependent birds that are unable to move across large expanses of highly modified landscape, we will look at opportunities to create continuous canopy and/or a dense understorey.
18. The role of all open space will be recognised in order to allow plant species to naturally disperse through a fragmented landscape, particularly when those species are wind or water dispersed.
19. The needs of target species will be prioritised when linking together core areas and restoring connectivity through private gardens and vegetated road reserve.

*Habitat restoration*

20. Where branches or trees are removed, these will be left on site if they don't pose a weed risk, fire risk, don't threaten the existing vegetation and don't compromise amenity values. Leaves and other debris will be kept on site when carrying out tasks such as trail clearance, rather than removing them.
21. In areas where there are cavity nesting species and no natural cavities to be found, nest boxes should be installed to meet this need in the interim. The use of nest boxes for other bird species such as little blue penguins will also be supported. Nest boxes will only be installed in areas where predator numbers are actively managed, or predator-proof nest boxes will be used.

*Restoring our Waterways*

22. The role of natural stream sections will be recognised as important habitat connections.
23. Daylighting streams on reserve areas will be prioritised, along with maximising opportunities through planned infrastructure projects.
24. Riparian planting will form no less than 20 percent of total Council planting per annum and focus on areas requiring shading or stream bank stabilisation.
25. Marine restoration projects will be supported when these are undertaken by our partners.

## 11.3 CONNECT

### 11.3.2 Introduction

*"After spending decades struggling to fence off nature from people, conservation is emerging on the global stage with a new vision that emphasizes the importance of connecting nature and people."<sup>22</sup>*

We are seeking to make biodiversity a mainstream topic by raising awareness of its value to people's wellbeing, and the steps they can take to conserve it and use it sustainably. By connecting more people to nature we want to increase the role of the community as kaitiaki of the natural environment.

Today, 85 percent of New Zealanders live in cities and, accordingly, ecological consciousness is most relevant to urban populations. The greening of urban areas is increasingly important in providing a nature experience. If people are connected to nature, value it and understand its importance in underpinning their lives this should lead to a better quality of life. Wellington already has very active community involvement in the environment, but this can always be increased, for the sake of the environment and the people themselves.

The Council acts as a steward of urban green space, and needs to balance conservation and recreational objectives. Getting this balance right can engage park users in recreational experiences, such as mountain biking, that also helps them appreciate the need for nature conservation.

People can take action in a number of ways, all of which are needed. Actions include everything from submitting on Council policies and plan changes and making personal "pro-nature" choices to engaging with others to take action directly to protect and restore natural areas.

### 11.3.3 Awareness and understanding

Our vision for Wellington is that indigenous biodiversity is a part of people's everyday lives – they will encounter native plants in urban landscaping and streetscapes, they will experience the thrill of being "buzzed" by kaka on their way to work, they will see eagle rays and New Zealand fur seals on Wellington's waterfront. Encountering native species is important in raising awareness of what is native and telling stories about what has been lost and what can be restored. If people experience indigenous biodiversity first-hand they will value it more and be prepared to take action to protect and restore it. Indigenous biodiversity also contributes towards strengthening local and national identity by celebrating what is special and unique about New Zealand. The term locally significant species is used in this context as it refers to species that aren't officially listed as threatened but have cultural significance to Wellingtonians and can be used to connect them with all biodiversity.

---

<sup>22</sup> Daily, Gretchen C., Karieva, Peter M., Polasky, Stephen., Ricketts, Taylor H., Tallis, Heather. *Natural Capital: Theory and Practice of Mapping Ecosystem Services*. Oxford University Press, 2011.

The Council understands the value of nature to our city and one of our goals is to ensure this understanding is shared by all Wellingtonians so that they understand the importance of nature on their lives, their impact on it, and what they can do to reduce the impact. Wellington has joined a network of cities – the Biophilic Cities Project – that is seeking to increase the connection between people and nature.

Biophilic cities are cities of abundant nature in close proximity to city dwellers. They are biodiverse cities that value, protect and actively restore this biodiversity. Biophilic cities are green and growing cities where residents feel a deep affinity with the unique flora and fauna found there as well as with the climate, topography and other qualities of place that serve to define their urban home. In biophilic cities, citizens can easily recognise common native species (and in turn care deeply about them). Biophilic cities provide abundant opportunities to be outside and to enjoy nature through active recreation. Biophilic cities encourage us to spend more time amongst nature – increasing our personal wellbeing and resilience.

Biophilic cities place importance on education about nature and biodiversity and on providing many and varied opportunities to learn about and directly experience nature. In biophilic cities there are many opportunities to join with others in learning about, enjoying, deeply connecting with, and helping to steward nature – whether through a nature club, organised walks or volunteering for nature restoration projects. Biophilic cities invest in the social and physical infrastructure that helps to bring residents in closer connection and understanding of nature, whether through natural history museums, wildlife centres, school-based nature initiatives, or parks and recreation programmes and projects. Biophilic cities are globally responsible cities that recognise the importance of actions to limit the impact of resource use on nature and biodiversity beyond their urban borders; biophilic cities take steps to actively support the conservation global nature<sup>1</sup>.

The work we are doing means that more people will experience indigenous biodiversity as part of their everyday lives. They will see increasing numbers of native birds as witnessed by the proliferation of tui as a result of Council predator control, and kaka as a result of reintroductions by Zealandia and subsequent dispersal across the city. People already experience marine biodiversity during their interaction with the waterfront through chance encounters with New Zealand fur seals, common sightings of short-tailed and eagle rays in Frank Kitts lagoon during summer, sharing Oriental Beach with variable oyster catchers, and the occasional sighting of orca, dolphins or little blue penguins in the harbour or on the south coast. Other encounters may be more common but less appreciated – such as encounters with red-billed and black-backed gulls.

People can also experience native species through amenity planting. Road reserves and street trees provide an important visual link to nature in an otherwise urban landscape. At present, many of these comprise exotic species as well as natives.

City centres are generally areas where there are limited connections to the natural world. However, connections can be made through references to nature as well as nature itself. References to native species and cultural forms (eg pou whenua, waharoa) in urban design and landscape architecture are an important tool in “place making” and making a city more “biophilic” – celebrating the unique natural character of a city, placing it bio-geographically whilst making it a more attractive and exciting place to live and work. This can be seen

through some iconic Wellington design which references nature, such as Ian Athfield's nikau columns around the central library and the fern ball in Civic Square.

Through existing and future plans there are a number of exciting opportunities to include indigenous biodiversity in the city's urban public spaces – making our streets green and creating an eco-inner-city. These will also shape the city in response to its local setting and create inner-city neighbourhoods that tell our stories<sup>23</sup>.

As a city set in nature, we have many opportunities to do this<sup>24</sup>. We have emphasised the importance of better green infrastructure such as open spaces, trees and waterways. These plans also identify the importance of the coastal environment, including ensuring that coastal development and activities respect and enhance the landscape, ecological and character values of the harbour and rugged coastal areas. This offers further opportunities to reconnect people with our coastal fringe and ensure they have easy access to a healthy coastal environment.

We can also make people aware of nature through recreational activities. Mountain biking and dog walking both cause people to spend time outdoors and we can build on these activities to link them more strongly with our biodiversity outcomes. In Wellington, we also have a strong trail building community who create linkages into our natural areas. We acknowledge the importance of allowing people to access these areas, while needing to protect our ecologically significant areas from further fragmentation. We will work to resolve the tension between these two activities and find a balance that allows for both.

#### 11.3.4 Biodiversity and human wellbeing

In order to create support for the Council to protect and restore biodiversity or take action themselves, people need to understand the importance of biodiversity and natural processes through the life-supporting "ecosystem services" that underpin their lives. The World Health Organization now recognises the interdependence of human health and ecosystem health<sup>25</sup>. The positive, innate bond between human wellbeing and nature is supported by environmental health science<sup>26</sup>.

People also need to understand what is "indigenous" and why New Zealand's biodiversity is unique and special, as well as how healthy biodiversity can influence their own health and wellbeing. The Council has a role in informing its citizens about biodiversity. To do this effectively, we also need to work in partnership with other agencies, including DOC, GWRC, NGOs and partners such as Wellington Zoo and Zealandia.

---

<sup>23</sup> WCC Central City Framework

<sup>24</sup> Wellington Urban Growth Plan

<sup>25</sup> Zinsstag J, Schelling E, Waltner-Toews D, Tanner M (2011) From "One Medicine to One Health" and systemic approaches to health and well-being. *Prev Vet Med* 101: 148–156

<sup>26</sup> Keniger LE, Gaston KJ, Irvine KN, Fuller RA (2013) What are the Benefits of Interacting with Nature? *Int J Environ Res Public Health* 10: 913–935.

In addition to educating people about the values of our native biodiversity we need to raise awareness around threats to it and the actions we can take to help protect it.

Children must spend more time outdoors – for their good health and the health of our planet. A growing body of research is showing that it is important for children to connect with nature and the outdoors for their health, ability to learn, self-esteem and character development. Childhood engagement with nature is the key to building on this relationship for generations to come. This can include everything from natural unstructured play and edible gardening to involvement in local restoration projects.

The Council understands the importance of connecting future generations with nature, and continues to support a number of education programmes to increase environmental literacy amongst school children and young people. This includes making them aware of where food, fibre, medicine and construction materials come from. We are also developing a number of new initiatives that will help bring young people into closer contact with nature, linked to learning outcomes. We currently support a number of initiatives working with schools to increase children's environmental awareness, including the proposed Children's Garden at Wellington Botanic Garden.

### 11.3.5 Taking action

Conserving our indigenous biodiversity is not the Council's job alone and it requires all sections of society to become involved at some level, taking "pro-nature" action in their daily lives. This applies whether they live in a central city apartment, out in the suburbs or on a rural lifestyle block. One role of the Council is to motivate and inspire communities to get more involved – to change behaviour and enable people to take action themselves. If we do this well people will understand why it's important to protect New Zealand flora and fauna, how their actions and choices impact biodiversity, and what they can do to help protect the natural environment.

Once people care for and value nature, including indigenous biodiversity, they are more likely to become engaged citizens taking action to protect what they value by participating in democratic processes. This includes taking the time to submit on notified resource consents, District Plan changes, and Long-term and Annual Plans. The Council involves the community in environmental decision-making through its Environmental Reference Group – an advisory group made up of non-elected members selected for their expertise or ability to represent a specific interest group.

Initiatives to support behaviour change should lead to people making "pro-nature" choices that impact positively on local and global ecosystems. This might include exercising responsible pet ownership, desisting from dumping green waste in reserves, and preventing pollution (such as car oil, paint and cement) from entering drains. Edible planting in people's backyards and public areas also plays an important role in connecting people to the natural environment. We can also promote broader behaviour change to help reduce impacts on global ecosystems and biodiversity – for example, by influencing consumer choices towards buying sustainable timber, and climate change related actions, such as reducing emissions from transport, and energy conservation.

We can also encourage and enable people to take action in their own backyard to protect biodiversity. The community needs to understand the impact of their actions (both positive

and negative) on indigenous ecosystems and the measures needed to protect and restore them. Private backyards play a key role in achieving positive biodiversity outcomes. This can range from removing weeds and planting native plants to providing food and habitat for birds, lizards and invertebrates to trapping or baiting to reduce predator numbers. It can involve actions such as composting, growing their own food and not using pesticides in the garden. All these actions are useful as participation can reconnect people to nature and can lead to increases in other environmentally responsible behaviours<sup>27</sup>. We cannot overstate the importance of private backyards in the bigger picture of Wellington's biodiversity.

### 11.3.6 Partnerships

Communities and iwi feel a deep sense of stewardship/kaitiakitanga towards their green spaces and natural places, and agencies such as DOC and GWRC have their own mandate-driven reasons. We believe that our goals will only be achieved by working towards a shared vision and in partnership with these allies. We will use our influence and local leadership to agree this common vision and coordinate the effort in our area. Our main partners fall into three categories and these require slightly different partnership strategies.

- Statutory agencies and national Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs) with an interest in biodiversity. These include DOC, GWRC, neighbouring local authorities, Porirua and Hutt City Councils, Queen Elizabeth II National Trust (QEII), The National Office of the Royal Forest & Bird Preservation Society (F&B), Te Papa, WWF-New Zealand, Zealandia and Wellington Zoo;
- Iwi and mana whenua. The Council has a partnership with these groups under the Treaty of Waitangi. In Wellington the bodies that represent mana whenua interests are the Port Nicholson Block Settlement Trust, Te Runanga o Toa Rangatira and the wider Māori community;
- Local community-based conservation and restoration groups. This includes the Wellington Branch of Forest & Bird, Wellington Botanical Society, Friends of Taputeranga Marine reserve and many others ranging in size and formality.

We will work with the primary biodiversity management agencies (DOC and GWRC), mana whenua, NGOs and communities to develop a shared direction. This agreed direction will allow all organisations and groups to work to their strengths in a complementary way, creating the best outcome for biodiversity.

#### Community restoration groups

The community has an important role to play in the protection and restoration of Wellington's biodiversity and open spaces. Community support has grown considerably over the last 10 years, from 12 groups in 2002 to 114 in 2014. This is incredibly positive and demonstrates the high levels of passion and interest Wellingtonians have for their open spaces.

These groups are all involved in environmental protection, restoration, education and/or advocacy ranging from occasional restoration planting (with the support of native eco-sourced plants from the Council's Berhampore Nursery) to active biodiversity management.

---

<sup>27</sup> Foddy, M., Smithson, M., Schneider, S., Hogg, M. A. *Resolving Social Dilemmas: Dynamic, Structural and Intergroup Aspects*. Psychology Press. 2014.

We also support groups which have a primary focus on other activities such as edible gardening or trail building, but play a part in furthering biodiversity. Groups range from two or three individuals working in a neighbourhood reserve to incorporated societies and trusts carrying out restoration and activities including pest animal and plant control and restoration planting over a number of years.

In recognition of the important role played by community groups, the Council supports these groups through a number of programmes. This includes the Council supplying groups with an annual allocation of native plants grown at the Council's Berhampore Nursery, advice from Council technical staff, support from Park Rangers and training opportunities. Each group signs a Memorandum of Understanding with the Council to cover shared objectives, respective roles and responsibilities, the area they are working in and the activities they are carrying out. The Council will also work with each group, providing necessary plans and guidelines, to ensure they are following best practise with regards to restoration and pest control.

Wellington's community restoration groups are listed on the Council website or on [Naturespace.org](http://Naturespace.org), New Zealand's ecological restoration portal.

Community involvement in open space areas is an integral and valuable part of managing of the land. However, the establishment of community groups does not always reflect the priority of the area in terms of ecological values and biodiversity. The Council is committed to supporting such groups and their projects regardless of site significance, as it is important that everyone has the ability to connect with a restoration project in their own way. We work with groups to integrate them within the overall management of open space areas, and ensure that the projects are sustainable. This may result in resources being applied to open space in recognition of the community interest ahead of biodiversity values, recognising the future potential of a site and the importance of engaging a large number of the community. The criteria by which community group support is assessed can be obtained on the Wellington City Council website.

The Council's Our Living City grant pool supports environmental projects, including ecological restoration, smart energy, community gardens and sustainable transport. The fund runs three rounds a year with an annual cap of \$80,000, and applications are assessed by a panel comprising Council officers and elected members. Advice on applications is sought from relevant Council business units.

#### ***Ecological leadership***

The Council will take a greater leadership role in determining ecological outcomes and restoration priorities for the city and will develop plant lists for specific zones or sites based on these priorities (based on the species that originally grew in these zones or sites). The plants we provide for restoration purposes in those zones will be based on those lists. The Council will also take a greater leadership role in working with and supporting community groups in terms of technical support and the provision of advice.

#### ***Pest animal and plant control***

There is a growing interest from community groups in carrying out animal pest control. This brings benefits both in terms of increasing community engagement and creating opportunities to increase the area of land under active integrated pest control. Groups need intensive support and training when they start (including capital investment in traps and

equipment), and there are ongoing monitoring and compliance costs to ensure groups are maintaining necessary levels of control to achieve desired biodiversity outcomes. There are also numerous health and safety issues that need to be identified and managed. There may be opportunities to strengthen networks of community groups allowing them to support each other and share experience and best practice.

Groups are also increasingly struggling with pest plant control, particularly within planted restoration sites. The Council needs to provide further assistance to groups regarding pest plant control, both technical advice and physical work. Groups need to be encouraged to monitor their sites for plant survival to ensure they are being managed in the optimal way.

***Groups working collaboratively***

In some areas there are a number of community groups working towards similar goals but not in a coordinated way. Resources can be allocated more efficiently and ecological outcomes achieved more effectively if groups working within a select geographic locality coordinate their activities.

One way this could be achieved is through catchment based umbrella groups. This would also help to facilitate the restoration of aquatic ecosystems, given their complicated nature. This approach has been successfully piloted in the Kaiwharawhara Stream catchment – with a forum being supported by the Council to improve coordination and communication between groups working there. The Council will promote greater sharing of resources, expertise and cooperation in catchments and may identify individuals or groups to take a lead role in a specific activity based on proven competence and approach. Groups working within a catchment will be supported to work together more closely and develop specific areas of expertise or combine their efforts by merging.

**11.3.7 Guidelines**

1. Native biodiversity will become a common experience through reintegrating it into both the city's open space network and the built environment.
2. To motivate a mainstream audience to take action for biodiversity, programmes will be long term and involve a range of actions and a wide array of partners.
3. Open spaces need to be preserved for values other than biodiversity including sports, recreation and landscape values and we will ensure that all Wellingtonians have some access to these areas.
4. Environmental groups will be consulted early in the policy development process to help Council officers develop policies based on good practice.
5. Community groups will be our partners when delivering biodiversity outcomes, guided by current agreements and Council's guidelines for community group support.
6. Where there are multiple groups in a single geographic area, groups will be encouraged to work together and coordinate their efforts in order to deliver better outcomes; and allocation of resources will be dependent on this collaboration.
7. A number of partners, including biodiversity management agencies and NGOs, carry out biodiversity projects and we will work with them to avoid duplication and share resources.
8. Any programme of pest control on open space must be supported by a longer-term strategy of community education and awareness raising and be in partnership with other organisations.
9. Mana whenua will always have the opportunity to be involved as partners in biodiversity initiatives.

10. Other Māori groups not connected to mana whenua interests will also be involved in exercising kaitiakitanga.
11. Native plant species will be highlighted in amenity planting in public spaces.
12. Urban designers will use representations of native species in street furniture and civic architecture where this fits with the design aesthetic.
13. Edible planting will be used as a way to initially engage people with the natural environment.

## 11.4 RESEARCH

### 11.4.2 Introduction

The knowledge of how urbanisation impacts upon our natural environment (and, most importantly, how we can reduce those effects) is essential to ensuring our environment remains healthy for future generations. Research and sharing information is crucial when it comes to increasing our ability to manage Wellington's indigenous biodiversity in innovative ways.

One of the challenges that we face is that we do not fully understand the complex interactions between the urban environment and the species that live around us. Much of the research on our indigenous biodiversity has occurred in large-scale natural environments and we are aware that species can behave differently within the complex mix of land uses and habitats that occur within our city.

There are many unknowns about the most efficient and effective ways of restoring Wellington's natural areas, including what may or may not be achievable. Focussed research, in parallel with the Council's monitoring programme, could help us to understand some of the ecological dynamics happening in and around our city, and where best to concentrate restoration efforts.

Because of the size and type of the land under its control, the Council has a valuable resource that can be made available for study by others or used by its own staff for research and investigation. As hands-on managers of open space, and an organisation that is connected to the wider community in numerous ways, the Council has the potential to research issues that are particularly significant locally, in the context of an urban environment.

However, research should not just be limited to Council managed open space. To understand the dynamics across an urban environment, research must be conducted across all land, regardless of use and ownership. The interactions of people – including recreational users, neighbouring property owners and restoration groups – with plants, animals, land and water are also an important and evolving part of the Wellington's ecology.

We need to develop new ways to make indigenous nature and biodiversity a part of Wellingtonians' daily lives. We can do this by increasing their knowledge and appreciation of urban nature. We must be able to fully understand our natural environment through research, and be able to explain it and present it in a way that makes sense to people. This will be strengthened if we can include people in the research through their personal observations and experience.

Innovative and specific research can be expensive and generally beyond the Council's resources. The Council can partner with research organisations to identify areas of study that have direct and practical application to open space management. Other agencies, such as Greater Wellington Regional Council (GWRC), the Department of Conservation (DOC), Landcare Research, and universities, also carry out or commission research that is relevant to the ecological management of the Council's open space.

### 11.4.3 Levels of research

When it comes to research and monitoring, our focus will be at three main levels. These three levels allow us to engage across the community and build the most complete picture of Wellington's ecological health. A consistent approach is needed so the data can be combined and compared across projects, and used to build understanding of Wellington's ecological integrity. Data analysis is essential, particularly when involving the community in data collection, to ensure that the research is meaningful.

#### Broadscale research

Using a crowdsourcing/citizen science method of data collection, you can source large amounts of data over a wide geographic area for little cost. This approach would be used to find broadscale information (widespread and simple) on things such as lizard distribution in Wellington, and anyone could get involved. Future areas involving citizen scientists include monitoring biodiversity in backyards, identifying predators from sensor camera images, and establishing the presence or absence of species across the city. Citizen science requires careful planning and management to ensure that the design allows for consistent methodologies for data collection and that relevant locations are well represented. This requires initial and ongoing collaboration between the Council, scientific organisations and the participants.

#### Research of managed places and species

This research focusses on delivering the detailed information needed to manage places and species effectively at an appropriate scale, so is more intensive than what can be achieved through broadscale projects. While the Council can undertake some research at this level, we can get a much clearer understanding by engaging our community in monitoring. This level of research includes looking at stream, forest and coastal health and recovery. This can help show what management works best, and can be used to improve the effectiveness of future management. It will also provide locally relevant information to share with the wider community.

#### Targeted research

On occasion, we need to answer specific questions that require a more detailed level of research and analysis. We may conduct this research ourselves as a Council, or for this form of research, we may work in partnership with local research institutions and/or relevant organisations. This research includes questions around the effect of aspects of the urban environment on specific species, questions around preferred microclimates for threatened species, and questions around the impact of pest species.

### 11.4.4 Monitoring

Without good information, it is difficult to evaluate the success and cost-effectiveness of the work being undertaken. Record keeping and monitoring has not always been undertaken consistently or systematically in the past, especially in relation to restoration plantings. Consequently, consistent information about plant survival rates, maintenance and the rate of canopy closure has not been available to inform future efforts.

By regularly sharing and reporting monitoring data and assessing its usefulness, the Council, researchers and community groups will be able to review and learn from successes and failures, adapt future on-the-ground work as required, and target future monitoring to ensure useful information is being gathered in relation to:

- the health of Wellington's ecosystems

- the results of pest control
- the results of specific restoration projects.

However, the cost implications of monitoring means that the choice of what is monitored and how needs to be carefully considered.

Until recently, monitoring has tended to focus on measuring aspects of operational performance (*output* monitoring), such as the amount of bait taken from bait stations. This remains an important part of monitoring; checking performance through regular audits of weed control and planting sites ensures targets are met, ensures sound financial management and use of resources.

What such figures do not tell us is how well our desired *outcomes* are being achieved. For example, a possum eradication programme may remove all possums, but if it allows rats to increase substantially, then the overall improvement in the environment may be far less than expected. So we need to ensure that our monitoring programmes are comprehensive, answer the essential questions and assist us in meeting our agreed outcomes.

We also need to ensure that monitoring aspects of Council business that impact on biodiversity is considered, such as the outcomes of resource consent decisions and evaluations of projects funded through Council grants.

Baseline monitoring was started in 2002 for the following indicators:

- the distribution and relative abundance of native forest bird species
- the structure and composition of forest and coastal plant communities
- the extent of vegetation types in natural areas managed by the Council
- the condition of forest vegetation sensitive to possum browse
- the condition of stream habitat in urban areas (using Stream Habitat Assessment Protocols).

By creating a strategic monitoring programme, then continually analysing the results, we will be able to continually adapt our biodiversity management and refine our techniques. This aim for continual improvement is an essential outcome of all monitoring programmes.

#### 11.4.5 Sharing information

With research on urban ecology (including pest control and species interactions) being given increasing priority by institutions, new information is regularly available. Some of the information is directly relevant to Wellington City and some of indirect relevance, establishing context, principles and theory. Keeping up to date on research will assist in ensuring planning and implementation is in accordance with the latest information available. This information, as well as all information gathered by the Council, needs to be made widely available. Reports and information gathered through monitoring and research need to be shared through public forums such as websites and newsletters.

Many different groups of people and organisations could also benefit from the availability of open biodiversity data, including the Council. For example, by having the data freely available, everyone can see the locations of ecologically significant sites and assist with their protection. With a variety of organisations collecting and generating a wide variety of biodiversity data and information, sharing this data has many advantages:

- More citizens will engage with the Council to support biodiversity initiatives if they can access all data, it allows for transparency and empowerment;
- Advocacy groups and researchers can analyse the data potentially producing new and better insights into the issues; In scientific research, the rate of discovery is accelerated by better access to data.
- New and existing businesses (such as nature tourism) can use the data, combined with information from other sources, to produce new services and products such as smart phone applications;
- Existing biodiversity management could be significantly improved as operational data becomes available to others, allowing recommendations for improved efficiency and effectiveness.
- If we can also share biodiversity data with that from other organisations, combined data sources and patterns in large data volumes can lead to new knowledge
- Sharing data widely helps ensure that the knowledge is preserved over time.

#### 11.4.6 Key research questions

##### Protect

Managing plant and animal pests across a wide range of land types, such as large forested reserves, small suburban parks, thin corridors of vegetation and private backyards, creates a unique set of challenges and most ecological pest control research has been conducted in large forest tracts or an agricultural landscape.

In addition, because the mix of environments and pests is specific to Wellington, there is constant learning by those involved, leading to continual improvement of management strategies and control techniques. Encouragement of an open learning style leads to sharing of useful information in the field. There are new technologies for pest management that need to be scientifically trialled, as well as ongoing trials of biocontrol agents.

- How do pest species behave in urban environments?
- Which urban landscape is more likely to contain high levels of pest species?
- Does the urban landscape influence the population dynamics of pest species?
- Is pest abundance influenced by socio-economic variables?
- What is the impact of mammalian predators on our native species (including the impact of cats on lizards and which species of bird are particularly prone to predation by cats)?

To find solutions for minimising the impacts of stormwater runoff and land based effects on our aquatic ecosystems we need to better understand how the whole system operates.

We also need to better understand the utility and potential of small pockets of urban vegetation, such as road reserve, so we can better assess their value to the ecological network of Wellington. We also need to understand the effects of urban intensification on the importance of these remaining small vegetated areas.

- How can urban design help minimise pest problems?
- Do we understand the effects of edge effect, habitat corridors, and fragmentation in urban environments?
- What effect does the modification of land and waterways have on aquatic ecosystems?
- How can we increase the uptake of Water Sensitive Urban Design and increase knowledge of the connection between stormwater and streams?
- What native plants will work best as green infrastructure in urban design? This includes green roofs, water-sensitive urban design, and street trees.
- What is the threshold of impervious surfaces against stream health?
- What impact do street lights in Wellington have on our indigenous biodiversity?

### Restore

Restoration has a number of effects on the environment that need to be further understood.

With the fragmentation of our forests and its gradual transition into a variety of states, we need to understand the processes that are occurring and where we need to intervene. It is important to have accurate knowledge of the requirements around enrichment planting and specific species' microhabitat needs, as well as propagation techniques – particularly of threatened species (national, regional and local).

Bird monitoring shows that kaka are spreading throughout the city and breeding throughout reserves. Other species known to have bred within the reserves network through monitoring programmes include kakariki, whitehead, saddleback and bellbird. Each of these species has a different set of characteristics that affects their vulnerability to urban predators. We don't yet know enough about the reasons why some species are managing to increase their numbers and some are failing. There are a number of cavity nesting species in Wellington, such as kaka, kakariki, saddleback, morepork and kingfisher. We don't know if the significant reduction of old growth forest is limiting these species, or if there are enough natural cavities within the reserve network.

We also know very little about the ecology of other significant groups of plants and animals within Wellington City (namely lizards, bats, invertebrates, and fungi) which makes the restoration of species within these groups challenging.

- What are the microhabitat requirements for the missing plant species we aim to reintroduce?
- What is the survival rate of Council restoration plantings and how can this be improved?
- What are the habitat requirements (including for nesting) for fauna already present in the city?
- What is the relationship between soil ecology and plant establishment?
- What species are required to provide critical food resources for bird species?
- What natural succession is happening in urban forests?
- How does bird dispersal in Wellington affect the distribution of podocarp seeds?
- What are the limiting factors for a population's expansion, eg food or nesting sites, and what are their powers of dispersal?
- When is each species vulnerable, eg is it while they are nesting or feeding?

- Where are vulnerable or significant populations of our lesser known fauna, such as bats, invertebrates and fungi?
- Are browsing animals limiting natural regeneration in Wellington reserves?

#### Connect

There is huge potential for social research, particularly the part that people play in urban ecology. Opportunities for researching these topics may be realised as a result of the research partnership established between the Council and Victoria University of Wellington in 2013. We need to carry out social research to better understand why the community engages with environmental projects, or the barriers to getting involved.

- What are the motivators and barriers to people using the reserve network and people engaging in various environmental restoration projects?
- How do we combat "nature deficit disorder" in Wellington?
- What are the health and wellbeing benefits of urban nature?
- How do we use effective community-based social marketing techniques?
- How do we engage people in citizen science projects?
- What are the impacts (social and ecological) of supplementary feeding on urban bird populations?
- What are the economic impacts of urban biodiversity?
- What are economic impacts of volunteer environmental restoration projects?
- What ecosystem services do Wellington's green spaces provide and what are the values of these?

### 11.4.7 Guidelines

#### Research

- a. Crowdsourcing and citizen science approaches will be used where the requirement is to collect large amounts of geographically based information.
- b. Community groups will be engaged in monitoring specific sites and species, and given the support and training required.
- c. Targeted research will be conducted in partnership with relevant organisations.
- d. Where possible, university students will be engaged to conduct research on our behalf to support a new generation of scientists.

#### Monitoring

- e. Monitoring programmes will be established or maintained to measure changes in the condition of priority sites and to determine the effectiveness of animal and plant management being undertaken.
- f. Work done will be regularly audited to ensure it is being performed to the required standard and in accordance with all relevant policies and procedures.
- g. Monitoring will be used to establish the effects of our urban environment on our aquatic ecosystems.
- h. All monitoring will be consistent with a local, regional and national picture.
- i. Monitoring data will be used to analyse trends and make recommendations for adaptive management.

#### Sharing information

- j. All work will be informed by current best practice and this information will be made available to staff and contractors.
- k. All information gathered by the Council as part of research and monitoring programmes, particularly programmes that have included the community gathering the data, will be shared with interest groups and the general public.
- l. Relevant information gathered by the Council as part of research and monitoring programmes will inform Council plans and policies such as reserve management plans and the District Plan.

## 12. GLOSSARY

**Benthic:** living on or under the substrate at the bottom of the ocean.

**Biodiversity (biological diversity):** all biological life, including fungi and micro-organisms, the genes they contain and the ecosystems of which they form a part. *The term biodiversity in this plan means indigenous biodiversity unless otherwise stated.*

**Biosecurity:** the protection of people and natural resources, including biodiversity, from unwanted organisms capable of causing harm.

**Buffer zones:** the zone around a core protected area that shields that area from possible disruptive external influences.

**Catchment:** a catchment is all the land from the mountains and hills to the sea, drained by a single stream and its tributaries.

**Community:** the collection of organisms found at a specific place and time.

**Competitor release:** the expansion of a species in the absence of a competitor.

**Convention on Biological Diversity:** an international agreement on biological diversity that came into force in December 1993. The objectives of the Convention are: the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources.

**Core areas:** interior areas of a patch that retain similar abiotic and biotic conditions to pre-fragmented conditions and do not experience strong influences from neighbouring patches.

**Corridor:** narrow strips of land that differ from the matrix on either side. Corridors may be isolated strips, but are usually attached to a patch of somewhat similar vegetation.

**Daylighting:** the redirection of a stream from a pipe into an above-ground channel to restore a stream of water to a more natural state.

**Diadromous:** diadromous fish migrate between freshwater and seawater.

**Eco-domain:** a domain representing a cluster of repeating biogeoclimatic patterns where within each domain there are a consistent, predictable response of ecosystems to impacts and changes.

**Ecology:** the study of the distribution and abundance of species and the relationship and interactions between the species and their environment.

**Ecological integrity:** an ecosystem is considered to be healthy and have "integrity" when it hosts all the native plants and animals typical of the area, and when ecological processes are functioning well.

**Ecological region:** an aggregate of adjacent ecological districts with very closely related characteristics.

**Ecological significance:** defined for an area by one or more of the following ecological features: representativeness of Wellington's indigenous biodiversity, high diversity of ecological and physical features, degree of natural character, relative size and shape, relative rarity and special features, buffering, connectivity and viability. These ecological features contribute to Wellington's indigenous biodiversity and include consideration of current and potential biodiversity values.

**Ecological succession:** a fundamental concept in ecology that refers to more-or-less predictable and orderly changes in the composition or structure of an ecological community. Succession may be initiated either by formation of new, unoccupied habitat (eg a severe landslide) or by some form of disturbance (eg fire, severe windthrow, logging) of an existing community.

**Eco-sourcing:** the propagation of naturally occurring (ie not introduced accidentally or deliberately by humans) plants from local areas and the planting of them back within the same region.

**Ecosystem:** a dynamic complex of plant, animal and micro-organism communities and their non-living environment interacting as a functional unit.

**Edge effects:** the changes in population or community structures that occur at the boundary of two habitats.

**Emergent trees:** trees that are over 30 metres tall and tower above the forest canopy.

**Endemic:** an indigenous species that is restricted to a particular geographical region, ie it is found nowhere else in the world.

**Exotic species:** see *Introduced species*.

**Ex-situ conservation:** the conservation of species outside their natural habitat.

**Feral species:** a domesticated species that has become wild.

**Habitat:** the place or type of an area in which a living thing naturally occurs.

**Inanga:** the adult lifestage of the most abundant whitebait species, *Galaxias maculatus*.

**Indigenous:** a plant or animal species that occurs naturally in Wellington

**In-situ conservation:** the conservation of species (and the ecosystems and habitats that support them) within their natural surroundings.

**Introduced species:** a plant or animal species that has been brought to the locality by humans.

**Kaitiakitanga:** implies guardianship, stewardship, protection, care and vigilance. It introduces the idea of an inter-generational responsibility and an obligation to protect the natural environment.

**Key Native Ecosystem:** an area that is actively managed by GWRC to protect and enhance indigenous biodiversity values.

**Land environment:** an area whose boundaries encompass similar environmental characteristics caused by environmental variables such as climate, landform and soil

**Locally significant species:** a species that has no national or regional threat status, but is important in Wellington for its cultural values

**Meso-predator release:** a situation in which populations of small and medium-sized predators rapidly increase after the removal of larger predators.

**Native species:** see *Indigenous species*.

**Originally rare ecosystems:** an ecosystem type that was present, and rare, when Māori arrived – and still exists today.

**Outcome monitoring:** monitoring the desired outcome of biodiversity activities, eg an increase in native birds.

**Output monitoring:** monitoring the outputs from activities required to reaching your desired outcome, eg a reduction in pest animal numbers.

**Podocarps:** trees or shrubs that have linear-like leaves and are usually dioecious. Eg totara, rimu, kahikatea, miro and matai.

**Representativeness:** the extent to which areas are capable of reflecting known biological diversity and ecological patterns and processes.

**Regeneration:** the natural process by which plants replace or re-establish themselves

**Resilience:** the capacity of a system to absorb disturbance while undergoing change so as to still retain essentially the same structure and functions

**Restoration:** intentional activity that initiates or accelerates the recovery of an ecosystem

**Revegetation:** the process of replanting and gaining vegetated cover on disturbed land

**Riparian:** the interface between land and a river or stream

**Stepping stones:** patches of discontinuous vegetation that can be used to link larger areas together.

**Sustainable:** conducting activities or using the components of biodiversity in a way and at a rate that does not lead to the long-term decline of biodiversity.

**Threatened species:** a species that is vulnerable, endangered or presumed extinct. Acutely and chronically threatened indigenous species are species that meet the specific criteria to be listed in one of these categories in the "New Zealand Threat Classification System Lists" (refer to doc.govt.nz for up-to-date lists).

**Translocation:** a deliberate and mediated movement of wild individuals or populations from one area to another.

**Vascular plant:** a plant having specialized tissues (xylem and phloem) that conduct water and synthesized foods, as any fern, gymnosperm, or angiosperm

**Veteranisation:** destructive pruning methods, which accelerates the ageing process of trees.

**Weed:** any unwanted plant organism that outcompetes, displaces and/or prevents natural succession of indigenous species.

**Wellbeing:** the state of being comfortable, healthy, or happy; both mentally and physically.

## APPENDIX 1 – Policy Context

Wellington City Council has responsibilities under a range of different government acts, plans and policies.

### Acts

The Council carries out and encourages biodiversity management in accordance with the wishes of its community, as expressed through the Community Outcomes in the Long-term Plan prepared under the **Local Government Act 2002**.

The **Conservation Act 1987** (Department of Conservation) is New Zealand's principal act concerning the conservation of indigenous biodiversity. The **Conservation Act** has the overriding principle of protection.

Under the **Conservation Act**, the Department of Conservation has responsibilities to prepare **Conservation Management Strategies** which cover the Wellington City area, particularly in relation to community advocacy and the protection of indigenous plants and animals.

The **Conservation Act** sits alongside the **Reserves Act 1977** (Department of Conservation), which provides for the management and administration of reserves and in particular, "Ensuring as far as possible, the survival of all indigenous species of flora and fauna, both rare and commonplace, in their natural communities and habitats, and the preservation of representative samples of all classes of natural ecosystems and landscape ..."

The **Wildlife Act 1953** (Department of Conservation) deals with the protection and control of wild animals and the management of game species. The **Wild Animal Control Act 1977** (Department of Conservation) provides for the control of harmful species of introduced wild animals. The **Biosecurity Act 1993** (Ministry of Primary Industries), provides a legal basis for excluding, eradicating and effectively managing pests and unwanted organisms.

The purpose of the **Resource Management Act 1991** (Ministry for the Environment) is to promote sustainable management of natural and physical resources. This includes land, water, air, soil, minerals and energy, and all forms of plants and animals. Its purpose is also to avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects of activities on the environment. The Act is given effect through the preparation and application of **National Policy Statements, Regional Policy Statements, Regional Plans** and **District Plans**.

### Policies and plans

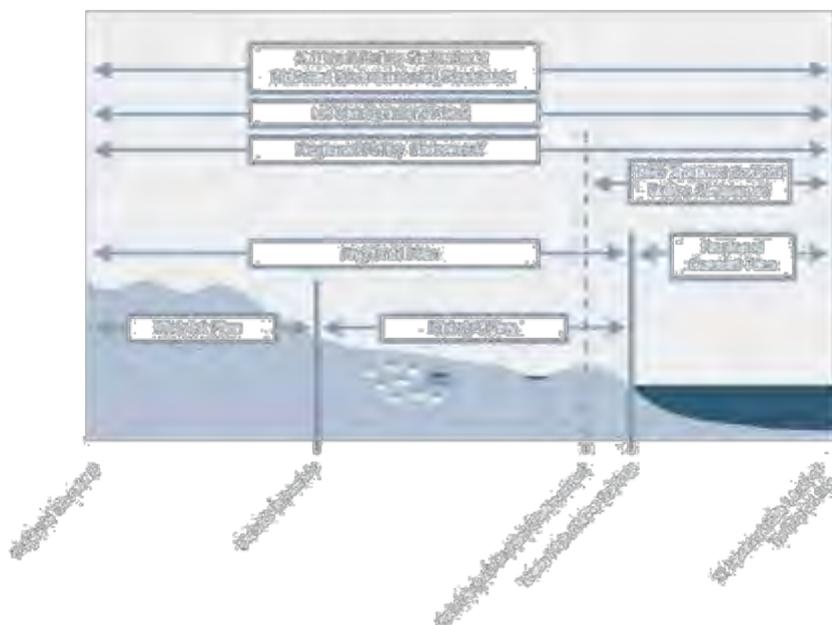
**National Policy Statements** (Ministry for the Environment) are instruments issued under section 52(2) of the **Resource Management Act** and state objectives and policies for matters of national significance. **Regional Policy Statements, Regional Plans** and **District Plans** must give effect to **National Policy Statements**.

The **Resource Management Act** requires every regional council to prepare a **Regional Policy Statement** which provides an overview of the resource management issues for the region, and states the policies and methods required to achieve the integrated management of the region's natural and physical resources.

The **Natural Resources Plan** (Greater Wellington Regional Council) sets out the objectives, policies and methods for people and organisations that use the region’s natural resources (air, land, water and coast). This includes the control of the use of land; control of the use of water and the quantity and flow of water in any waterbody; control of the discharges of contaminants into or onto land, air, or water; control of the harvesting or enhancement of aquatic organisms and allocating our natural resources. **Regional Plans** must give effect to a **Regional Policy Statement** and any **National Policy Statement**.

Under the **Biosecurity Act 1993** Greater Wellington Regional Council (GWRC) takes primary responsibility for pest management and produces a **Regional Pest Management Plan**. Wellington City Council has a primary responsibility as a significant land manager under the **Regional Pest Management Plan**. Under this plan, GWRC has the ability to require landowners/occupiers to control certain pest species on private land.

Wellington City Council is charged with the recognition, protection and maintenance of indigenous biodiversity as part of their role under the **Resource Management Act**. Rules in the **District Plan** (Wellington City Council) control the use of land, including subdivision. **District Plans** must give effect to a **Regional Policy Statement** and any **National Policy Statements** and national environmental standards. The **District Plan** provides objectives, policies and rules relating to significant areas of Wellington’s natural heritage (Conservation Sites), as well as for land valued for its natural character and provision of informal open space (Open Space B ‘natural environment’ and Open Space C ‘inner town belt’). The **District Plan** also includes the Subdivision Design Guide, which lists criteria for using existing landscape, landform and vegetation. Subdivision applications are assessed against these criteria.



### Marine environment

The marine environment becomes increasingly complex. As well as being covered by the various acts, policies and plans listed above, other agencies also have a role.

As well as their responsibilities under the **Biosecurity Act**, the Ministry for Primary Industries is responsible for fisheries management. The Department of Conservation is responsible for marine reserves and protecting marine species and Greater Wellington Regional Council is responsible for managing the territorial sea.

The Ministry for the Environment is responsible for the Environmental Protection Authority and administering the **Exclusive Economic Zone and Continental Shelf (Environmental Effects) Act 2012**.

The Ministry of Transport is responsible for New Zealand's Marine Protection Rules, which stop or control discharges of waste, including oil, chemicals and garbage and Maritime New Zealand is responsible for managing maritime transport and its effects, including preventing marine pollution caused by the dumping and disposal of waste in our Exclusive Economic Zone.

The Council's jurisdiction extends only as far as mean high water springs. However, there is no doubt that what happens on the land influences what our harbour and coastal ecosystems. Land management practices have flow-on effects down to the sea, especially via streams. The relationship with this plan and freshwater and marine environments is complex. Wellington City Council has jurisdiction up to the mean high water springs mark. The role of the Council is in advocacy for the marine environment, including supporting other organisation's education programmes around marine biodiversity and marine restoration, and minimising the impacts of land based effects on the marine environment and marine biodiversity. This includes minimising the impacts of infrastructure development within coastal environments, carrying out restoration of coastal habitats above mean high water springs, treating stormwater discharges and leachate from landfills and acknowledging the role that the Council plays in marine based recreation.

### Other related strategies

There are also wider issues that affect biodiversity, these include new biosecurity threats, land development for infrastructure (including reclamation of land), rubble disposal in the event of an earthquake, and aquaculture. While these have an effect on biodiversity, they are all dealt with under other plans and policies, as are issues of city wide resilience.

Addressing these other issues are a number of statutes that sit alongside biodiversity strategies, in that their purpose can be interpreted as further supporting the sustainable management of biodiversity (e.g. the **Local Government Act**, the **Land Transport Management Act**), or have some other relationship with activities that will impact on biodiversity (e.g. the **Civil Defence Emergency Management Act** and the **Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act**).

The New Zealand Government is also a signatory to the International Convention on Biological Diversity 1992. This convention, signed by 193 nations, recognises the global scale of the threats to biodiversity and provides targets for countries to achieve at a national scale. The New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy reflects New Zealand's commitment to the CBD. It sets out national goals and principles for managing New Zealand's biodiversity.

### **Alignment with other Council strategies**

It can be complicated fitting different aims together, but these Council strategies are designed to interlink and to be both sensitive and clever about supporting the varying aims of each one. This plan needs to be read in conjunction with other Council strategies.

#### **Wellington Towards 2040: Smart Capital 2011**

The Council's vision for Wellington is focussed on the future development of the city over the next 30 years. It builds on Wellington's current strengths, acknowledges the challenges the city faces now and over the medium to long term, understands the changing role of cities, and is informed by Wellington's communities. The vision is supported by four community outcomes or long term goals, based on the city's competitive advantage. These are: eco-city; connected city; people-centred city; and dynamic central city.

#### **2015-25 Long-term plan and annual plans**

The goals of Wellington 2040 are central to the Council's Long-term Plan 2015–2025. As an Eco-city we can build on current environmental strengths to transition to a low carbon future. Wellington will achieve high standards of environmental performance, coupled with outstanding quality of life and an economy increasingly based on smart innovation. As Our Natural Capital contains objectives, goals and actions to protect and restore indigenous biodiversity, it follows that the Plan will influence the contents of the Council's Annual Plan and Budget.

All activities proposed for the Council in this Plan will be subject to scrutiny through the Council's annual planning and budgetary process. It is this process which will confirm the priorities and time frames, as well as the affordability, of the methods. These decisions will be made within a framework of economic reality. We cannot do everything at once; many of the methods will need to be implemented progressively.

#### **Our Capital Spaces 2013**

Our Capital Spaces is an open space and recreation framework for managing and protecting our parks, reserves, and sport and recreation activities over the next 10 years. There are a range of initiatives that fall under four outcomes - getting everyone active and healthy; protecting our birds, nature, streams and landscapes; contributing to Wellington's outstanding quality of life; and doing it together.

#### **Climate Change Action Plan 2013**

This plan identifies cost-effective initiatives for Council operations and the community that will help the Council achieve its carbon neutral vision and promote sustainable behaviour. It also aims to enhance green infrastructure and biodiversity.

#### **Wellington Urban Growth Plan 2015**

The Wellington Urban Growth Plan is the Council's guide for directing investment and supporting development in growth areas. It provides a framework for sustainable development. It provides strategies to manage the city's future growth (including medium density housing and projects within the City's CBD) while protecting our environment and heritage, and builds on the things that make the city special.<sup>28</sup> The Natural Environment action area is about promoting and investing in actions to reduce the negative impacts of the city's growth and development on the environment.

---

<sup>28</sup> DRAFT Wellington Urban Growth Plan 2014-2043

## APPENDIX 2 - Ecological Significance Criteria

Sites of ecological significance are assessed in accordance with the following criteria. These criteria are aligned with regional policy direction as set out under Policy 32 in the RPS. Sites will be considered significant if they receive a high ranking through one or more of the following criteria:

### Representativeness

The ecosystems or habitats that are typical and characteristic examples of the full range of the original or current natural diversity of ecosystem and habitat types in a district or in the region.

Rank	Criteria
High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Ecosystems or habitats that are no longer commonplace (less than about 30% remaining)</li> <li>○ Are poorly represented in existing protected areas (less than about 20% legally protected)</li> </ul>
Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Indigenous vegetation associated with land environments that have less than 30% remaining in indigenous cover nationally</li> <li>○ Relatively good quality and relatively large examples of indigenous vegetation associated with sand dunes and wetlands</li> <li>○ Only or one of the best examples of an ecosystem that was formerly more extensive in the ecodomain</li> <li>○ Supports a large or exceptionally intact example of an ecosystem that was formerly more extensive in the ecological domain</li> </ul>
Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Similar to other areas that are reasonably well-represented elsewhere in the ecological domain</li> </ul>

### Rarity

The ecosystem or habitat has biological or physical features that are scarce or threatened in a local, regional or national context. This can include individual species, rare and distinctive biological communities and physical features that are unusual or rare.

Rank	Criteria
High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Contains a nationally/regionally acutely threatened species</li> <li>○ Contains a species endemic to Wellington City</li> <li>○ Contains a species at or near its national distributional limit</li> </ul>
Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Contains a species nationally/regionally chronically threatened or at risk species</li> <li>○ Contains a species uncommon in Wellington City</li> </ul>
Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ No unusual or rare species</li> </ul>

### Diversity

The ecosystem or habitat has a natural diversity of ecological units, ecosystems, species and physical features within an area.

Rank	Criteria
High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ High diversity of ecological and physical features</li> <li>○ Supports an originally rare terrestrial ecosystem</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Contains a nationally uncommon biological community and/or physical feature</li> </ul>
Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Moderate diversity of ecological and physical features</li> <li>○ Contains a regionally or locally uncommon biological community and/or physical feature</li> </ul>
Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Low diversity of ecological and physical features</li> <li>○ No unusual or rare biological communities or physical features</li> </ul>

**Ecological context of an area**

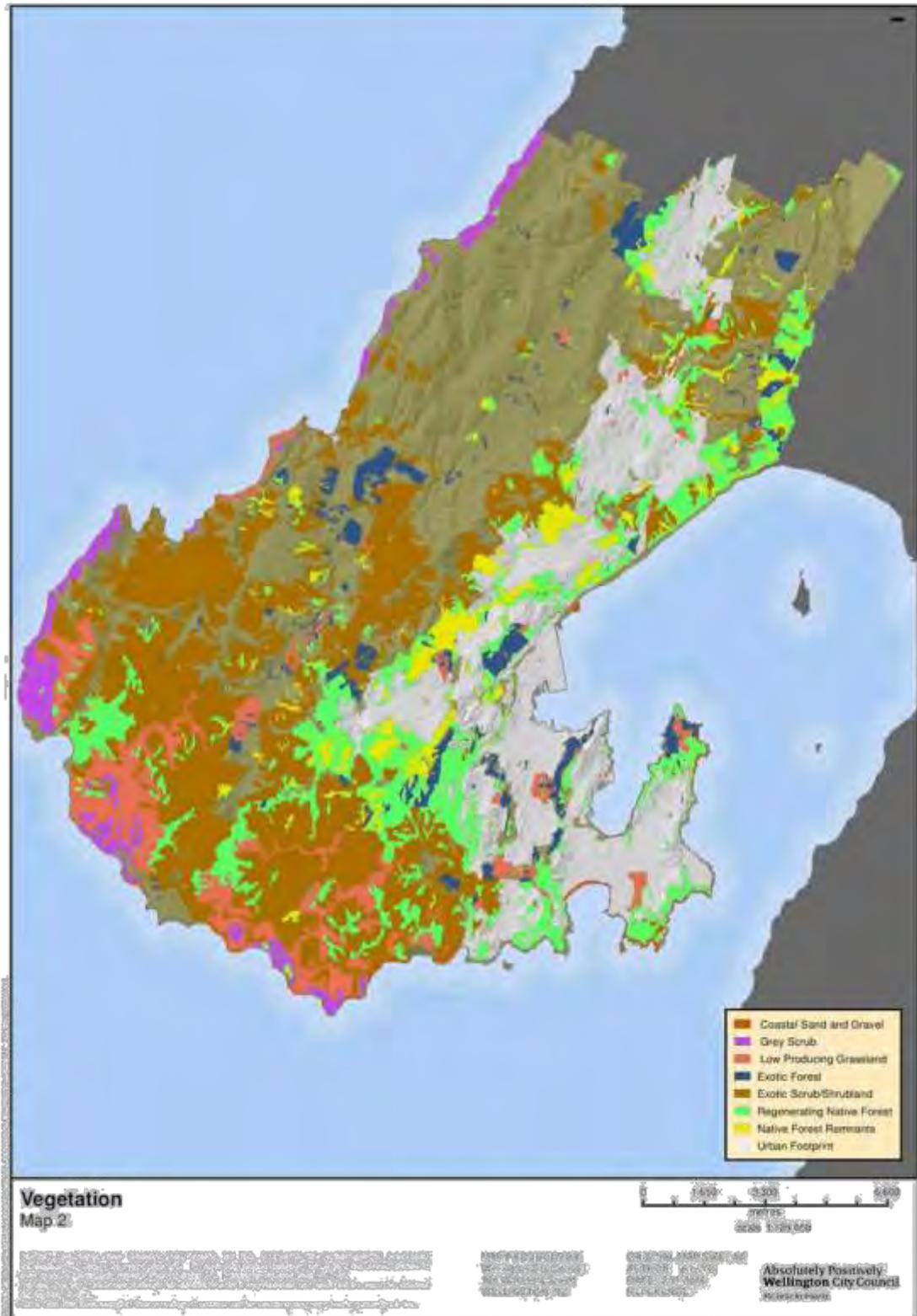
Provides connectivity between fragmented indigenous habitats, buffers or enhances ecological values of a specific site, or provides seasonal or core habitat for specific indigenous species.

Rank	Criteria
High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Enhances connectivity between representative, rare or diverse indigenous ecosystems and habitats</li> <li>○ Buffers representative, rare or diverse indigenous ecosystems and habitats</li> <li>○ Provides seasonal or core habitat for protected or threatened indigenous species</li> </ul>
Medium	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Contributes to the connectivity of now fragmented indigenous habitats</li> <li>○ Partial buffering to a known site of ecological value</li> <li>○ Provides critical seasonal or core habitat for a particular indigenous species</li> </ul>
Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ No connectivity or buffering function</li> <li>○ Similar to other areas that provide seasonal or core habitat for any particular indigenous species</li> <li>○ Very isolated from other natural areas</li> </ul>

**Tangata whenua values**

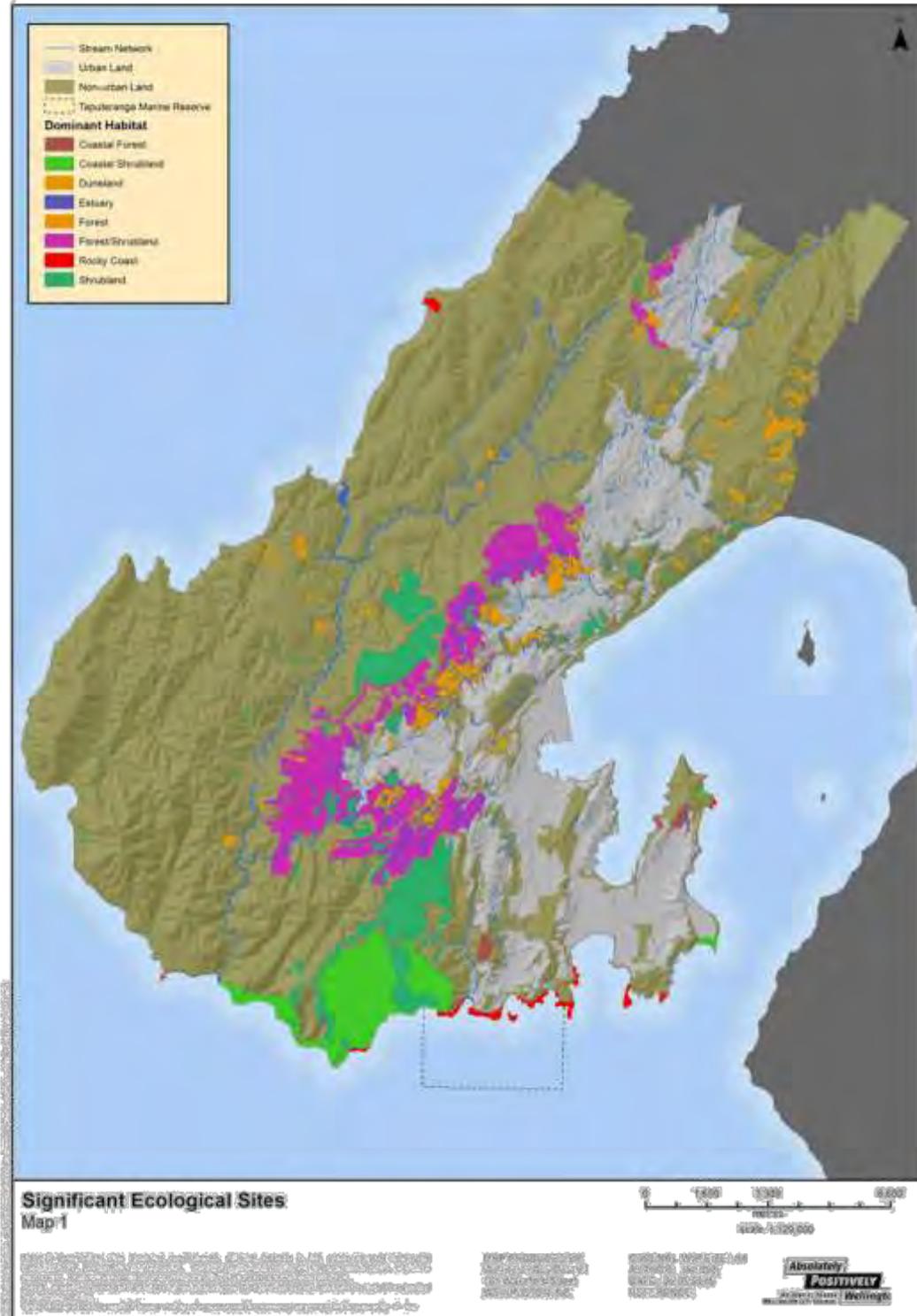
The ecosystem or habitat contains characteristics of special spiritual, historical or cultural significance to tangata whenua, identified in accordance with tikanga Maori.

APPENDIX 3 – Wellington's vegetation



### APPENDIX 4 – Significant Ecological Sites

Please note, these sites are subject to change as priorities are refined and revised, and new information acquired. New sites may be added and others removed during the life of the plan. Current sites and further detail can be found on the Council website.



## APPENDIX 5 - Nationally threatened, regionally threatened and locally significant species

The threat status of these species may change over time.

### Nationally threatened and at risk species

#### Birds

Common name	Latin name	National threat status
<i>Endemic</i>		
Banded dotterel	<i>Charadrius bicinctus</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Bush falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae "bush"</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Kakariki (Red-crowned)	<i>Cyanoramphus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>	At Risk - Relict
Long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>	At Risk - Declining
North Island Kaka	<i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
North Island Saddleback	<i>Philesturnus rufusater</i>	At Risk - Recovering
Stitchbird/Hihi	<i>Notiomystis cincta</i>	Threatened - Nationally Endangered
Variable oystercatcher	<i>Haematopus unicolor</i>	At Risk - Recovering
<i>Self-introduced</i>		
Black shag	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Caspian tern	<i>Hydroprogne caspia</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Little black shag	<i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Little penguin	<i>Eudyptula minor iredalei</i>	At Risk - Declining
Little shag	<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Pied shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Pied stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus</i>	At Risk - Declining
Red-billed gull	<i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Royal spoonbill	<i>Platalea regia</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
White-fronted tern	<i>Sterna striata striata</i>	At Risk - Declining

#### Lizards

Common name	Latin name	National threat status
Barking gecko	<i>Naultinus punctatus</i>	At Risk - Declining
Ornate skink	<i>Oligosoma ornatum</i>	At Risk - Declining
Spotted skink	<i>Oligosoma lineocellatum</i>	At Risk - Relict

#### Freshwater fish

Common name	Latin name	National threat status
Longfin eel	<i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i>	At Risk - Declining
Giant kokopu	<i>Galaxias argenteus</i>	At Risk - Declining
Koaro	<i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i>	At Risk - Declining
Inanga	<i>Galaxias maculatus</i>	At Risk - Declining
Shortjaw kokopu	<i>Galaxias postvectis</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Bluegill bully	<i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i>	At Risk - Declining
Redfin bully	<i>Gobiomorphus huttoni</i>	At Risk - Declining

#### Plants

Common name	Latin name	National threat status
Gossamer grass	<i>Anemanthele lessoniana</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Jersey fern	<i>Anogramma leptophylla</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable

Buchanan's orache	<i>Atriplex buchananii</i>	Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable
Grey saltbush	<i>Atriplex cinerea</i>	Threatened - Nationally Critical
Holloway's crystalwort	<i>Atriplex hollowayi</i>	Threatened - Nationally Critical
Kohurangi	<i>Brachyglottis kirkii</i>	At Risk - Declining
Kirk's crassula	<i>Crassula kirkii</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
	<i>Crassula mataikona</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
	<i>Crassula peduncularis</i>	Threatened - Nationally Critical
	<i>Crassula ruamahanga</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Little spotted moa orchid	<i>Drymoanthus flavus</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Shore spurge	<i>Euphorbia glauca</i>	At Risk - Declining
Pingao	<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>	At Risk - Declining
Giant hypolepis	<i>Hypolepis dicksonioides</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Leafless mistletoe	<i>Korthalsella salicornioides</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Coastal cress	<i>Lepidium flexicaule</i>	Threatened - Nationally Endangered
Cooks scurvy grass	<i>Lepidium oleraceum</i>	Threatened - Nationally
Thick-leaved mahoe	<i>Meliccytus crassifolius</i>	At Risk - Declining
	<i>Meliccytus obovatus</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Barlett's rata	<i>Metrosideros bartlettii</i>	Threatened - Nationally Critical
Shrubby tororaro	<i>Muehlenbeckia astonii</i>	Threatened - Nationally Endangered
Leafless pohuehue	<i>Muehlenbeckia ephedroides</i>	At Risk - Declining
Lyttelton forget-me-not	<i>Myosotis lytteltonensis</i>	Threatened - Nationally Critical
Sand daphne	<i>Pimelea villosa</i>	At Risk - Declining
Sand tussock	<i>Poa billardierei</i>	At Risk - Declining
NZ milk tree	<i>Streblus banksii</i>	At Risk - Relict
NZ spinach	<i>Tetragonia tetragonioides</i>	At Risk - Naturally Uncommon
Green mistletoe	<i>Tupeia antarctica</i>	At Risk - Declining

### Regionally threatened and locally significant species

#### Birds

Common name	Latin name
Bellbird	<i>Anthornis melanura melanura</i>
Kereru (Woodpigeon)	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>
Morepork	<i>Ninox novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i>
North Island Fantail	<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa placabilis</i>
North Island Robin	<i>Petroica longipes</i>
Tui	<i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i>

#### Lizards

Common name	Latin name
Copper skink	<i>Oligosoma aeneum</i>
Glossy brown skink	<i>Oligosoma zealandicum</i>
Minimac gecko	<i>Woodworthia 'Marlborough mini'</i>
Ngahere gecko	<i>Mokopirirakau aff. Granulatus 'Southern North</i>
Northern grass skink	<i>Oligosoma polychroma</i>
Raukawa gecko	<i>Woodworthia maculata</i>

**Freshwater fish**

**Common name**

Shortfin eel  
Banded kokopu

**Latin name**

*Anguilla australis*  
*Galaxias fasciatus*

**Plants**

**Common name**

Ferns  
Miro  
Matai  
Rimu  
Kahikatea  
Totara  
Rewarewa  
Kowhai  
Cabbage tree

**Latin name**

*Prumnopitys ferruginea*  
*Prumnopitys taxifolia*  
*Dacrydium cupressinum*  
*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*  
*Podocarpus totara*  
*Knightea excelsa*  
*Sophora microphylla*  
*Cordyline australis*

## APPENDIX 6 – Environmental pests

This list is subject to change as priorities are refined and revised. New species may be added and others removed during the life of the plan.

### Pest Animals

Common name	Latin name
Argentine ant	<i>Linepithema humile</i>
Australian magpie	<i>Gymnorhina tibicen</i>
Brown bullhead catfish	<i>Ameiurensis nebulosis</i>
Cat	<i>Felis catus</i>
Eastern rosella	<i>Platycercus eximius</i>
European hedgehog	<i>Erinaceus europaeus occidentalis</i>
Feral deer	<i>Cervus elaphus, C nippon, Dama dama</i>
Feral goat	<i>Capra hircus</i>
Feral pig	<i>Sus scrofa</i>
Feral rabbit	<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>
Ferret	<i>Mustela furo</i>
Hare	<i>Lepus europaeus occidentalis</i>
House mouse	<i>Mus musculus</i>
Koi carp	<i>Cyprinus carpio</i>
Mosquito fish	<i>Gambusia affinis</i>
Norway rat	<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>
Possum	<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>
Rainbow skink	<i>Lampropholis delicata</i>
Rudd	<i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>
Ship rat	<i>Rattus rattus</i>
Stoat	<i>Mustela erminea</i>
Sulphur crested cockatoo	<i>Cacatua galerita</i>
Tench	<i>Tinca tinca</i>
Wasp	<i>Vespula germanica; Vespula vulgaris</i>
Weasel	<i>Mustela nivalis</i>

### Pest Plants

African club moss	<i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>
Agapanthus	<i>Agapanthus praecox</i>
Aluminium plant	<i>Galeobdolon luteum</i>
Artemesia	<i>Artemesia spp</i>
Artillery plant	<i>Galeobdolon luteum</i>
Arum lily	<i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>
Asiatic knotweed	<i>Reynoutria japonica</i>
Banana passionfruit	<i>Passiflora mixta,</i>
Barberry	<i>Berberis glaucocarpa</i>
Bear's Breeches	<i>Acanthus mollis</i>
Blackberry	<i>Rubus fruticosus</i>
Blue morning glory	<i>Ipomoea indica</i>
Blue Passion Flower	<i>Passiflora caerulea</i>
Bomarea	<i>Bomarea caldasii and Bomarea multiflora</i>
Boneseed	<i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i>
Boxthorn	<i>Lycium ferocissimum</i>

Broom	<i>Cytisus scoparius</i>
Cape honey flower	<i>Melianthus major</i>
Cape ivy	<i>Senecio angulatus</i>
Cathedral bells	<i>Cobaea scandens</i>
Chilean flame creeper	<i>Tropaeolum speciosum</i>
Chinese and tree privet	<i>Ligustrum sinense</i> ; <i>L. lucidum</i>
Climbing asparagus	<i>Asparagus scandens</i>
Climbing dock	<i>Rumex sagittatus</i>
Cotoneaster	<i>Cotoneaster franchetii</i> , <i>C. horizontalis</i>
Darwin's barberry	<i>Berberis darwinii</i>
Egeria	<i>Egeria densa</i>
English ivy	<i>Hedera helix</i>
Elaeagnus	<i>Elaeagnus x reflexa</i>
Everlasting pea	<i>Lathyrus latifolius</i>
Evergreen buckthorn	<i>Rhamnus alaternus</i>
Fairy Crassula	<i>Crassula multicava</i>
Gazania	<i>Gazania spp.</i>
German ivy	<i>Senecio mikanoides</i>
Ginger	<i>Hedychium flavescens</i> , <i>H. gardnerianum</i>
Great bindweed	<i>Calystegia silvatica</i>
Gorse	<i>Ulex europaeus</i>
Gunnera	<i>Gunnera tinctoria</i>
Himalayan balsam	<i>Impatiens glandulifera</i>
Himalayan honeysuckle	<i>Leycesteria formosa</i>
Horned poppy	<i>Glaucium flavum</i>
Indian doab	<i>Cynodon dactylon</i>
Japanese honeysuckle	<i>Lonicera japonica</i>
Japanese spindletree	<i>Euonymus japonicus</i>
Jasmine	<i>Jasminum polyanthum</i>
Kikuyu	<i>Pennisetum clandestinum</i>
Lagarosiphon	<i>Lagarosiphon major</i>
Marram grass	<i>Ammophila arenaria</i>
Mexican daisy	<i>Erigeron karvinskianus</i>
Mile-a-minute	<i>Dipogon lignosus</i>
Mistflower	<i>Ageratina riparia</i>
Montbretia	<i>Crocasmia x crocosmifolia</i>
Nasturtium	<i>Tropaeolum majus</i>
Old man's beard	<i>Clematis vitalba</i>
Pampas grass	<i>Cortaderia jubata</i> ; <i>C. selloana</i>
Parrot's feather	<i>Myriophyllum aquaticum</i>
Periwinkle	<i>Vinca major</i>
Pigs ear	<i>Cotyledon orbiculata</i>
Plectranthus	<i>Plectranthus ciliatus</i>
Purple ragwort	<i>Senecio glastifolius</i>
Sea couch	<i>Elytrigia pycnantha</i>
Silver poplar	<i>Populus alba</i>
Smilax	<i>Asparagus asparagoides</i>

Item 2.1 Attachment 1

Spanish heath	<i>Erica lusitanica</i>
Stinking iris	<i>Iris foetidissima</i>
Tradescantia	<i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>
Tree lupin	<i>Lupinus arboreus</i>
Tuber ladder fern	<i>Nephrolepis cordifolia</i>
Velvet groundsel	<i>Senecio petasitis</i>
Wild onion	<i>Allium triquetrum</i>
<b>Pest trees</b>	
Brush wattle	<i>Paraserianthes lophantha</i>
Buddleia	<i>Buddleja davidii</i>
Cherry	<i>Prunus spp</i>
Cherry laurel	<i>Prunus laurocerasus</i>
Crack and pussy willow	<i>Salix fragili, S. cinerea</i>
Hawthorn	<i>Crataegus monogyna</i>
Holly	<i>Ilex aquifolium</i>
Karaka	<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>
Karo	<i>Pittosporum crassifolium</i>
Monkey apple	<i>Acmena smithii</i>
Sycamore	<i>Acer pseudoplatanus</i>
Wilding conifers	<i>Larix decidua; Cupressus macrocarpa</i>
Wilding pines	<i>Pinus spp</i>

Summary point	Submitters	Response
<b>PROTECT</b>		
Biosecurity should have a very high priority within Council (with funding attached)	9, 14, 20, 25, 31, 36, 37, 39, 41, 44, 46, 51	Noted - any new initiatives will be considered through 2015/16 annual plan
Pest control should be given greater priority in the Miramar Peninsula		1 New future vision of having Miramar as a pest free peninsula
Councils need to take more responsibility around cats	1, 5, 6, 33, 34, 51	Have actions regarding initiatives around cats, including reviewing the animal control bylaw.
Should be a microchipping policy put in place for all Wellington cats to enable id and return to complement stray cat capture and removal	1, 6	Included new action to "investigate subsidising microchipping for cats near sensitive wildlife areas as a voluntary approach."
Wilding trees (pines, sycamores) are an issue and need to be included	8, 20, 34	Wilding trees have been included as a priority under environmental pests and in the list of species in the appendix.
Protecting biodiversity on private land is a priority.	17, 20, 31, 39, 41, 51	Agree - have changed timeframe to get significant sites protected through the District Plan from medium to short.
Control of weed species on private land	8, 27, 31, 34	Words added under Policy section and under environmental pests to clarify Council role in pest weed species on private land.
Add weeds to appendix, including Himalyan Balsam	10, 20	Done, weed species have been added in accordance with submissions.
Include rabbits under localised pest control	13, 27	Done
Delete eastern rosella as there is no recognised control method	13	Disagree - only in here as a species to watch, not control at this point. Not a reason to remove.
Change example under 12.1.3.a to remove example as could overstate role of stoats in rat control	13	Done
Change DOC guidelines for humane animal control to NPCA guidelines as current best practise.	13	Done
Extend commitment to biocontrol to other species as new techniques become available.	13	Done
Include fallow deer as pest species	13	Already included in pest species list
Pest management should be a standalone chapter	20	This was considered but as pest management is one of a suite of tools and issues facing biodiversity it was felt that it sat better within the current structure. We are confident that there is enough guidance within the plan to cover Council's pest management activities. Have made amendment to actions 1.1.3.c as proposed.
Make changes to 1.3.2.b and 1.3.2.e to enhance decision making	20	Have added new actions "Carry out pest control based on priority species with the greatest potential to have adverse impacts, across all public land" and "Work with other organisations (including GWRC, DOC, Predator Free NZ, Zero Invasive Predators) to ensure we are using the best methodologies for controlling pest species" and changed timeframe of 1.3.2.f as proposed.
Add prioritisation of pests	5, 20, 30, 34	The prioritisation of pests is dependent on the objectives for that area. Have added in new paragraphs explaining Council approach to the prioritisation of pest species for control. These will guide the Pest Management Implementation Plan (action 1.3.1.a)
Pollution and sediment affect a broader array of species	8	Added "this pollution also affects other species up the food chain, including sea birds and marine mammals such as orca.
Leachate is an issue from closed landfills	8	added "the management of our closed landfills also must ensure that leachate doesn't enter our aquatic ecosystems."
Acknowledge impact of dogs on young forest birds	10, 28, 51	Have added in words to acknowledge impact of dogs on fledglings in forest under action 3.3.1.d "and in forests during crucial periods like fledging"

Development and fragmentation are a significant threat	12, 20	These are all covered 11.1.3.b. Have added additional wording to ensure that this threat and Council's response is clear. Have increased working around urban growth.
The inclusion of significant sites on private land is a priority, should be done in the next 1-3 years.	12, 31	Agree - have changed timeframe for this action from medium to short.
Fire is also a threat	34	Have included fire in list of threats
Reduce use of herbicides	21, 32, 41, 43	As well as some changes in the body of the text, guidelines have been amended to "While recognising the necessity of toxin and chemical use, we will look at alternatives such as biocontrol, new technologies, and bait station placement to gradually reduce the amount of toxins and chemicals entering the environment." and "We will advocate for chemical and toxin free approaches where practicable, such as in small urban backyards." and a new action included "Work with the community to explore options for chemical free pest control and recommend chemical free approaches for small scale operations"
Add Makara Peak to guideline 13.1.4 (11) Fencing effort will be prioritised along the Outer Green Belt where grazing areas are adjacent to ecologically significant areas such as Otari-Wilton's Bush, Khandallah Park and Redwood Bush.	5	This action is focused on where grazing areas are adjacent to areas, not meant for feral goats.
Support development of track criteria	20, 50	Noted
Reword 1.1.1a to 'scenic' reserve classification to provide appropriate protection	5	Some reserves containing ecologically significant sites are better suited to primary purpose of recreation or historic eg Oruaiti and Watts Peninsula, while that reserve status still giving appropriate protection. Ecologically significant areas within reserves will then have additional protection under review of conservation sites (action 1.1.2.a).
Include biodiversity street sensitive lighting	28	Agreed, added new action "What impact do street lights in Wellington have on our indigenous biodiversity?"
Pest control is important but must be carried out humanely	29, 43, 47	Have amended guideline 11.1.4.6 to "All animal pest control will be carried out in accordance with the Animal Welfare Act 1999 to ensure it is carried out humanely."
Support the removal of barriers to fish passage	10, 21, 23, 28	Noted
Add guidelines on aquatic ecosystem degradation	13, 23, 38	Have added in new guidelines around aquatic ecosystem degradation
Identify reasons for biodiversity decline in freshwater and contribution it can make to address those matters	16, 23	Section 11.1.3.c increased and more written about Council's response to aquatic degradation, including Integrated Catchment Management Planning process.
Aquatic ecosystem degradation - reference the effect of introduced fish	17	Have done under 11.1.3
Append underground stormwater when referring to fish passage	21	Have amended action 1.4.3.b to "Work with GWRC and within the Council to ensure no new permanent barriers to fish passage are created through works in natural streams or stormwater systems where these link significant stream habitat together."
Amend 1.4.3.f to include eel habitat	28	Already covered
Climate change strategies must realise land/sea interface and changing seascapes and weather patterns, as well as dampening value of kelp beds.	16	Have added reference to dampening value of kelp beds under section 11.1.3.d.
More mention needs to be made about permeable surfaces	21,26,27,28,38,42	Using water permeable surfaces has been added under response section, and in new concept plan about terrestrial, freshwater and community whole of ecosystem approach.
<b>RESTORE</b>		
Include more reference to freshwater fish	17, 38, 41	Have added freshwater fish in list of key species and in appendix

More information about the restoration of streams is important	13, 20, 31, 38, 39	Have added new actions 2.2.1.b. "Identify and prioritise streams that should be restored from their current state" and 2.2.1.c "c. Support or seek funding with agencies such as Million Metre Streams, supporting community groups to apply for funding via these organisations" and 2.2.1.h. "Work with local farmers to fence and plant riparian areas on their land." and included new guidelines for streams under restore
Research appropriate native species for planting within Wellington	16, 20, 21, 33, 39, 50	Have added new action "Carry out research on indigenous tree species to determine suitability for specimen and street tree planting"
Need to identify both significant areas and area with future potential	12, 20, 30, 31	Agree - the plan does recognise the need for future potential areas for restoration. Have moved priorities to the restoration section and stated a key focus area is "Remaining natural open spaces that form an important part of wider ecological networks through supporting biodiversity and/or providing future restoration sites. These areas may not be considered of high ecological significance in isolation, but form the backbone of our green spaces and are a crucial feature in the restoration of our city. "
Planting podocarps must be done carefully	34, 39	Agree - covered under 4.1.2 and 4.2.4 to look at microhabitat requirements and monitor survival.
Must start using indigenous native species as part of street tree and specimen planting	20, 21, 31, 33, 50	New action "Carry out research on indigenous tree species to determine suitability for specimen and street tree planting"
Some exotic trees have a role eg provide food for birds	3,30, 34,43	Agree - this has been acknowledged within the strategy
Recommend caution around installation of nesting boxes	17	Noted - covered under 13.2.5
Include provision for enhancing existing restoration programmes	17	Added new action 2.3.3.b b. "Support other organisations with restoration programmes where these are already in place"
Need to identify key pest species that could be assisted by connections	17	Agree - covered in text under 11.2.3
Need to take in to account existing information	17	Agree - this would be part of existing actions
Mention the wetland at Zealandia	17	Have added in mention of Zealandia wetland under 7.2
Some species mentioned are not traditional cavity nesters	17	Have removed reference to these species
Issues around Te Kopahau and protecting and restoring the area	5, 22, 24	Agree that current wording regarding Te Kopahau pre-empts outcome. Have changed action to: d. Develop a master plan for Te Kopahau Reserve. Have not added a new concept plan around Te Kopahau as future plans for that area will be decided through the Master Plan. Aquisitions are covered under other plans such as Our Capital Spaces, Our Natural Capital recognises the need for large areas for restoration, but Te Kopahau is already our largest reserve, and the strategy is based on the premise that our biodiversity can thrive within our current reserve network (and on private land) with adequate education, assistance, protection and restoration programmes put in place. Have removed reference to Te Kopahau from goal 1.3.1 (d) as it can already be covered without specific mention. 1.3.3.b also covers the area adjacent to Te Kopahau reserve in terms of increasing our pest control network.
Restoring integrity of areas should include after slips	27	Agree - included under 11.2.3
Areas should be divided into habitats as well as themes	37	This was considered but overcomplicated the strategy.

Important not to get caught up in the details of the ecosourcing guidelines, these are best placed somewhere else so further discussion can occur	20, 39, 50	Agree - these have been removed and will be placed on WCC website where they can be updated more easily once DOC has confirmed national approach and have added new action 2.1.2.a. "Review eco-sourcing guidelines for use in different practical contexts, involving relevant organisations and community groups"
Daylight streams where they flow through parks and reserves.	29, 38	Have reworded action (2.2.1.f) and included a section on daylighting streams under 11.2.4. Also have defined daylighting in the glossary.
Add list of native fish and other aquatic species to appendix 3	17, 38	Have added native fish to appendix 3
Provide linkages around coastal environment	16	Covered under objective 2.3.3
<b>CONNECT</b>		
Recognise the role of Zealandia	2,17	Council is committed to continue supporting Zealandia in a number of ways. We agree that they are a vital part of Wellington's biodiversity picture. Zealandia has been added to actions 1.2.2(c) and correctly referred to under partner section.
Council needs to place continued emphasis on ongoing support for community groups, and increase technical support	5, 7, 9,14, 16, 20, 25, 30, 35, 36, 37, 46, 47, 48	Agreed, proposed under 3.3.7 and 3.4.4, action under goal 1.2 which includes the community and action 1.3.3. Have added new action: g. Facilitate the coordination between community environmental groups, including potential mergers, to ensure a sustainable community contribution to conservation.
Does edible planting have a role in this plan?	8	It does in terms of connecting people with nature and often this being the first step.
Need to manage community groups well.	8, 18,19, 20, 23, 45, 50	Support offered to groups by Council clarified.
Increase knowledge among general public of indigenous vs exotic	8, 20	New action "Develop and publish plant lists and guides for zones around Wellington (based on species that originally grew there) so people can be informed about the appropriate species to plant"; new action to create a teaching garden with the community showing the difference between species
Provide reference to locating community groups	8	Done - reference added to connect section
Need to recognise the roles of organisations accurately	13	Have moved the role of the GWRC to habitat based work rather than species based work, and further defined roles under the policy context in Appendix 1.
More recognition of the positive role of mountain bikers and the need for people to access nature	5,15, 22, 24	Have added positive references to the role of mountain biking in connecting people to nature throughout the document - in particular under the future section (7.3) , the connect section (11.3.3) and by amending actions and guidelines to cover fragmentation and disturbance more generally rather than singling out trail builders as an issue. Have also added walk "or ride" to action 3.1.2.a. Have amended 13.3.7.6. into a higher level guideline to read: We will recognise the need to preserve open spaces to meet values other than biodiversity including sports, recreation and landscape values and ensure that all Wellingtonians have access to these areas. The main focus for this plan is biodiversity, to be considered alongside Our Capital Spaces and the Open Space Access Plan when considering track development. Have left the overall objective as it stands to avoid weakening it, but have amended action to: Develop guidelines and criteria (working with stakeholders) for track development within reserves to balance recreational needs with ecological values.
Need to recognise positive aspects of other recreational users such as dog walkers	39	Agree - wording added under 11.3.3.

Changes need to be made to the tiered support for community groups to ensure equality and treat all groups appropriately, this includes trail building groups and groups working in the marine environment.	5, 16, 27, 33, 35, 43, 45	The section on connecting people with nature refers to the marine environment and recreational groups and nothing in the strategy excludes Council from supporting groups working in these areas, as we already do. As a result of feedback we know the model is supported but that it needs further work with the community. As a result, the guidelines have been removed from this strategy and will be placed on the Council website once a final structure has been decided.
Map of community groups is superfluous and other maps should be moved	34	Have removed map and put others in Appendix - also helps clarity of document
Reword objective for goal 3.2.3 about children and youth	5	Have amended the goal as suggested: Promote and support increased ecological literacy amongst Give children and young people youth the opportunity to experience and learn about nature and have added new action g. Identify and promote outdoor recreation opportunities for children and youth
Add 'volunteers' to guidelines 13.1.4 (8).	5	Have added: <i>and volunteers where appropriate</i>
13.3.7 remove or reword guidelines 1-5 as they don't make sense	5	Agree - some have been removed and guidelines reworded
Add to guidelines on pg 55 and pg 63 around community groups.	5	Have added suggested guideline under 13.3.7 with other community related guidelines. No need to duplicate guidelines so have not added under section 13.2.
Include Forest & Bird in list of community groups	8	Done
Term adventive in 13.2.2 is confusing.	20	Agree - have removed word adventive to make wording clearer
13.3.5 to include types of common pollution	27	Have added "(such as car oil, paint and cement)"
Would like to assist with training opportunities	52	Noted
Need systems to allow commercial operators to contribute while getting security of tenure.	45	This is covered by the WCC Concessions Policy
<b>RESEARCH</b>		
Assess success against where things were at in 2007 and monitoring indicators need to be looked at to make them relevant and ensure we can identify decline Baseline monitoring is needed.	8, 12, 20, 21, 23, 29, 33, 34, 41, 45, 49, 50	Have created new table under monitoring to introduce clearer operational monitoring targets and show where Council has come since 2007. Have stated the need for baseline information under measuring our performance. The CBI will be an initial baseline to measure our long term progress against.
Research section isn't clear - it also needs reference to Wellington's little known biodiversity assets	12	Have rewritten this section and tied the monitoring back into measuring our performance to make these links clearer. Agree on needing to research invertebrates. This is covered under action 4.1.1.b.
Citizen science needs to be carefully planned.	12, 34	Agree that citizen science needs to be carefully planned. - added to guideline "All citizen science projects will be carefully planned and managed and require the input of scientists at all stages of the project to ensure meaningful science."
Council should support community involvement in MCI and strongly support community research hub	37	Agree - covered under 3.3.2.e, 4.2.2.d and 4.4.2.b
Support greater focus on research and monitoring	20, 31, 34, 39, 43, 50	Noted
<b>GENERAL COMMENTS</b>		
Structure of document could be better, currently creates confusion	12, 20, 34, 39, 40, 45, 50	Have restructured document to remove duplications and create two sections that enable the document to flow better.
Integration of document into Council strategy is essential	11, 16, 20, 26, 27, 28, 31, 41, 51	A new action has been added to "add requirement for 'consideration of impact on indigenous biodiversity' to Council report templates" to give it a similar cross-Council significance to climate change, as both underpin our quality of life.
Increase focus on economic value	8, 31, 41	More on economics added in to introduction section
Visions and outcome statements need more careful description, aren't meaningful enough	12, 20, 39, 51	Have simplified vision and refined outcome statements and moved them under the vision to show that they are aspirational. Have rewritten the outcome for research and added in more commentary about leading research being linked to adaptive management of our biodiversity.

Item 2.1 Attachment 2

Need greater recognition of marine environment and more actions around it.	8,16,23,26,31,41	Have clarified Council's role in marine biodiversity in new policy section in the back. A new concept plan has been added to cover freshwater and therefore increasing Blue Belt focus on marine. Existing actions cover Council's responsibilities towards the marine environment through advocacy and mitigating and monitoring land based effects under 1.4.3, 1.4.5, 3.1.1, goal 3.2 and 4.2.3.
Recognise role of Taputeranga Marine Reserve	16,26,31,41	References to Taputeranga Marine Reserve and it's important role within the city have been added throughout the document.
Need to clarify how Council will manage the land based impacts on the marine environment	8,16,26,31,41	Have added in increased wording around WCC response to aquatic degradation and guidelines, as well as outlined what the Council's role is regarding the marine environment (advocacy and managing land based effects).
Blue Bell concept has too much of a terrestrial orientation. More emphasis placed on whole ecosystem restoration.	16, 41	A new concept plan has been added to cover freshwater freshwater and terrestrial and whole of ecosystem approach, therefore increasing Blue Belt focus on marine.
Streams need a higher profile and should be recognised for their significance. Advocate for no further loss of natural streams and strengthen protection	13, 21, 23, 38, 39, 45,51	Have strengthened wording in guideline around no further loss of natural streams. Have removed the words "where practicable" from the action to protect riparian areas in the District Plan to strengthen it. Have added in increased wording around WCC response to aquatic degradation and guidelines. Have included streams and TTR marine reserve on ecologically significant sites map. Added "aquatic" to action 2.3.3
Recognise value of South Coast and ability to provide recreation, livelihood, tourism, businesses	16, 26	Have referred to the value of the marine environment in relation to tourism under introduction
Small urban streams need more acknowledgement	21, 28, 29, 41, 42	Have included references to small urban streams and their role.
Reword the definition of ecologically significant to be consistent with the RPS to reflect a consistent regional approach	13	Agree and have reworded criteria accordingly
Clarify role regarding indigenous and exotic biodiversity and the term biodiversity	8, 40, 50	Clarification has been added in both the summary and introduction sections to make the term biodiversity and the role of this plan clear. "The protection of biodiversity not native to Wellington is not addressed in this strategy except where exotic species are needed to currently protecting indigenous values such as to providing habitat or shelter or can be used as a mechanism to connect people with nature." Words "emphasis" and "aim" removed from summary and summary rephrased to make it clear that the plan is about indigenous biodiversity. Have rephrased the present section (7.3) to make it clear what our intentions are.
Duplication of resources, show what organisations do and explain relevance to RMA	20, 30, 31, 34	Have added new policy context in back of document to explain respective roles and responsibilities
Need simple aspirational goals	20,34	Have reworked goals and incorporated them into the vision, and rewritten the future to be aspirational.
Funding and priorities need to be clarified	7, 19, 20, 26, 39, 41	Have amended wording and reference in the action plan to clarify which actions are top priorities and which require new funding.
Support use of CBI	7, 8, 20, 39, 49	Noted
GWRC included in list of organisations in guiding principles	20, 21, 28	GWRC are covered under government organisations to avoid writing long lists.
Include new definitions in glossary - wellbeing, vascular, resilience, locally significant species	12, 21, 27, 41, 51	Done
Concern about lack of focus on plants	20	Reworded past, present, future section to give greater emphasis to plants and threatened and locally significant plants added to Appendix 5. More species have been mentioned within document eg under 2.3.2.

---

Concept plans should show a wider vision for what can be achieved.	20, 31, 39	A new concept plan has been added to cover freshwater freshwater and terrestrial and whole of ecosystem approach, therefore increasing Blue Belt focus on marine.
--	------------	---



---

### **3. Policy**

---

## **SUBMISSION ON NEW ZEALAND'S CLIMATE CHANGE TARGET**

---

### **Purpose**

1. This report seeks the Committee's agreement to the Council's draft submission (attached as Attachment 1) on the Government's consultation on New Zealand's climate change target.

### **Recommendations**

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.
2. Agree to the Council's submission (attached as Attachment 1) to the Government on New Zealand's climate change target.
3. Agree to delegate authority to the Chief Executive and Chair of the Environment Committee to make minor editorial and wording changes to the draft submission.

### **Background**

2. In December 2015, New Zealand will join other countries in Paris at a meeting to negotiate a new international climate change agreement. An important part of this agreement will be the individual contributions that each country will make to address climate change. Specifically, all countries have been asked to put forward targets to reduce emissions after 2020 (e.g. out to 2025 or to 2030) as part of their contribution. The New Zealand Government has initiated a two-week consultation process to assist it with setting its climate change targets in preparation for the Paris talks in December.

### **Discussion**

3. Officers have prepared a draft submission to the Government (attached as Attachment 1) for this Committee's consideration and approval. The key submission points to the Government include:
  - support for the Government's commitment to keep temperature increases to below 2°C of pre-industrial levels by 2100
  - to keep temperature increases below 2°C by 2100, the submission urges Government to commit to a 2030 emissions reduction target that is linked to longer-term emissions reduction targets of 40% to 70% by 2050 (below 2010 levels) and zero net emissions by 2100
  - that Government should focus its implementation plan for achieving its 2030 target on reducing carbon dioxide emissions from transport and energy as well as methane emissions from waste (which link closely to the emissions profile of New Zealand urban areas)
  - that Government should extend the research funding focused on reducing agricultural emissions beyond 2019
  - that Government work with metro councils and businesses to develop the implementation plan for achieving its 2030 target.

---

**Conclusion**

4. This paper seeks the Committee's agreement to the Council's draft submission (attached as Attachment 1) on New Zealand's climate change target.

**Attachments**

Attachment 1. Draft Submission on New Zealand's Climate Change Target Page 122

Author	Zach Rissel, Programme Manager, Sustainability
Authoriser	John McGrath, Acting Director Strategy and External Relations

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

Officers have engaged with stakeholders to inform the contents of this submission.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

There are no Treaty of Waitangi considerations of this decision.

### **Financial implications**

There are no financial considerations of this decision.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

This report is informed by the Council's Climate Change Action Plan and draft Long Term Plan 2015-25.

### **Risks / legal**

There are no legal implications of this decision.

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

This report relates to New Zealand's emissions reduction target for 2030, which will be an important part of the next global agreement on climate change.

### **Communications Plan**

There is no communication plan associated with this report.

5 June 2015

Climate Change Contribution Consultation  
Ministry for the Environment  
PO Box 10362  
WELLINGTON 6143

### Wellington City Council's Submission on the Climate Change Contribution Consultation

1. The Wellington City Council ('the Council') welcomes the opportunity to submit on the Government's Climate Change Contribution Consultation.

#### Summary

2. The Council recommends that the Government:
  - a. commit to a 2030 reduction target that is linked to longer-term emissions reduction targets for 2050 (of 70% below 2010 levels) and 2100 (zero net emissions) in order to keep temperatures increases below 2°C of pre-industrial levels
  - b. focus New Zealand's emissions reduction strategy for 2030 on reducing carbon dioxide emissions from energy and transport sectors as well as methane from landfill waste
  - c. work with New Zealand businesses and local councils to develop and implement a low-carbon plan for achieving its 2030 emissions reduction target.

#### A 2030 target based on keeping warming to 2 degrees - pathway to zero net emissions

3. The Council supports the Government's commitment to the global goal to take collective action to hold temperature increases to below 2°C of pre-industrial levels by 2100. Keeping to this goal will require some collective leadership and action from Government, local government, industry/businesses and households.
4. The Council notes that the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) has stated in its latest synthesis report in 2014 that:

*"Emissions scenarios leading to CO<sub>2</sub>-equivalent concentrations in 2100 of about 450 ppm or lower are likely to maintain warming below 2°C over the 21<sup>st</sup> century relative to pre-industrial levels. These scenarios are characterized by 40% to 70% global anthropogenic GHG emissions reductions by 2050 compared to 2010, and emissions levels near zero or below zero in 2100."*<sup>1</sup>

5. Given the Government's commitment to keep temperatures increases to below 2°C of pre-industrial levels by 2100, the Council believes the Government should commit to a 2030 reductions target that is linked to longer-term emissions reductions for 2050 (of 70% below 2010 levels) and 2100 (zero net emissions) recommended by the IPCC. There is little point in the Government agreeing to the 2°C goal without also committing to emissions reduction targets and strategies/actions necessary to achieve this goal. Committing to the emission

<sup>1</sup> *Climate Change 2014 Synthesis Report: Summary for Policymakers*. Intergovernmental Panel of Climate Change Fifth Assessment Report, 2014. P.20

reduction pathways recommended by the IPCC is consistent with the Government's stated objective of having a target that guides "New Zealand over the long term in the global transition to a low emissions world."

#### Focus on reducing carbon dioxide emissions with 2030 target

6. In establishing New Zealand's target and implementation plan for 2030, the Council acknowledges that it is very challenging at the present time to address New Zealand's agriculture emissions (New Zealand's largest emissions source at 48%) given many of the technology developments to address agriculture emissions remain untested or unproven. However, there are considerable opportunities for reducing carbon dioxide emission sources and methane emissions from landfill waste as noted in the Government's consultation document.
7. Carbon dioxide emissions (transport and energy emissions) and methane emissions from waste are the dominant emissions profiles of New Zealand's metro areas. The Council therefore encourages the Government to focus on the following key strategies for achieving its 2030 target:
  - a. developing and implementing a plan to reduce carbon dioxide emissions from transport and energy and methane emissions from waste as the priority for emissions reductions for the 2030 target (particularly focusing on New Zealand's urban, metro areas).
  - b. extending the research funding for the Global Research Alliance on Agricultural Greenhouse Gases (GRA) well beyond 2019 in order to retain and attract leading scientists to develop, test and commercialise new products and techniques to reduce agriculture emissions (with a focus on the medium to long-term).
  - c. converting New Zealand's marginal farmland into plantation forestry or permanent, indigenous forests.

#### Working with metro councils and NZ businesses

8. The Council urges the Government to start developing a plan to de-carbonise the New Zealand economy that is associated with New Zealand's emissions reduction target. As stated in the previous section, this plan should focus on the short term (out to 2030) on emissions from transport and energy as well as emissions from waste – the key emissions sources of New Zealand urban areas. A key part of the plan will be identifying and agreeing to the costs of achieving the plan (and who pays).
9. The Government has partners who are ready to collaborate to develop and implement a low-carbon for New Zealand and New Zealand's metro areas. Many of the large metro councils such as Wellington, Auckland and Christchurch have agreed climate plans for their cities. In addition, New Zealand businesses are starting to make commitments to developing low-carbon products. Examples of this include Z Energy's commitment to develop biofuels, Mighty River Power's commitment to electric vehicle technology, Air New Zealand's commitment to developing low-carbon aviation fuels and recent developments relating to solar PV financing offers.
10. The Council believes that the Government has relied too heavily on the NZ Emissions Trading Scheme (NZ ETS) alone for achieving emissions reduction goals. Whilst the Council is supportive of the NZ ETS (and acknowledges that a price on carbon will be instrumental to achieve emissions reductions), the Council believes a broader plan is needed to address emission sources, particularly from transport and energy. For each area of focus of the Government's plan, the Council recommends the Government describes the estimated emissions reductions that will be achieved. Areas of focus for the plan could include:
  - a. transitioning toward an electric transport system by 2030

- b. developing the plan for how New Zealand will achieve the 90% renewable electricity target by 2025
- c. developing a plan for how biofuels will be substituted for diesel by 2030
- d. introducing vehicle fuel efficiency standards within the next 5-10 years
- e. introducing broader energy efficiency programmes and standards for commercial buildings and housing
- f. introducing policies and investment to support compact, urban growth in New Zealand urban metro areas
- g. increasing investment for public transport and cycling infrastructure for New Zealand urban metro areas
- h. increasing development of forest sinks, particularly on marginal farmland.

**Cost of the target vs the long-term costs of climate change**

11. The Government’s consultation document focuses almost entirely on the costs of meeting targets as opposed to the costs to the New Zealand economy if worst-case climate impact scenarios eventuate. The Council acknowledges that there will be a cost to the New Zealand economy for achieving emissions reductions targets. However, the Council believes the Government should be guided by the key recommendation of the *Stern Review: Economics of Climate Change*: the benefits of strong, early action on climate change outweigh the costs.<sup>2</sup> Recommendations from the Stern Review and similar recommendations from the IPCC’s 4<sup>th</sup> Assessment Report indicate that the overall costs of climate change impacts (i.e. the cost of inaction) will have much more severe effects on global GDP compared to the costs of up-front action.
12. The Council would welcome the opportunity to speak to this submission.

Yours sincerely

**Celia Wade-Brown**  
**MAYOR OF WELLINGTON**

**David Lee**  
**Portfolio leader**  
**CLIMATE CHANGE**

**Iona Pannett**  
**CHAIR**  
**ENVIRONMENT COMMITTEE**

<sup>2</sup> *Stern Review: Economics of Climate Change*. 2006. Nicolas Stern.

---

## 4. Monitoring

---

# REPORTS FROM COUNCIL CONTROLLED ORGANISATIONS FOR THE QUARTER ENDING 31 MARCH 2015

---

### Purpose

1. To provide reports from the Wellington Zoo Trust (the Zoo) and the Karori Sanctuary Trust (ZEALANDIA) for the quarter ended 31 March 2015.

### Summary

2. This report includes the quarterly updates from the above Council Controlled Organisations (CCOs) and affiliated entities for the quarter ended 31 March 2015.

### Recommendations

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.
2. Note any issues for the Chair to raise with the entities covered by this report.

### Background

3. It is a requirement of the Local Government Act 2002 (the Act) that where the Council is a shareholder in a Council Organisation it must regularly undertake performance monitoring of that organisation to evaluate its contribution to the achievement of:
  - the Council's objectives for the organisation;
  - the desired results, as set out in the organisation's Statement of Intent; and
  - the Council's overall aims and outcomes.
4. The organisations included in this report are:
  - The Wellington Zoo Trust
  - Karori Sanctuary Trust
5. ZEALANDIA is not a CCO but is included in this report because of the materiality of the Council's financial commitment to the entity and because of the entity's contribution to Council outcomes.
6. Wellington Water Limited (WWL) is owned jointly by Wellington City Council, Upper Hutt City Council, Lower Hutt City Council, Porirua City Council and Greater Wellington Regional Council and delivers services for and on behalf of these territorial authorities. A joint committee of shareholders is tasked with ensuring WWL meets the expectations of its shareholders in delivering its services. WWL reports to the joint committee.

### Discussion

7. If the Committee needs to clarify the information presented or requires additional assistance with its monitoring role, it can ask officers or the Chair of the Committee to seek responses from the Board Chair.

**Attachments**

Attachment 1.	Zoo Trust Q3 2014/15 summary and report	Page 128
Attachment 2.	Karori Sanctuary Trust Q3 2014/15 summary and report	Page 144
Attachment 3.	Wellington Water Q3 2014/15 report	Page 160
Attachment 4.	Three Waters Report and Outlook	Page 186

Authors	Richard Hardie, Portfolio Manager Warwick Hayes, CCO Project Manager
Authoriser	Derek Fry, Director City Growth & Partnerships

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

The organisations in this report consult with the Council on a wide range of matters as part of our “no surprises” relationship.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

This report raises no new treaty considerations. Where appropriate the entities do consult with the Council’s Treaty Relations unit as part of normal operations.

### **Financial implications**

The CCOs work within the context of the Council’s overall Long Term Plan and Annual Plan framework.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

This report complies with the legislative requirements of the Local Government Act (2002) and is consistent with existing Council policy.

### **Risks / legal**

Not applicable.

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

The CCOs work with the Council and other organisations in considering the environmental sustainability of their operations, including with the Council’s Our Living City programme.

### **Communications Plan**

Not applicable.

WELLINGTON ZOO TRUST

Q3 REVIEW TO 31 MARCH 2015

QUARTER PERFORMANCE	YEAR TO DATE PERFORMANCE
<p>A number of successful community events were hosted at the Zoo during the quarter, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a Sustainable Business Network event, Sustainability 101, encouraging other organisations to start their sustainability journeys.</li> <li>'Mark of Support' fundraising campaign where individuals and families can purchase an engraved metal plaque which will be displayed along the pathway in Meet the Locals.</li> <li>The Zoo's most successful Valentine's Night event with 349 visitors in attendance.</li> <li>The 10th annual Neighbours Night BBQ attended by over 1550 visitors</li> </ul> <p>The Nest Te Kōhanga admitted a number of endangered species including 2 Haast Tokoeka, 2 Hihī, 7 Yellow-eyed penguins and a second Fiordland Crested penguin.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction of Meet the Locals Phase 2 was completed The project continues to be on track to open in Q2 2015/16</li> <li>The Zoo's Facebook page is closing in on 30,000 likes.</li> <li>The Zoo Twilights initiative continues to be well received. Q3 received 470 visitors and sold twice as many <i>Close Encounters</i> as the previous year.</li> <li>10 schools participated in the Warehouse Wellington Zoofari during the quarter, bringing the total for the year to 30.</li> <li>January 2015 was the second highest month on record for The Nest Te Kōhanga for wildlife admissions with 63 birds being admitted. YTD there have been 352 admissions.</li> </ul>

SUMMARY FINANCIALS							
* Variance (Actual minus Budget): ✓ Favourable variance to budget ✗ Unfavourable variance to budget							
FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE (\$,000)	Q3 Actual	Q3 Budget	Variance	YTD Actual	YTD Budget	Variance	Annual Budget
Total Revenue	1,967	1,625	342 ✓	5,783	4,658	1,125 ✓	6,037
Total Expenses	1,479	1,486	7 ✓	4,456	4,525	69 ✓	6,037
Operating Surplus (excluding capital grants and donations)	164	139	25 ✓	273	133	140 ✓	0
Net Surplus	488	139	349 ✓	1,327	133	1,194 ✓	0
FINANCIAL POSITION							
Total Assets				4,844	2,401	2,443 ✓	1,579
Total Liabilities				2,628	1,525	(1,103) ✗	836
Equity				2,216	876	1,340 ✓	743
CASH FLOWS							
Total Net Cash Flows				2,409	837	1,572 ✓	21
Opening Cash				1,937	1,400	537 ✓	1,400
Closing Cash				4,346	2,237	2,109 ✓	1,421
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Revenue of \$5.783m YTD is ahead of budget by \$1,125k (24%) partly as a result of a \$500k grant from Pub Charity and a \$170k grant from Lotteries towards the construction of the Meet the Locals project earlier in the year.</li> <li>Operating Revenue (revenue less capital grants and donations) of \$4.729m YTD is ahead of budget by \$71k (2%), and 6% ahead of last year's result.</li> <li>YTD expenses are tracking in line with budget.</li> <li>The YTD operating surplus normalised for capital donations is \$273k, well ahead of the budgeted surplus of \$133k.</li> <li>The Trust's cash balance as at 31 March was \$4.4m, including \$0.58m in restricted funds and \$1.05m in capital grants. This strong position is in part due to timing as the Zoo received two milestone grants payments during the quarter for projects.</li> </ul>							

CONTACT OFFICER

RICHARD HARRIS

WELLINGTON ZOO TRUST

Q3 REVIEW TO 31 MARCH 2015

KPI DASHBOARD					
MEASURE		Q3	YTD	3 Year	Comments
		31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	Trend	
Visitors	Target	65,292	177,128	Improving	Q3 visitors were below target by 1% and YTD remain under budget by 4% as a result of adverse weather during the school holidays in Q1 that affected visitor numbers more than in previous years. YTD visitor numbers are below target, but ahead of the previous year.
	Actual	64,629 ✗	170,219 ✗	↗	
Average income per visitor (excl. WCC grant)	Target	\$14.25		Steady	
	Actual	\$15.63 ✓		→	
Ratio of trust generated income as % WCC grant	Annual Target	119%		Steady	
	Actual YTD	129% ✓		→	
Average WCC subsidy per visitor	Annual target	<\$11.96		Steady	
	Actual YTD	\$12.15 ✗		→	
Fully Cost per visitor including WCC Subsidy	Annual target	\$20.06 (quarterly)		Steady	
	Actual YTD	\$20.17 ✗		→	
Staff turnover	Annual target	<15%		Steady	
	Actual YTD	14.95% ✓		→	
Collection in managed programmes	Target	41%		Steady	Requirement set by Zoo and Aquarium Association Australasia
	Actual YTD	38.89% ✗		→	
In the Wild conservation projects supported	Annual Target	>4		Improving	
	Actual YTD	9 ✓		↗	
Volunteer hours	Annual target	9800 hrs		Improving	
	Actual YTD	9,439 hrs		↗	

ISSUES & OUTLOOK
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Phases 3 and 4 of Meet the Locals have been priced and approved for construction. Construction is progressing well with the remaining stages of this project.</li> <li>The Zoo continues to work with Council on provisions within the Council's 2015-25 Long Term Plan.</li> </ul>

CONTACT OFFICER

RICHARD HARRIS

WELLINGTON



1

**To:** Wellington City Council Environment Committee  
**From:** Wellington Zoo Trust  
**Date:** 31 March 2015

## Quarter Report 2014/15 Financial Year

### Highlights

- In March we hosted a Sustainable Business Network event, Sustainability 101, encouraging other organisations to start their sustainability journeys. Our Chief Executive chaired this event.
- A successful fundraising event was held on 23 March for individual supporters of the Zoo. We launched our 'Mark of Support' campaign where individuals and families can purchase an engraved metal plaque which will be displayed along the pathway in Meet the Locals. We also relaunched our Kākā Membership designed especially for people to be able to provide ongoing support for the Zoo.
- We had our most successful ever Valentine's Night event on 14th February despite some poor weather, with 349 visitors in attendance.
- On January 29 we held our 10th annual Neighbours Night BBQ, inviting our immediate Zoo neighbours to the Zoo - in conjunction with Wellington City Council Housing. Thanks to the sunny weather and good reputation this evening has amongst our locals, we saw our busiest ever Neighbours Night with around 1550 visitors between 5pm and 8pm. The event involved participation from Zoo staff and volunteers as well as volunteers from WCC City Housing and ASB.
- We admitted two nationally endangered Hīhi from Zealandia to The Nest Te Kōhanga for medical care. Both birds have been successfully released back to the Sanctuary.
- We admitted seven Yellow-eyed Penguins as well as our first Royal Spoonbill to The Nest Te Kōhanga. Spoonbills are at risk and are classified as naturally uncommon. YEPs are classified as nationally vulnerable by DOC however the IUCN red list classes them as endangered.
- We admitted a second Fiordland Crested Penguin, one of the rarest of New Zealand's mainland penguins, with respiratory disease. He has recovered well in hospital and is currently housed in the salt pool with the other FCP that arrived for treatment in December.
- We welcomed Khushi, a one-year-old female Red Panda from Hamilton Zoo who will be part of the conservation breeding programme for Red Pandas.



*The two Fiordland Crested Penguins recovering well at The Nest Te Kōhanga's salt pool*

## 1. Outstanding, intimate and unique visitor experiences

### Visitors and events

Visitation for the year to date 2014-2015 is behind target by 6,909 as at March 31.

#### Visitor Attendance

	Actual 13/14	Actual 14/15	Budget 14/15
Quarter 3	65,892	64,629	65,292
YTD	170,375	170,219	177,128

- Close Encounters continue to perform well. Cheetah Encounters were unavailable briefly in February while improvements were made to the exhibit's visitor viewing area including a new glass frontage.

#### LEOTC Numbers

	Target (learners)	March 13/14	YTD 13/14	March 14/15	YTD 14/15
School Visits (LEOTC)	9,000	730	8,003	2,086	10,349
Holiday Programme	1,300	0	987	0	1,185
<b>Total</b>	<b>10,300</b>	<b>730</b>	<b>8,990</b>	<b>2,086</b>	<b>11,534</b>

- The Holiday Programme continues to be popular and once again all days were sold out.

#### Volunteer Hours

	Annual Target	March 13/14	YTD 13/14	March 14/15	YTD 14/15
Volunteer Hours	9,600	964	5,344	1,124	9,439
Corporate Groups	36	3	25	4	26

#### Contact Animal Hours

	Annual Target	March 13/14	YTD 13/14	March 14/15	YTD 14/15
Visitor Ranger Hours	1,000 hrs	105 hrs 45 mins	835 hrs 51 mins	89 hrs 20 mins	872 hrs 45 mins
Total Zoo	1,000 hrs	128 hrs 10 mins	1028 hrs 56 mins	111 hrs 20 mins	1023 hrs 5 mins

- The Millipedes housed in Hero HQ have been introduced into our animal contact programme.

## 2. Integrated conservation and sustainability

- Two critically endangered Haast Tokoeka were flown to us in very weak condition. Both were in very poor body condition and severely dehydrated. The weaker bird did not survive however the second bird made good progress and was released at Orokonui Ecosanctuary near Dunedin.
- Wellington Zoo's Jane Goodall Institute Roots and Shoots group held its first event as part of WCC's Parks Week in March. Nature by Twilight - a night tour of Otari Wilton's Bush with around 70 people attending. One of the community issues the group identified was young people having limited access to nature.
- The Zoo's Green Team Quiz night on the 18th raised over \$700 for the Conservation Fund and had great reception by external participants.
- Results of a waste audit by the Sustainability Trust were received with recommendations on further reductions to be implemented over the next three years.
- Learning Manager attended the Wellington Enviro schools cluster hui to discuss our conservation learning programmes.
- January 2015 was the second highest month on record for The Nest Te Kōhanga for wildlife admissions, with 63 new birds being admitted to hospital during the month.
- Veterinary Science Manager spent three weeks in Otago and The Catlins working with DOC to provide veterinary advice and field assistance for Yellow-eyed Penguin recovery. This year an unprecedented number of adult penguins were injured by Barracouta bites requiring surgical repair.



*Aonach, a Haast Tokoeka Kiwi chick receives treatment at The Nest Te Kōhanga*

2.1 Veterinary Statistics – native animals brought to The Nest Te Kōhanga in the last year

Veterinary Statistics

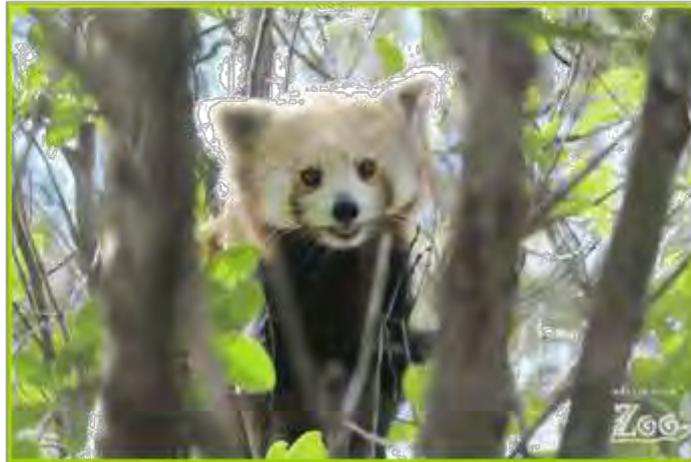
	Jan 2015	Feb 2015	Mar 2015	Total Jan-Mar 2015
Collection Animal Cases	25	31	29	85
Native Wildlife Cases	63	51	60	174
Post Mortems	0	6	3	9

Native Animal Admission Statistics

	2012	2013	2014	2015
January	45	47	57	63
February	26	41	72 (42 patients + 30 Quarantine)	51
March	41	19	41	60
April	24	25	31	
May	14	24	23	
June	15	47	34	
July	14	36	12	
August	16	22	19	
September	13	17	28	
October	23	58	20	
November	27	30	43	
December	27	51	56	

2.2 Animal Collection additions

Species	Gender	Status	Due
Nyala	Males and females as combined Import	From South Africa	When available
Giraffe	female	From Auckland Zoo	During 2015
Bongo	1 female	From Singapore Zoo for Taronga Zoo	On hold due to testing issues. Likely to resume during 2015
Ostrich	2 female	From Kowhai Grove Ostrich Farm, Fielding	May 2015
Porcupines	1 male and 1 female	From Chester Zoo in the UK	During April 2015
Jewelled Gecko	1 male and 1 female	Repatriation of smuggled animals from Europe for DOC	During April 2015
Golden Lion Tamarin	Male	Awaiting recommendation from the International Species Coordinator. The male is likely to come from Europe	As soon as possible
Cotton-top Tamarins	Male and female	Awaiting recommendations from Species Coordinator, likely to be a new pair from Europe	As soon as possible
Meerkats	2 males	From Twycross Zoo in the UK	During April 2015
Red Panda	Female	From Hamilton Zoo	Arrived March
Otter	5 males	Perth Zoo	Arrive mid 2015



*Khushi, our beautiful new one-year-old female Red Panda*

### **3. Capital Projects**

---

#### **Meet the Locals**

- Construction of Meet the Locals Phase 2 – Penguin Point complete.
- Phase 3 – Pohutukawa Farm Barn price received and approved for construction.
- Design and price for Phase 4 – Bush Builders Suspension Bridge approved for construction.

Construction is progressing well with the remaining stages of this project.



*Meet the Locals – Penguin Point*

#### 4. Industry Leadership

---

- Our Veterinary Science Manager, Dr Lisa Argilla, was elected as President of the New Zealand Veterinary Association Wildlife Society. Our Veterinarian, Dr Baukje Lenting, remains as a committee member of the Society for another term.
- The Chief Executive (ZAA Australasia President) and the Director of Hamilton Zoo (NZ ZAA President) met with World Animal Protection representatives to discuss areas of common ground for animal encounters. It is important the zoo community works with like-minded NGOs on areas of commonality.

#### 5. Financial Sustainability

---

The result for the nine months to 31 March 2015 shows an actual operating surplus of **\$273K** against a budgeted operating surplus of **\$133K**.

Revenue is above budget by \$71K and expenditure is below budget YTD March by \$69K due to timing of spend yet to happen.

#### 6. Business and Relationship Development

---

- Our Facebook page grew by 391 likes to 29,553. The baby Nyala announcement post had the highest reach (19K) and highest engagement (1.4K).
- We again ran our Zoo Twilights throughout February where we opened until 8pm every Wednesday evening. We received 470 visitors and sold twice as many Close Encounters as last year and had more Zoo Crew members attending Zoo Twilights this year.
- Free passes were once more distributed to first year out of town university students in Wellington, in conjunction with a special student Zoo Crew offer, with discounted student membership on offer for a short time.
- Sales and Service Manager continues to be focused on sourcing more eco-friendly/sustainable products that relate to Wellington Zoo and met with the Zoos Victoria Retail Buyer to discuss their retail strategy and attended the Melbourne Toy Trade Fair in early March.

#### 7. Valued and motivated staff

---

- Our Values project is well underway with data collected from staff workshops now being analysed to identify common themes and alignment supporting our new strategic plan.
- Our annual Zoolympics team building event took place in March. This is a staff initiative that involves a range of quirky challenges that enhance morale and team building and provides for an evening with lots of fun and laughter.

8

- Tracksuit-inc our online health and wellbeing resource for staff launched a Food Challenge in February. The challenge involved three weeks of engaging daily activities designed for any individual or team keen to become healthier, lose weight, gain more energy and generally improve their physical and mental wellbeing.

#### **Learning and Development**

- As part of our series of learning sessions based on Conservation Conversations Mike Rumble presented to staff in February. Mike has been leading penguin work on Mātū/Somes Island for several years and he shared with staff what was learnt about one of our neighbouring penguin populations.
- Our Conservation Manager ran a session on the work of the Kea Conservation Trust, also as part of this programme to familiarise staff with our conservation partners. The session covered the KCT's role from advocacy to pest control and the Conservation Manager talked about her experience whilst on conservation leave with the KCT.

#### **Volunteers**

- Our growing presence of volunteers helps the Zoo with a multitude of tasks and also inspires our local community to become more involved in the work that we do. We had 21 volunteers helping out at Neighbours Night and making a contribution to enhancing relationships with our local community in what was a highly successful and well attended event.

### **8. Lasting community support and participation**

---

- Our first The Warehouse Wellington Zoofari school for 2015 visited from Otaki in February, Te Kura-ā-iwi o Whakatapuranga Rua Mano. A further nine Zoofari schools attended in March.
- We are working with the Mojo Central Pulse this season. Wellington Zoo was the game day sponsor for the first Mojo Central Pulse home game of the season, with great Zoo presence at the arena. We are providing giveaway Zoo crew memberships at their home games, and season ticket holders will receive a free children's pass to the Zoo. Members of the team have visited the Zoo to highlight the partnership.



*Mojo Central Pulse players at the Zoo to meet visitors*

### 9. Nature Connections – Wellington Regional Amenity Fund Project

- The Chief Executive presented with Zealandia Chief Executive to the Wellington Regional Amenities Funding Body for Nature Connections on 27 March.
- Members of the Learning Team are participating in Nature Connections workshops this year, helping to develop connecting stories between the partners.



Ross Martin  
Chair, Wellington Zoo Trust Board

**Appendix 1 – Wellington Zoo Strategy Framework 2014-15**

MEASURE	TARGET 2014/15	TRACKING YTD	NOTES
<b>OUTSTANDING, INTIMATE &amp; UNIQUE VISITOR EXPERIENCES</b>			
Meeting ZCP project timing and budget programme	Phase One and Two of Meet the Locals	Grasslands Cats complete MTL construction in progress. Penguin Point complete.	Meet the Locals Construction proceeding well and meeting programme and financial targets.
<b>FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY</b>			
25% vesting target achieved	25% of CAPEX spend from CX340	\$1,054,546	We have changed the way we state this measure to reduce confusion at WCC regarding our fundraising targets
Increase total admissions by 2% each year on base year 2005/06 (170,116 visitors) as per Business Plan	230,111	170,219 YTD Mar	Visitor numbers are below target YTD March by 6,909. Visitor number YTD Mar 2013/14 was 170,375
Average income per visitor (excluding WCC grant)	≥ \$14.25	\$15.63	
Ratio of Trust generated income as % of WCC grant	119%	129%	
Average WCC subsidy per visitor	≤ \$11.98	\$12.15	
Full cost per visitor including WCC costs	(Quarterly) \$20.06	\$20.17	This is to be provided by WCC officers
<b>VALUED AND MOTIVATED STAFF</b>			
Staff turnover (not including casual and fixed term roles)	< 15%	14.95%	
<b>INTEGRATE CONSERVATION AND SUSTAINABILITY</b>			
Collection in managed programmes (% of total Collection)	41%	38.89%	Set by ZAA
In the wild conservation projects supported	≥ 4	9	Free the Bears, 21 <sup>st</sup> Century Tiger, Proyecto Titi (Cotton Top Tamarins), AMLD (Golden Lion Tamarins), Kea Conservation Trust, Madagascar Fauna and Flora Group, Places for Penguins, Cheetah Outreach, TRAFFIC South East Asia
<b>LASTING COMMUNITY SUPPORT AND PARTICIPATION</b>			
Measure visitor feedback and satisfaction	1 research project	1	Visitor experience customer survey complete. Ongoing visitor satisfaction research conducted through WCC Research team underway
Volunteer hours (9600 hours = 5 FTE)	> 5FTE	9,439	

Appendix 2 – Financial Statements

<b>CCO: Wellington Zoo Trust</b>		<b>\$NZ000's</b>	
<b>Quarter Three 2014/15</b>			
<b>Actual</b>	<b>EARNINGS STATEMENT</b>	<b>Actual</b>	<b>Budget</b>
<b>30-Jun-14</b>		<b>31-Mar-15</b>	<b>31-Mar-15</b>
	<b>Revenue</b>		
2750	Trading Income	2309	2262
2715	WCC Grants	2068	2068
82	Other Grants	62	62
191	Sponsorships and Donations-Operational	119	177
107	Sponsorships and Donations-Capital	1054	0
84	Investment Income	76	22
79	Other Income	95	67
<b>6,008</b>	<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>5,783</b>	<b>4,658</b>
	<b>Expenditure</b>		
3,843	Employee Costs	3,018	2993
1,831	Other Operating Expenses	1,422	1517
21	Depreciation	16	15
	Interest		
241	Vested Assets		
<b>5,936</b>	<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>4,456</b>	<b>4,525</b>
<b>72</b>	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit) before Taxation</b>	<b>1,327</b>	<b>133</b>
0	Taxation Expense		
<b>10</b>	<b>Operating Surplus (Deficit)</b>	<b>273</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>72</b>	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	<b>1,327</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>0.2%</b>	<b>Operating Margin</b>	<b>4.7%</b>	<b>2.9%</b>

Actual 30-Jun-14	STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION	Actual 31-Mar-15	Budget 31-Mar-15
	<b>Shareholder/Trust Funds</b>		
0	Share Capital/Settled Funds	0	0
0	Revaluation Reserves	0	0
583	Restricted Funds	583	436
306	Retained Earnings	1,633	440
889	<b>Total Shareholder/Trust Funds</b>	2,216	876
	<b>Current Assets</b>		
1,937	Cash and Bank	4,346	2,237
461	Accounts Receivable	33	60
60	Other Current Assets	38	60
2,458	<b>Total Current Assets</b>	4,417	2,357
	<b>Investments</b>		
0	Deposits on Call	0	0
0	Other Investments	0	0
0	<b>Total Investments</b>	0	0
	<b>Non-Current Assets</b>		
69	Fixed Assets	427	44
0	Other Non-current Assets	0	0
69	<b>Total Non-current Assets</b>	427	44
2,527	<b>Total Assets</b>	4,844	2,401
	<b>Current Liabilities</b>		
830	Accounts Payable and Accruals	658	390
	Provisions		0
796	Other Current Liabilities	1,958	1,123
1,626	<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	2,616	1,513
	<b>Non-Current Liabilities</b>		
0	Loans - WCC	0	0
0	Loans - Other	0	0
12	Other Non-Current Liabilities	12	12
12	<b>Total Non-Current Liabilities</b>	12	12
889	<b>Net Assets</b>	2,216	876
1.5	<b>Current Ratio</b>	1.7	1.6
35.2%	<b>Equity Ratio</b>	45.7%	36.5%

Actual 30-Jun-14	STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS	Actual Mar-15	Budget Mar-15
	<b>Cash provided from:</b>		
2750	Trading Receipts	2,309	2,262
2715	WCC Grants	2067	2,757
82	Other Grants	62	62
298	Sponsorships and Donations	1173	177
84	Investment Income	72	22
349	Other Income	4,496	67
6278		10,179	5,347
	<b>Cash applied to:</b>		
3,843	Payments to Employees	2,668	2,993
2,090	Payments to Suppliers	5,102	1,517
	Net GST Cashflow		
241	Other Operating Costs (VESTING)		
	Interest Paid	0	0
6174		7,770	4,510
104	<b>Total Operating Cash Flow</b>	2,409	837
	<b>Investing Cash Flow</b>		
	<b>Cash provided from:</b>		
2	Sale of Fixed Assets		
	Other		
2		0	0
	<b>Cash applied to:</b>		
	Purchase of Fixed Assets		
	Other -vesting Cash for Capital Projects	0	0
0		0	0
2	<b>Total Investing Cash Flow</b>	0	0

Actual 30-Jun-14	STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS (CONT)	Actual 31-Mar-15	Budget 31-Mar-15
	<b>Financing Cash Flow</b>		
	<i>Cash provided from:</i>		
	Drawdown of Loans		
	Other		
0		0	0
	<i>Cash applied to:</i>		
	Repayment of Loans		
	Other		
0		0	0
0	<b>Total Financing Cash Flow</b>	0	0
106	<b>Net Increase/(Decrease) in Cash Held</b>	2,409	837
1,831	<b>Opening Cash Equivalents</b>	1,937	1,400
1,937	<b>Closing Cash Equivalents</b>	4,346	2,237

Actual 30-Jun-14	CASH FLOW RECONCILIATION	Actual 31-Mar-15	Budget 31-Mar-15
72	<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit) for the Year</b>	1,327	133
	<i>Add Non Cash Items</i>		
21	Depreciation	16	15
	Other (Gifted Hospital Assets)		
93		1,343	148
	<b>Movements in Working Capital</b>		
23	(Increase)/Decrease in Receivables	428	0
70	(Increase)/Decrease in Other Current Assets	22	0
(280)	Increase/(Decrease) in Accounts Payable	(172)	0
198	Increase/(Decrease) in Other Current Liabilities	1,162	689
11		1,440	689
	<b>Net Gain/(Loss) on Sale:</b>		
0	Fixed Assets	(374)	0
	Investments	0	0
0		(374)	0
104	<b>Net Cash Flow from Operations</b>	2,409	837

KARORI SANCTUARY TRUST

Q3 REVIEW TO 31 MARCH 2015

QUARTER IN REVIEW	QUARTER IN REVIEW cont.
<p>Total visitation in Q3 was 30,861 and exceeded the Q3 target by 11%. The total visitation is 675 behind its YTD target due to a poor first quarter. The Trust remains confident of achieving the total annual visitor target of 91,400 by 30 June 2015 and is on track to achieve this.</p> <p>A year round visitor programme of activities and events has been developed and implemented and appears to be having a positive impact on visitation.</p> <p>Growing the membership base remains a strong focus for the Trust and 971 new members were signed and 1,634 existing members renewed during the quarter. While this didn't meet the Trust's targets for the quarter the year-end target of 10,000 members is still within reach.</p> <p>The volunteer database (&gt;550 volunteers) is currently under review. 300 volunteers have been confirmed as active and a further 250+ volunteers still require confirmation. Expect the total number of active volunteers is currently over 400.</p>	<p>Efforts toward fund raising, sponsorship and business partnerships are increasing and expected to produce good results in the months ahead. The Trust is on target to meeting this new KPI by year end.</p> <p>A communications and marketing strategy review is underway to set strategies and optimise the messaging and exposure opportunities for the 2015/16 season ahead.</p> <p>The cool Spring and the drought in January had a negative impact on breeding success for Kaka and Hihi.</p> <p>Over 500 bait stations were replaced during the quarter with better and more effective novacoil stations.</p> <p>The 500<sup>th</sup> Kakariki was banded in the sanctuary during March.</p> <p>Draft report on the feasibility of eradicating perch and brown trout from lower lake and streams/wetland to be finalised following input from Dept. Conservation. Will need an operational plan and to be costed before any further action (including consultation) taken.</p> <p>Weed eradication and maintenance continued with priority species subjected to grid searches in the valley.</p>

SUMMARY FINANCIALS							
* Variance (Actual minus Budget). ☺ Favourable variance to budget ☹ Unfavourable variance to budget							
FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE	Q3 Budget	Q3 Actual	Variance	YTD Budget	YTD Actual	Variance	FY Budget
(\$000)	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	30 Jun 15
Total Revenue	1,091	1,010	81 ☹	2,760	2,577	183 ☹	3,485
Op. Exp. before Depreciation	851	838	14 ☺	2,504	2,435	70 ☺	3,321
Surplus (Loss) before Depn.	240	173	67 ☹	255	142	114 ☹	164
Surplus (Loss) after Depn.	(117)	(121)	4 ☹	(815)	(750)	65 ☺	(1,263)
FINANCIAL POSITION							
Total Assets	16,118	15,111	1,007 ☹	16,356	15,050	1,306 ☹	15,669
Total Liabilities	11,320	11,604	285 ☹	11,440	11,442	2 ☹	11,318
Equity	4,799	3,507	1,292 ☹	4,916	3,608	1,308 ☹	4,350
CASH FLOWS							
Total Net Cash Flows	147	344	197 ☺	130	408	278 ☺	15
Opening Cash	726	549		726	485		742
Closing Cash	872	893		872	893		757
<p>Revenue of \$1.0m for the quarter was close to budget but is trailing the YTD target of \$2.76m by \$183k. The café and functions business performed well during Q3 recording a net profit of \$47k. Admissions were 8% ahead of the same period last year and admissions revenue was \$318k for the quarter – up from \$246k in Q2 (to 31 Dec). Operating expenses were contained below budget in the quarter, led by reduced personnel costs, and the YTD surplus before depreciation is \$142k.</p> <p>The YTD variances in the Trust's balance sheet relates to higher depreciation write downs for the visitor centre and exhibition that occurred after forecasts were provided in its 2014/15 SOL.</p> <p>Q3 is one of the stronger cash flow quarters for the Trust which is reflected by net cash flow of \$344k or a \$197k positive variance over budget for the period. YTD this theme is further improved with net cash flow of \$408k exceeding target by \$278k. As a result the Trust's cash on hand at 31 March 2015 was \$893k and is a tangible measure of its improved trading performance.</p>							

CONTACT OFFICER

WARWICK HAYES

KARORI SANCTUARY TRUST

Q3 REVIEW TO 31 MARCH 2015

KPI DASHBOARD						
☑ Achieved ☒ Not Achieved. The 3 Year Trend = year on year actual/nominal performance → Steady ↗ Improving ↘ Declining The table contains a selection of KPIs and is not a complete list.						
MEASURE		Q3		YTD	3 Year Trend	Comments on trend
		31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15	31 Mar 15		
Visitors	Actual	30,861 ☑	71,806 ☒		↗	The visitation trend is improving and the Trust's Q3 visitation exceeded target by 11%. YTD visitation is almost on target following a poor first quarter.
	Target	27,788	72,461			
Students & education visits	Actual	991 ☒	4,804 ☒		↗	Despite the poor YTD performance (discussed below), the overall trend for education related visits to the sanctuary is positive.
	Target	1,442	6,841			
Full costs to Council*	Actual	\$365k ☑	\$1,099k ☑		n/a*	This measure is owned by Council and includes costs which the Trust does not control (e.g. interest cost on its Council loan) plus grant funding.
	Target	\$378k	\$1,133k			
Full costs (\$/visit)*	Actual	\$11.82 ☑	\$15.31 ☑		n/a*	See comment above.
	Target	\$13.59	\$15.63			
Annual measures to 30 Jun 15						
The Trust reports quarterly.						
Council subsidy (\$/visit)	Actual	\$9.15 ☑			↗	This is an annual target and the Trust is tracking well to meet the KPI on 30 June. The 3 year trend is improving based on growing visitation.
	Target	\$9.57	n/a			
Average revenue** (\$/visit)	Actual	\$26.81 ☒			↗	The 3 year trend has seen steadily increasing revenue per visitor.
	Target	\$27.46	n/a			
Non-Council funding	Actual	\$42k	\$133k		n/a*	This is a new KPI for the Trust. Full year target is \$150k and YTD the Trust has raised \$133k.
	Target	n/a	\$150k			
Individual members	Actual	9,312			n/a*	This is a new KPI for the Trust.
	Target	10,000	n/a			

\* This is a new KPI for the Trust. This measure is owned by Council and includes costs which the Trust does not control (e.g. interest cost on its Council loan) plus grant funding. \*\* Revenue per visit excludes interest, Council and government grants.

Visitation and related metrics (i.e. those denominated by visitor numbers) in Q1 were weaker than SOI forecasts. The results in Q2 saw an improvement with total visitors exceeding target for the quarter and Q3 continued this theme of improvement against budget. The results in Q2 and Q3 have almost reversed the poor start in Q1 such that the Trust is now only 675 visitors behind the YTD target and is well placed to achieve its full year visitation target.

In relation to students and education visits, as a result of ANZAC commemorations the Trust has seen smaller more specialised groups visiting compared to larger school trips. However, the Trust has welcomed 3,123 Learning Experiences Outside The Classroom (LEOTC) school visitors and is tracking well against its LEOTC target of 4,660 for the year.

The Trust reports Council's full costs figures (which are supplied by council) on a quarterly basis. This is a new KPI so trend data is not available.

ISSUES & OUTLOOK	
The Trust has not achieve its education related visitation targets in any of the 3 quarters this year and despite its earlier confidence of meeting the year-end target for education related visitor numbers, this now looks to be unachievable. Earlier in the year, the Trust maintained its confidence that this target could be achieved but it has transpired that many school education programmes have been dominated by ANZAC commemorations and related study and tours which has impacted Zealandia. As a result, the Trust has seen smaller more specialised groups (sleepover, water studies) visiting compared to larger school trips. Notwithstanding, schools and education related visitation will remain an important measure of the Trust's performance and it will continue to cultivate and grow this activity. Any future alignment with VUW will compliment the educational component of the sanctuary's offering.	

CONTACT OFFICER

WARWICK HAYES

Item 4.1 Attachment 2



## Report to the Wellington City Council CCO Performance Committee 3<sup>rd</sup> Quarter ended 31<sup>st</sup> March 2015

### KEY HIGHLIGHTS

- Admissions – exceeded visitor target (+11%), 8% ahead for the same period the previous year.
- Memberships – exceeding target new members (5%) and renewals (15%)
- Café & Functions – increased net profit ratio by 24% from Q1 (-\$10,058) to Q3 (\$47,015).
- Trade & Tourism – delivered record Zealandia by Night tours. (+16% pax vs same period previous year.)
- Communications & Marketing – delivered record exposure and reach across a comprehensive programme of press, TV, online and advertising channels. Launched city wide 20th Anniversary campaign.
- Working capital is \$276k, continuing its upward trend.
- March saw the banding of the 500th Kakariki in the sanctuary!

Quarter 3 ended with improved results, as would be expected for the summer period. Year on year comparisons are generally showing continued upward trends and better engagement with key stakeholders including our visitors, members, volunteers, government, business and schools.

Member visits exceeded the month on month target, ending +94% (3,163) by the end of the quarter. This may be attributed to a combination of factors, including the early opening hours, more consistent communications and messaging, the monthly change of themes and seminars, and good weather (only 14% poor days recorded) in this quarter. The membership survey was undertaken in February highlights some key areas for product development and service delivery.

Significant development work and effort has been directed into raising revenue in areas such as fundraising, sponsorship and “friend-raising” (business partnerships/engagement), the results of which should bear fruit in the months ahead.

Key areas, such as café & functions, retail, membership, grants and donations are still working to reduce the deficit from earlier in the year. Strategies have been refined and the ongoing results are subject to the most accurate monitoring and evaluation to date. Currently, donations are ahead of target and our success rate with grants has greatly improved, with a number of unexpended grants sitting on our balance sheet waiting for project activation.

Staffing, operations and the respective processes have settled overall forming a solid basis for consistent development, although the loss of two key positions has put pressure on other areas and certain projects have had to be put on hold.

Numerous strategic projects are underway and a range of ‘fast fail’ initiatives are ongoing to test new opportunities. This represents a further shift forward in pace and development as part of the reformative process management is undertaking to build a more sustainable future for Zealandia.

### VISITATION

\\\\wcc\dfs\accounts\home7\hayes2w\Documents\sa-stuff\YST Q3 WCC Report 2014-15.doc

Page 1

This quarter, we had 27,786 total visits, 11% better than target. We are confident that the full year target of 91,400 will be achieved.

Paid General Admission visits (16,002) exceeded target for the quarter by 12%. ZEALANDIA by Night Tour visits (1,325) visits were 7% down and Member Visits (6,516) exceeded target by 94%.

Key areas which contributed to visitation include themed activities in the valley; longer opening hours; an additional shuttle service on busy cruise ship days. Whilst specific event or celebration days have some merit, we need to consider and focus on those of best alignment, historic successes and future potential. The programming of these events are to be reviewed and evaluated to ensure adequate planning, resourcing and promotion is optimized in the new financial year.

Evaluation of the extended summer hours will set out what did and didn't work. While the option was generally well received, refinement is required prior to 15/16 summer season.

Paid admissions revenue for the quarter ended \$2,877 above target (+1.6%). ZBN and donations, however, reduced the overall admissions total of -10.2% (-\$36,113) below target. The target for ZBN, which may be considered as erroneous, was set \$23K above the highest quarter on record. On review Q3 2015 ended just \$5k behind the same record quarter in 2014.

**Member visits:** Member visits exceeded the month on month target, ending +94% (3163) by the end of the quarter. This may be attributed to a combination of factors, which include the early opening hours, more consistent communications and messaging, plus an ongoing shift in organisational development. The membership survey highlights some key areas for development in section 3 Strategic Projects (page **Error! Bookmark not defined.**).

**ZEALANDIA by Night (ZBN):** Additional night tours were added at the availability of guides throughout the past quarter. The additional 19 tours grossed approximately \$12,000. Optimal capacity was still limited by the late 2014 intake of volunteers and guides, but this is being addressed with significantly earlier recruitment and a defined training structure.

The experience, value and profitability of ZBN are under review in consultation with conservation and the guides. It is expected that there will be at least a two tours on offer per night for Spring/Summer 15/16.

**Custom Tours:** Custom tour pax were impacted in both January and March by late cancellations and an inability for one major vessel to dock. This equated to 149 visitors and a projected \$5,517 in March alone; the increase in business (+10% pax) during February helped to minimise this impact.

#### Education Visits

The Education Team welcomed 991 students to its programmes during the quarter, 13% below target.

School terms one and two for 2015 (Quarter 3 and 4) see nearly all schools focussing on ANZAC Anniversary Commemorations over natural world enquiry topics. As day trips make up the bulk of our visits this has seen a decrease in our overall numbers. We have seen smaller more specialised groups (sleepover, water studies) visiting compared to large school trips.

The Education Team continue to help external organisations like WCC and DOC in delivering their conservation education programmes. The Outreach Programme has been extended to Victoria University where the Education Team have helped set up tracking and trapping on the Kelburn Campus. The Project will be used as an example for schools and other community groups on how to monitor trapping in an urban environment.

## MEMBERSHIPS

YTD Membership Revenue (\$216k) is down 14% against budget. Total member numbers as at 31<sup>st</sup> March 2015, totalled 9,312, 7% below our annual target of 10,000. For the quarter, we had 971 new members and 1,634 renewed members. While the total number of members is still below target and recovering from the deficit early in the year, visitation, new members and renewals continue to increase. The net gain for Q3 was 168.

The total number of members continues to increase, thus further reducing the losses during Q1 and early Q2. It was challenging to meet the growth from the previous year, but the net gain of 168 members across the quarter offsets the high number of expired memberships and resigned members during the same period. We have seen encouraging growth at the beginning of Q4 to further reduce the overall total membership deficit.

Membership revenue was behind budget (-24%) throughout Q3, but ahead of the same period the previous year (+5%). There are ongoing questions over 2014-15 budget setting, but the change in personnel and reporting structure makes this challenging to identify. The net difference of memberships would typically identify any obvious trends, but this has been positive (+168).

The sales & information team continue to streamline the processes in place and are constantly finding better solutions to improve communication lines and make efficiencies. A number of initiatives which include the addition of an email versus posted 'reminder', 'welcome' emails and up-selling day admission/membership conversion options, have assisted in driving these targets.

## Communications and Marketing

The newly appointed Communications and Marketing Coordinator has made a significant impact since starting at the beginning of Q3. Whilst regular organisational communications and marketing initiatives have resumed, he has delivered a number of key press releases, realised opportunities and compiled quality resources for different areas of the organisation. This has given the organisation much needed exposure and opportunities in the wider domain, which had been missing for some time.

A communications and marketing strategy review is underway. The basis of this will be formed by data collected by the Wellington census, PWT, Statistics NZ, and Tourism NZ in addition to our visitor information to ensure we optimise this opportunity. This will set the strategies for messaging, promotion and communication channels for the 15- 16 seasons ahead.

### Communications highlights

- Successful launch of 20th Anniversary year campaign
- Ongoing running of digital campaigns across Fairfax channels, which far exceeded industry standards
- Good Morning America filmed a segment as part of their "Chasing the Last Dinosaurs" feature. Aired to 8 – 10 million people across USA. Equivalent advertising spend: Minimum NZ\$1.5 million. Conservation angle. Supported by TNZ and Film NZ.
- Refining Speaker's Group presentations and processes to further ZEALANDIA's voice and activity
- Further establishing Sanctuary Storytellers group to assist with design, graphics, writing, photography
- Slash Visit: Huge online activity through Facebook (45,000+ likes) and Twitter. NZ press, national and international interest.
- St Patrick's Day FB post (50k reach – largest on record)

## MEASUREMENT AGAINST TARGETS IN SOI

**Non Financial Performance Measures (Quarterly Targets)**

Measure	2014/15 2 <sup>nd</sup> Quarter (Jan-Mar)		2014/15 Annual	
	Actual	Target	Actual (YTD)	Target
Visitation	30,861	27,786	71,806	91,400
Education Visits (LEOTC, Tertiary, Early Childhood, School Holiday Programme)*	991	1,142	4,804	8,350

\* Education visits are also included in total visitation numbers above.

**Non Financial Performance Measures (Annual Targets)**

Measure	Actual YTD	Annual Target 2014/15
Individual Members	9,312	10,000
Quality of Visit	93%	92%
Volunteers	>400	>400
City Residents' Awareness**	-	86%

\* Our volunteer database is currently under review. We currently have over 550 volunteers on our database and to date, 300 volunteers have been confirmed as active. There are a further 250+ volunteers that still require confirmation and we are also adding newly recruited volunteers. We believe our total number of active volunteers is currently over 400.

\*\* A survey will be completed at the end of the final quarter to assess the level of awareness of city residents.

**Conservation Programme (Annual Targets)**

Measure	Actual YTD	Annual Target 2014/15
Total native plant species in the Sanctuary	182	177
Total adventives (exotic) plant species in the Sanctuary	215*	215
Percentage of Native Flora	46%	46%
Total native fauna species in the Sanctuary	44	45
Number of new native fauna species released (not previously present)	0	2
Total exotic fauna	17**	17
Percentage of Native Fauna	71%	73%

\* Updated progress report will be available in Quarter 3 when the Weed Team have completed their field work.

\*\* Frog was detected in October, temporarily taking this total to 18 before it was eradicated in the same month.

**Financial Performance Measures**

Measure	Actual YTD	Annual
---------	------------	--------

\\wcc\dfs\accounts\home7\hays2w\Documents\es-stuff\YST Q3 WCC Report 2014-15.doc

Page 4

		Target 2014/15
Average subsidy per visit (Total WCC Operating Grant/All Visitors)	\$9.15	\$9.57
Average revenue per visitation (excludes Council & Government grants)	\$26.81	\$27.46
Non-Council Donations/Funding	\$132,568	\$150k

**FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE**

Detailed financials are attached.

## Appendix A: Conservation Update

- There were no known mammalian biosecurity breaches during this time period and index trapping of mice continued as planned.
- **Bait Station replacement** Over 500 ice cream bottles, used as elementary bait stations, have been replaced by nova coil tunnels. The nova coils are superior in that they are easier to secure on the site. They have been proven to have a higher 'bait take' than ice cream containers since rodents prefer to enter a site that has an escape route and not just a single entrance/exit way. The novacoils are also better at keeping out moisture and don't deteriorate as fast as the lighter plastic containers.
- Draft report on **feasibility of eradicating perch and brown trout** from lower lake and streams/wetland received & commented on – recommends using rotenone as in upper lake and tributary streams; to be finalised in April following input from Dept. Conservation; will need an operational plan and to be costed before any further action (including consultation) taken.
- In the last three months the **Weed Team** have continued maintenance and control work on priority species and have proceeded to carry out grid searches along both the East (between XY and QR transects) and West (between U and S transects) of the valley.
  - *Acer pseudoplatanus* – Drilling has resulted in over 100 adult trees controlled.
  - *Ageratina riparia* – The second search for this species was completed with no new plants found.
  - *Asparagus scandens* – An extensive search of all major infestation areas was carried out this year with <30 plants found; much reduced from previous years.
  - *Cobaea scandens* – Second search of all known infestation areas with <10 juvenile plants found; much reduced.
  - *Cyperus eragrostis* – Second search completed <10 adult plants found; much reduced.
  - *Dipogon lignosus* – Second search was completed with no new plants found.
  - *Embothrium coccineum* – Root sprout controlled; will require check to determine effectiveness.
  - *Escallonia rubra* – A 7x7M infestation was found and controlled.
  - *Lonicera japonica* – Second search and spray completed; much reduced in most major areas.
  - *Selaginella kraussiana* – Second spray completed; infestations increasing.

### **A long cool spring followed by a drought in January had an effect on the breeding of monitored indigenous species:**

- **Kaka** – the outcome of the kaka breeding season was affected by a long cool spring which retarded the start of nesting and resulted in females attempting only one nest for the season – by the end of the season 57 fledglings had been produced by 18 pairs. An additional 5 females were monitored but failed to succeed in producing fledglings. Data was collected by Zealandia volunteer monitors from a total of 33 nesting attempts. Less than half of all eggs laid resulted in fledgling success. Unhatched eggs, hatched eggshells, and dead chicks were systematically collected and stored for Aditi Sriram's investigation of lead transmission pathways.
  - Aditi Sriram has completed the first year of sampling nestlings with most proving to have low lead levels and none showing any signs of lead poisoning from physiological and neurological examination. She plans to catch as many adults as possible over the next few months and undertake analysis of egg shells (to correlate with blood lead concentration in the nestlings). She also hopes to undertake analysis of lead isotope ratios in the kaka and correlate them with possible sources such as lead-headed nails, paint etc. The research will be helped by a grant of 2.5 K from the Margaret & Jim Collins Research Fund in March.
- **Hihi** were also affected by the cool spring. The breeding season got underway in early October but the majority of the first clutch attempts failed which coincided with a disruption in the availability of natural resources. This was reflected in a huge upsurge in sugar-water consumption at feederstations and a halt in all other nest building activity. A total of at least 29 females were recorded during the season (the largest number of breeding females since re-introduction) – with one of these birds nesting in an undiscovered site away from the nestboxes.

Item 4.1 Attachment 2

- Due to early season failures breeding success indicators such as % eggs fledged (36%) and number of fledglings/female (2.7) were very low in comparison with past seasons.
- Eggs and tissues samples from unhatched chicks were systematically collected and stored for analysis by scientists and students associated with John Ewen's Oxford University based research team.
- In March we banded the 500<sup>th</sup> Kakariki in the sanctuary (This does not include the 107 banded on Kapiti following capture and subsequent release in Zealandia in 2010-11). This season has been successful with a continuing increase in the population. As with other monitored species this season's productivity of Kakariki has been lower than the previous season but the greater number of breeding females (37 compared with 26 last season) has meant we have banded more nestlings than previous years.
  - Comparison of nesting sites (Pipes, wooden boxes, Mamaku logs, and natural sites) continues. There are various advantages and disadvantages with each type. This season the Pipes have been the more successful of the nests monitored.
  - A study is being carried out by a student to determine dispersal patterns of Kakariki leaving the sanctuary. By the end of the March 7 of 8 transmitters had been attached to birds. Attempts to track these birds outside the sanctuary are underway. To date two birds have been located in the Karori area.
- The Takahe had a phantom nest, with incubation occurring despite there being no egg! This is not unusual in older birds. They were checked by Phil Marsh from Department of Conservation in March who had been checking takahe at all sites in the lower North Island and they were deemed to be in "good nick". They had their transmitters removed as these have proved to be detrimental in other sites although our takahe didn't show any problems. Smaller transmitters and a different harness configuration are being trialled elsewhere and will be attached to T2 and Puffin when this trial has been satisfactorily completed.
- A lone adult Dabchick that appeared in mid November on the Upper Lake is still present
- Submission to WCC Draft Biodiversity Strategy completed

## RESEARCH

Research being undertaken in the valley currently includes:

### Major Research Projects

Researcher	Institution	Topic/Actions
Angela Moles	University New South Wales	Effect of climate change on herbivory (ongoing).
John Ewen, Patricia Brekke & Trust staff	Institute of Zoology, London & ZEALANDIA	Inbreeding, genetic drift and genetic management in Hihi.
Rachel Shaw	Victoria University	Fitness levels and heritability of cognitive abilities in robins (KST interest in density and productivity changes in 10 years) – banding, monitoring breeding success and experiments on adults and their offspring.

### PHD Research Projects

Researcher	Institution	Topic/Actions
Julia Loepelt	Victoria University	Cognition and foraging in Kākā.
Kirsty Yule	Victoria University	Differences in Puriri moth parasitism and Kākā predation rates between host species in a tri-trophic system.
Stephanie Price	Victoria University	Population viability of Tuatara.
Olivia Vergara Parra	Victoria University	Influence of introduced mammals on invertebrate communities – tracking tunnels and traps inside and outside the sanctuary.

### MSC/MA Research Projects

Researcher	Institution	Topic/Actions
Katie Sheridan	CUNY Queens College, USA	Distribution and habitat use of Pāteke.
Nikki Speight	Otago University	Robin breeding success - are there any significant changes from previous seasons to suggest a genetic issue.
Aditi Sriram	Massey University	Lead poisoning in re-introduced populations of kaka.
Marie Courteville	Massey University/ Universite de Liege, France	Dispersal of NI Robins

### Other (significant)

Researcher	Institution	Topic/Actions
Ellen Irwin	Victoria University, WCC & ZEALANDIA	Dispersal of kakariki after fledgling.

## Profit & Loss

### Karori Sanctuary Trust For the 3 months ended 31 March 2015

	Mar-15	Dec-14	Sep-14	YTD
<b>Income</b>				
Admissions	318,521	246,724	94,387	659,632
Gain or Loss on Sale of Fixed Assets	1,200	-	-	1,200
Interest Income	4,804	6,659	3,701	15,165
Membership Subscriptions	73,961	88,367	53,329	215,657
Other Grants & Donations	64,116	25,099	28,189	117,404
Other Operating Revenue	34,578	37,803	42,361	114,742
Sales of Goods	294,562	338,604	163,444	796,610
WCC Grant	218,750	218,750	218,750	656,250
<b>Total Income</b>	<b>1,010,493</b>	<b>962,005</b>	<b>604,161</b>	<b>2,576,659</b>
<b>Gross Profit</b>	<b>1,010,493</b>	<b>962,005</b>	<b>604,161</b>	<b>2,576,659</b>
<b>Less Operating Expenses</b>				
Administration & Management	114,142	107,457	118,658	340,257
Cost of Goods Sold	124,629	135,729	60,193	320,551
Other Operating Expenses	72,504	61,177	34,679	168,361
Personnel	471,143	560,980	457,296	1,489,419
Salaries & Wages - Guides	6,414	-	-	6,414
Salaries & Wages - Tourism & Trade	8,309	-	-	8,309
Salaries & Wages - Visitor Experience	10,108	-	-	10,108
<b>Interest Paid</b>				
Interest Expense	10,919	11,420	10,194	32,533
<b>Total Interest Paid</b>	<b>10,919</b>	<b>11,420</b>	<b>10,194</b>	<b>32,533</b>
<b>Trustees Remuneration</b>				
Board Expenses	19,723	19,719	19,634	59,075
<b>Total Trustees Remuneration</b>	<b>19,723</b>	<b>19,719</b>	<b>19,634</b>	<b>59,075</b>
<b>Total Operating Expenses</b>	<b>837,891</b>	<b>896,482</b>	<b>700,654</b>	<b>2,435,027</b>
<b>Operating Profit</b>	<b>172,601</b>	<b>65,523</b>	<b>(96,493)</b>	<b>141,631</b>
<b>Non-operating Expenses</b>				
Depreciation Expense	293,454	297,632	300,631	891,717
<b>Total Non-operating Expenses</b>	<b>293,454</b>	<b>297,632</b>	<b>300,631</b>	<b>891,717</b>
<b>Net Profit</b>	<b>(120,853)</b>	<b>(232,108)</b>	<b>(397,125)</b>	<b>(750,086)</b>

## Balance Sheet

### Karori Sanctuary Trust As at 31 March 2015

31 Mar 2015

#### Assets

Current Assets	
Accounts Receivable	71,754
Cash	892,870
Preconversion Receivables	2,288
Stock on Hand	67,215
<b>Total Current Assets</b>	<b>1,034,127</b>
Fixed Assets	
Fixed Assets	14,076,825
<b>Total Fixed Assets</b>	<b>14,076,825</b>
<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>15,110,952</b>

#### Liabilities

Current Liabilities	
Accounts Payable	75,370
Accrued Liability	221,291
Community Trust Loan - Current	33,333
Entertainment Books	60
GST	25,390
Payroll Taxes	106,259
Project / Capex Fund	87,604
Stock - Obsolete Provision	10,000
Suspense	6,094
Unearned Income	192,050
<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	<b>757,451</b>
Non-Current Liabilities	
Community Trust Loan	500,000
WCC Loan	10,346,689
<b>Total Non-Current Liabilities</b>	<b>10,846,689</b>
<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>11,604,140</b>
<b>Net Assets</b>	<b>3,506,812</b>
Equity	
Current Year Earnings	(750,086)
Retained Earnings	4,256,898
<b>Total Equity</b>	<b>3,506,812</b>

**Karori Sanctuary Trust: Statement of Intent Measures 2014/15**

Targets for 2014/15

  SOI Measures        Internal Measures/KPIs

MEASURE against Strategy Areas	TARGET 2014/15	TRACKING YTD MARCH	NOTES
<b>OUTSTANDING, INTIMATE &amp; UNIQUE VISITOR EXPERIENCES</b>			
Total Visitation	91,400	71,752	☹️
Total Education and Youth Visitation	8,350	4,804	☹️ See CEO report for explanation.
LEOTC School Visitation	4,660	3123	☹️
			The team needs 1537 visits to meet the year target. They have 720 visits confirmed for quarter 4. This does not include tentative bookings and does not include Hutt Mana low decile bus children (250)
ZEALANDIA has a diverse annual programme of activities and events	Year round visitor programme developed and implemented	Quarterly figures indicate this programme is having an impact on visitation as all targets have been exceeded: admissions ↑ 11%; new members ↑ 5%; renewals ↑ 15%.	☹️ As this form of annual programming has only been in operation for this quarter we have no comparisons. But anecdotally, feedback is positive. Future surveying will provide hard data.
	Strategy developed and implemented to increase commercial activity/events	Cafe & Functions increased their net profit ratio by 24% lifting the area out of deficit into profit.	☹️ The performance by the café has been enhanced by the increased activity around events generated from the annual programme. They are now implementing their own programme. In May this includes Mother's Day and a Pink Ribbon Breakfast.
Increased visitor numbers are managed	Sanctuary Blueprint project defines	Project funders are now	☹️ The Valley Blueprint will be phased in as

Version 4

	activity areas within the sanctuary and a strategy for future development put in place	secured; including Rotary (Bush Classroom) and Karori Lions (supporting the first information kiosk).	and when funding becomes available. Signage project is to commence late June.
<b>OPTIMAL PERFORMANCE</b>			
ZEALANDIA optimises performance and improves tools of trade	Accommodation for administration staff is improved	First phase successful and on target.	😊 House warming party to be organised.
	Record management structure implemented across the organisation	Project completed.	😊 Feedback from staff continues to be positive.
	IT capability across all areas of the organisation are improved	IT upgrade continues.	😊 This project is now managed by Sanctuary Care and Preservation Manager.
<b>FINANCIAL SUSTAINABILITY</b>			
Average WCC subsidy per visitor	\$9.57	\$9.15	😊 Target exceeded.
Average revenue per visitor (excluding WCC grant)	\$27.46	\$26.81	😊 Target exceeded.
Non-Council Donations & Funding	\$150,000	\$132,568	😊 On track.
Financial performance (SOI Budget)	\$164,000	\$141,631	😞 The reforecast shows an end of year surplus of \$30k. Management is looking at ways we can improve this result.
<b>VALUED AND MOTIVATED STAFF &amp; VOLUNTEERS</b>			
ZEALANDIA attracts and retains talent	Refined ethos and improved organisational culture	2015 HR survey will be conducted in May and will provide hard data.	😊 Deferred due to Corporate Services Manager vacancy.
	Training and development programmes in place for all staff and volunteers	Training opportunities offered to staff and volunteers in this quarter. Currently working on winter professional development programme.	😊 Crucial Conversations; Nature Connections; Mentors for certain positions.
	Success of staff and volunteers is	On track.	😊

Item 4.1 Attachment 2

	regularly acknowledged		
	Human resource policy and procedures clearly defined	On hold.	☹️ On hold due to resourcing.
	All business areas are appropriately resourced	Ongoing.	☹️ Corporate Services will temporarily be under resourced until a Corporate Services Manager is appointed. Workload is being distributed to other staff in the interim.
<b>CONSERVATION PROGRAMME</b>			
Total native plant species in the sanctuary	177	182	☺️
Total adventives (exotic) plant species	215	215	☺️
Percentage of native flora	46%	46%	☺️
Total native fauna species in the sanctuary (all vertebrates and mega invertebrates)	45	44	☺️
Number of new native fauna species released (not previously present)	2	0	☺️
Total exotic fauna	17	17	☺️
% Fauna Native	73%	71%	☺️
<b>LASTING COMMUNITY SUPPORT AND PARTICIPATION</b>			
Volunteers	>400	On hold.	☹️ 300 confirmed/active +300 unconfirmed/status not known
Percentage of Satisfied Visitors	92%	93%	☺️ 48% response rate to online survey; 28% above industry standard, demonstrating how well our visitors are engaged.
City Residents' Awareness	87%	Reported Annually	☺️ Supplied by WCC.
ZEALANDIA secured committed non-council funding, enhances stakeholder care and membership services	Philanthropic and donor conversion programme developed and implemented	Completed. Member appeal underway.	☹️ First mailout yielded 53%; actual exceeded budget for the month of March. Currently tracking YTD well above target.

	Membership services are reviewed and enhanced	Completed survey.	😊 Results in this report.
	Strategy developed to encourage members to act as advocates for ZEALANDIA	Speaker's and storyteller groups reconvened.	😊 Positive engagement noted.
	Stakeholder Management Plan developed and implemented	On hold.	😞
<b>WORLD LEADING RESEARCH/PARTNERSHIPS</b>			
ZEALANDIA's national and international reputation as a leading research centre is increased	Proposal is developed with VUW for a centre for conservation research, learning and citizen engagement	No change.	😊 Meeting with Grant Guilford to be scheduled.
	Natural heritage collections are profiled	Nothing to report.	😊 Meeting with Rick Ellis held.

# Performance Report (WCC)



20 April 2015

Quarter Three 2014-2015



**Performance Report (WCC)**

## **Contents**

---

<b>1</b>	<b>How we are meeting our strategic outcomes</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Our water is safe to drink	1
1.2	Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment	1
1.3	We have resilient networks, every day and under strain	1
1.4	Wellington Water Integration	2
<b>2</b>	<b>What we are doing to improve our performance</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1	Our water is safe to drink	3
2.2	Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment	3
2.3	We have resilient networks, every day and under strain	3
<b>3</b>	<b>Regional Performance</b>	<b>4</b>
3.1	Our water is safe to drink	4
3.2	Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment	5
3.3	We have resilient networks, every day and under strain	9
<b>4</b>	<b>Regional Financial and Project Summary</b>	<b>12</b>
4.1	Operating Budgets	12
4.2	Capital Works Budgets	12
4.3	Project Status Summary	14
<b>5</b>	<b>Council Specific Performance Results</b>	<b>15</b>
5.1	Water Supply Indicators	15
5.2	Wastewater Network Indicators	18
5.3	Stormwater Network Indicators	20
<b>6</b>	<b>Quarterly Meeting Action Log</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>Document Quality Control</b>	<b>24</b>

## 1 How we are meeting our strategic outcomes

---

### 1.1 Our water is safe to drink

- We are successfully providing water that meets the drinking water standards required by each client council

### 1.2 Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment

- We are maintaining the networks in a way that responds to the needs of the community while minimising the impact of such on the environment.
- Wellington Water provided a submission on Greater Wellington's draft Natural Resources Plan. Key points raised were;
  - To recognise that most of the metropolitan wastewater discharges are to the coast and that there is no need to revisit land disposal options.
  - Stormwater networks should have 35 year consents, renewable when respective Whaitua establish water quality limits.
- The Porirua Whaitua has started, with Wellington Water invited to participate on the project team. Wellington Water has appointed a Principal Advisor, Whaitua Relationships.

#### Wastewater

- We are fully compliant with all wastewater resource consents.

#### Stormwater

- We are fully compliant with all stormwater discharge consents.

### 1.3 We have resilient networks, every day and under strain

- City Care is meeting the required response times to respond to urgent calls for all three waters.
- Blockages in the wastewater and stormwater systems are below the maximum levels.
- Water main bursts per 1000 connections are below the indicated maximum level.
- A ban on the use of garden sprinklers and irrigation systems, came into force from Saturday, 7 March 2015 in Porirua, Hutt, Wellington, and Upper Hutt was lifted from Tuesday, 7 April 2015.
- Regional Service Delivery Strategy work programmes are progressing under the four "Regional Initiatives"; a regional asset management plan, resilience,

**Performance Report (WCC)**

community education and catchment management. These represent key priorities in our work ahead.

**1.4 Wellington Water Integration**

- Wellington Water's new structure went "live" on 2 March 2015 and transition work is ongoing.
- The majority of key roles have been recruited for. All Group Managers are now on board along with the Manager, People and Capability.
- There has been a mini reorganisation in the Contract and Customer Management team of the Network and Customer Operations Group. This change was effective from 30 March 2015.
- In March Wellington Water made a successful move to the IBM building in Victoria Street, Petone. We now occupy floors four and six.

## 2 What we are doing to improve our performance

---

### 2.1 Our water is safe to drink

- We have no issues in the water quality area.

### 2.2 Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment

- WCC have expressed dissatisfaction with the quality and outcomes of a health and safety investigation that was undertaken after a serious accident on a construction site managed by WWL. WCC have requested that WWL undertake to close out the investigation in a more thorough manner and close out outstanding H+S items. We are in the process of completing this.

#### Water Quality

- The water quality is measured at selected freshwater (stream) sites. The water quality is affected by multiple factors including wastewater entering the stormwater systems, sediment and other pollutants being washed into the stormwater system. The current results show that we not meeting the targets set in the LTP for neither of these measurements.
- Freshwater water quality in certain catchments is poor. This is attributed to faults present in the public and private wastewater network. Investigations are on-going in catchments (Cummings Park, Houghton Bay, Johnsonville at Gorge, Newlands @ Gorge and Karori Stream) which have been identified as having poor water quality. These investigations have identified some faults which have been remedied. Further investigations will continue.

### 2.3 We have resilient networks, every day and under strain

- In mid-May there was a heavy rain event. Properties in Johnsonville were flooded, investigations are under to determine what remedial action is required.

### 3 Regional Performance

The following indicators incorporate a combination of existing indicators, new regional indicators and new indicators from the Department of Internal Affairs that become mandatory in 2015/16. We are working towards the measurement of the new indicators; in some cases the information is not yet available. We are also working on the presentation of these results.

There are annual indicators that will not be reported until the fourth quarter report. If there are any incidents or results that indicate that we will not meet the required standards will be reported in section one.

The results below are at a regional level; specific council results are included as section five. Note: Response time figures for PCC will be included from the 2015/16 year.

#### 3.1 Our water is safe to drink

##### 3.1.1 Drinking Water Compliance

Compliance with part four of the Drinking Water Standards

Current **100.0%** Target **100.0%**   
**ACHIEVED**

Maintenance of water supply quality gradings from Ministry of Health

 **ACHIEVED** Council Gradings  B  A  
 A  A-B

##### 3.1.2 Complaints

	Total number of complaints – YTD 2014/15	Number of complaints / 1000 connections – YTD 2014/15	Target
Clarity			
Taste			
Odour	<b>Under Development</b>		
Continuity of Supply			
Responsiveness to drinking water complaints			

Performance Report (WCC)

3.2 Our Stormwater and Wastewater networks are respectful of people and the environment

3.2.1 Wastewater Overflows

DISCHARGE EVENTS\* FROM TREATMENT PLANTS

Total discharge each quarter by site. Discharges can be partly treated or untreated effluent.



OVERFLOWS FROM THE NETWORK - YTD

Any discharge not from a plant. These can be controlled (constructed overflow) or uncontrolled (damage within the network)

	Last Year	This Year	Trend	
HCC	N/A	N/A	■	data collection in development
PCC	N/A	N/A	■	data available from April-2015
UHCC	N/A	N/A	■	data collection in development
WCC	22	17	⬇️	

\* an event is counted after 48hrs of dry weather

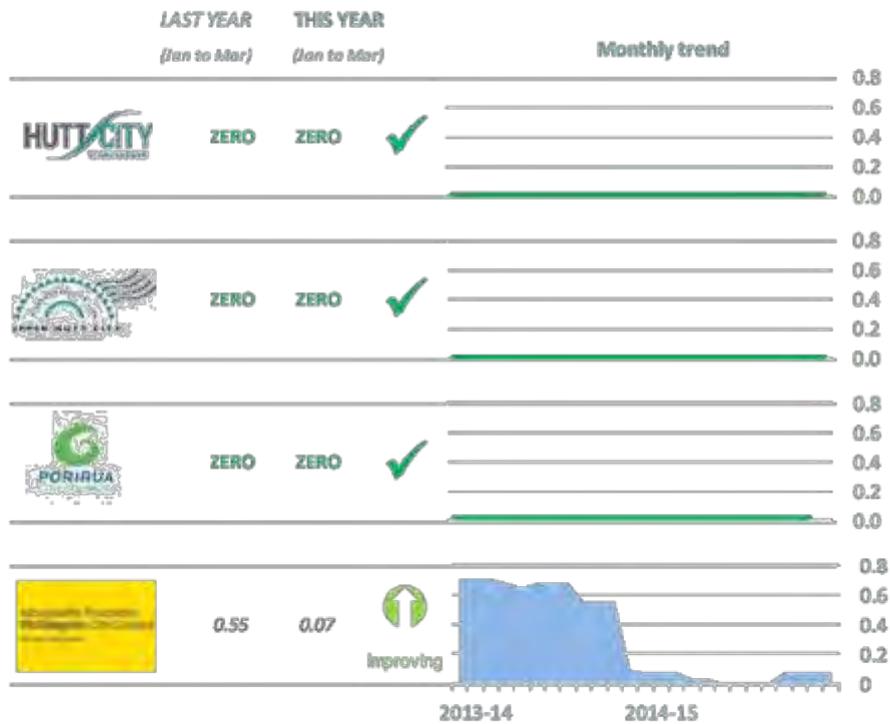
3.2.2 Resource Consent Compliance

	Regional YTD Results 2014/15			
	Water Supply	Wastewater	Stormwater	Target
Number of abatement notices	0	0	0	Nil
Number of Infringement Notices	0	0	0	Nil
Number of enforcement notices	0	0	0	Nil
Number of convictions	0	0	0	Nil

**Performance Report (WCC)**

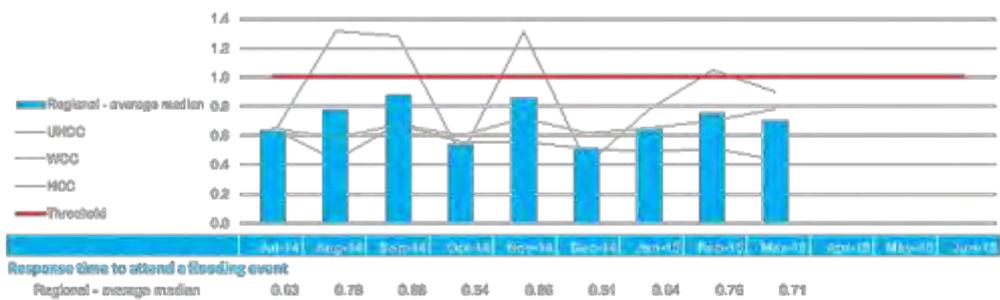
**3.2.3 Flooding indicators**

Cumulative number of floors flooded per 1,000 connections



**3.2.4 Response Time to Attend a Flooding Event**

**STORMWATER**



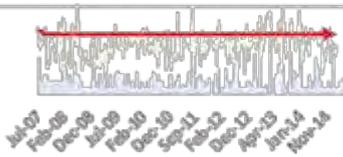
Performance Report (WCC)

3.2.5 Harbour Water Quality

Percentage of days during the bathing season, from 1 November to 31 March that the monitored beaches are suitable for recreational use.

**HARBOUR QUALITY: Beach closures & % of sites compliant**

*Beach closures and wet/dry ecoli trend*

	% of time beaches were closed (YTD)	% of samples over 280 cfu/100mL (rolling 12mths)	Trend (Samples at the 95th percentile)
	0.5% ✓	- N/A	
	0.1%	- N/A	Data due April-15
	0.0% ✓	4.1%  IMPROVING	

**Performance Report (WCC)**

**3.2.6 Freshwater Quality**

Percentage of monitored sites that have a rolling twelve month median value for E.coli (dry weather samples) that do not exceed 1000 cfu/100ml.

**FRESH WATER QUALITY: % of sites compliant**

% of monitored sites that have a rolling twelve month median value for E.coli that do not exceed 1000 cfu/100ml (dry weather samples)

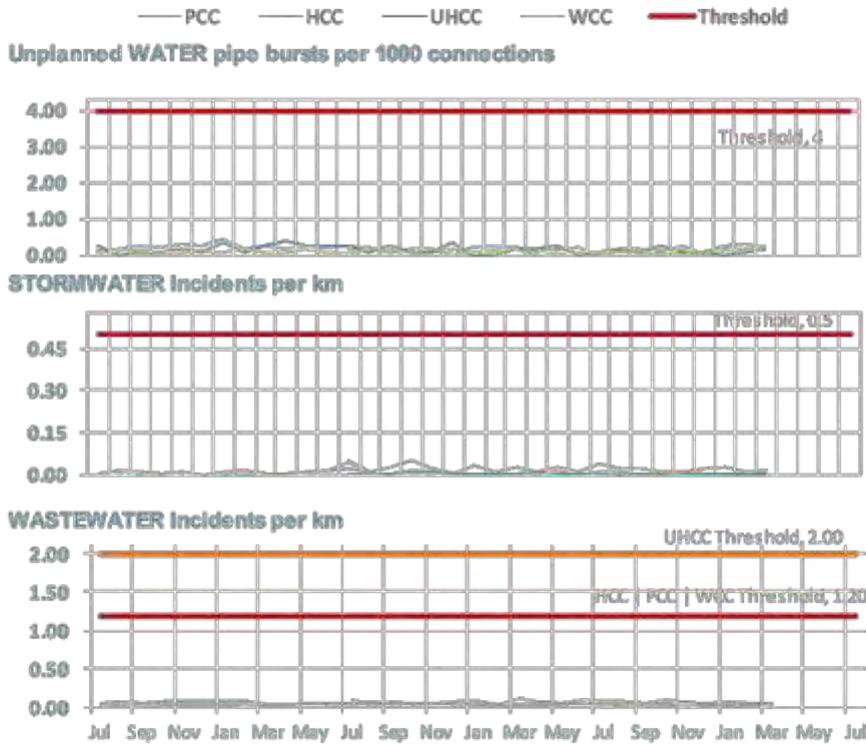


	Current	Target		Current	Target	
HCC	Data due April-15		💧	PCC	Data due April-15	💧
UHCC	Data due April-15		💧	WCC	74%	90%
						🔴

Performance Report (WCC)

3.3 We have resilient networks, every day and under strain

3.3.1 Network incidents



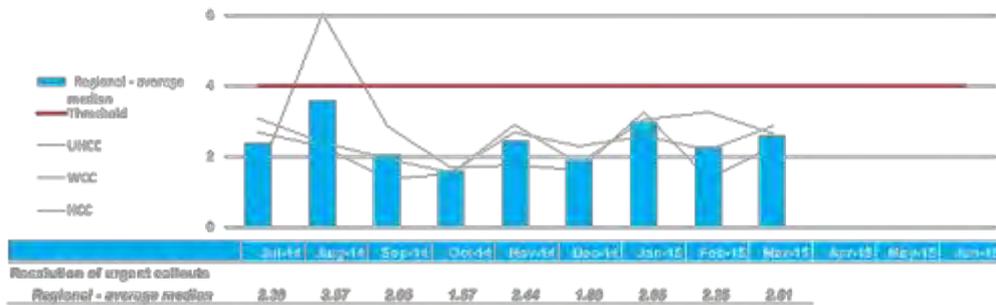
**Performance Report (WCC)**

**3.3.2 Response time to Water Supply Incidents**

**URGENT CALL OUTS**

The median response time to <b>ATTEND</b> an urgent event in Mar-15 ranged from	<b>0.32 hrs to 0.78 hrs</b>	This is <b>UNDER</b> the 0hr threshold	
---	-----------------------------	--	--

...And we **RESOLVED** these incidents quicker than threshold:



**NON-URGENT CALL OUTS**

The median response time to <b>ATTEND</b> an non-urgent event in Mar-15 ranged from	<b>23.4 hrs to 28.2 hrs</b>	This is <b>UNDER</b> the 36 hr threshold	
---	-----------------------------	--	--

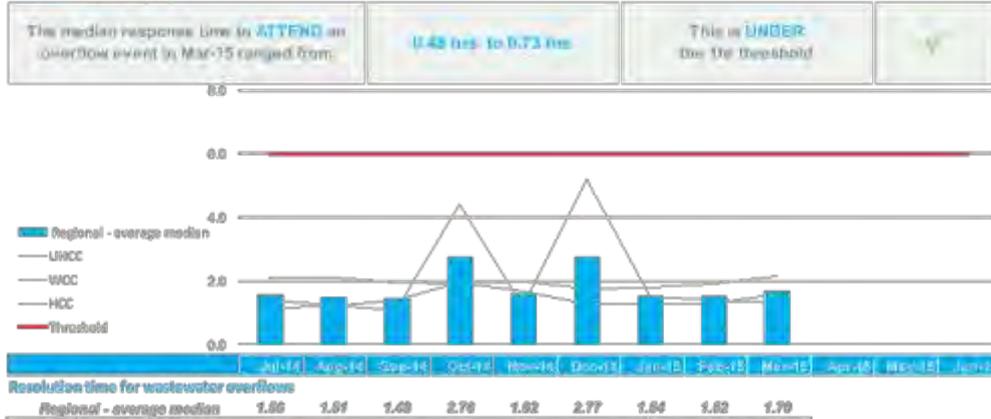
...And we **RESOLVED** these incidents quicker than threshold:



Performance Report (WCC)

3.3.3 Response time to Wastewater Reticulation Incidents

URGENT CALL OUTS



3.3.4 Complaints about the Wastewater Network

	Total number of complaints - YTD 2014/15	Number of complaints / 1000 connections - YTD 2014/15	Target
Odour			
System faults			
Blockages			
Responsiveness to wastewater system issues			

Under Development

3.3.5 Complaints about the Stormwater Network

	Regional YTD Results 2014/15	Target
Number of complaints		
Number of complaints / 1000 connections		

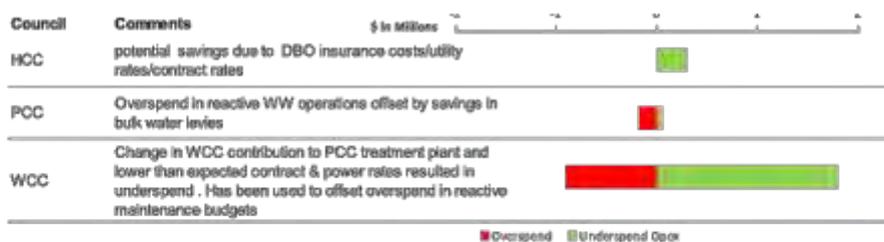
Under Development

Performance Report (WCC)

## 4 Regional Financial and Project Summary

### 4.1 Operating Budgets

Service	YTD Actual (\$,000)	YTD Budget (\$,000)	YTD Variance (\$,000)	Annual Budget (\$,000)	YE Forecast (\$,000)	YE Variance (\$,000)
Water Supply	42,644	42,744	100	57,079	57,179	-100
Wastewater	26,181	27,665	1,484	36,942	35,882	1060
Stormwater	4,967	5,521	554	7,450	7,450	0
<b>Total</b>	<b>73,792</b>	<b>75,930</b>	<b>2,138</b>	<b>101,471</b>	<b>100,511</b>	<b>960</b>

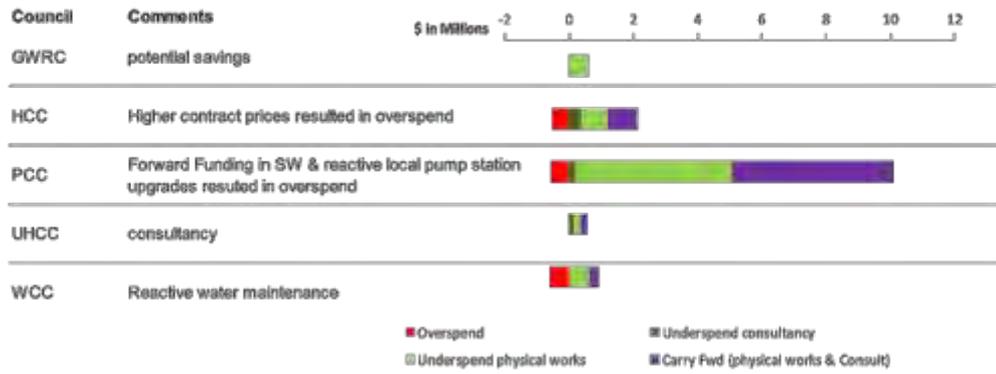


### 4.2 Capital Works Budgets

Service	YTD Actual (\$,000)	YTD Budget (\$,000)	YTD Variance (\$,000)	Annual Budget (\$,000)	YE Forecast (\$,000)	YE Variance (\$,000)
Water Supply	14,298	20,783	6,485	26,796	25,550	946
Wastewater	10,955	20,305	9,350	25,676	20,549	5,127
Stormwater	4,818	4,776	-41	6,910	6,811	99
<b>Total</b>	<b>30,070</b>	<b>45,864</b>	<b>15,794</b>	<b>59,082</b>	<b>52,910</b>	<b>6,171</b>

- There is \$6.4 million worth of capital works projects have been identified as potential carry overs. Approval will be sought from the respective councils once confirmed.

**Performance Report (WCC)**



Performance Report (WCC)

4.3 Project Status Summary

WELLINGTON WATER

PROJECT STATUS SUMMARY

Status at end of March 2015

Total value (\$)	Complete	On Track	Off track now - ON track for year end	Off track at year end	On Hold
47,979,599	57 or 24%	122 or 52%	32 or 13%	18 or 8%	4 or 2%
8,541,537	20,025,874	3,387,123	6,652,565	2,000,000	
or 18%	or 42%	or 12%	or 14%	or 2%	

- Complete & on track
- Off track now but ON track for Year end
- Off Track at year End
- On Hold

	Total value (\$)	Complete	On Track	Off track now - ON track for year end	Off track at year end	On Hold	
■ HUTT CITY	7,734,986	5	31	7	5	2	
■ Storm Water	1,639,995	1	7	1	2		
■ Waste Water	3,164,991	1	10	4		1	
■ Water Supply	2,930,000	3	14	2	3	1	
■ PORIRUA CITY	11,062,160	2	13	11	10	2	
■ Storm Water	579,000	1	4	2		1	
■ Waste Water	2,059,000	1	3	5			
■ Waste Water Joint venture	7,036,000		3	4	9	1	
■ Water Supply	1,388,160		3		1		
■ UPPER HUTT CITY	4,178,446	10	15	2	2		
■ Storm Water	111,254		5				
■ Waste Water	2,440,692	2	5	1			
■ Water Supply	1,626,500	8	5	1	2		
■ WELLINGTON CITY	25,004,007	40	63	13	1		
■ Storm Water	4,254,781	11	11	1			
■ Waste Water	7,745,051	16	29	5			
■ Water Supply	13,004,175	13	23	6	1		
Grand Total	47,979,599	57	122	32	18	4	

## 5 Council Specific Performance Results

The following indicators incorporate a combination of existing indicators, new regional indicators and new indicators from the Department of Internal Affairs that become mandatory in 2015/16. We are working towards the measurement of the new indicators; in some cases the information is not yet measured.

### 5.1 Water Supply Indicators

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
Drinking Water Quality	Compliance with Drinking Water Standards for NZ 2000 (Part 4 bacterial compliance)	100% compliance	On track	
	Maintenance of water supply quality gradings from Ministry of Health	Maintain	On track	
Service Quality	Number of unplanned supply cuts per 1000 connections	<4	On track	YTD = 0.91
	Percentage of fire hydrants tested that meet NZFS Code of Practice	95%		Determined annually
Customer satisfaction/dissatisfaction	Community satisfaction with water supply (from survey)	90%		To be included in the WCC survey – will not be available until 2015/16

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Number of complaints about: (a) drinking water clarity/1000 connections (b) drinking water taste/1000 connections (c) drinking water odour/1000 connections (d) drinking water continuity of supply/1000 connections (e) responsiveness to drinking water complaints/1000 connections			Measurement method under development
	Number of complaints about water quality (taste and odour)	Fewer than 200	On-track	YTD = 114
	Customer satisfaction (%) with water quality and network service (measured via calling cards)	95%	On-track	YTD = 100%
	Residents (%) who agree that water supply services provide good value for money	90%		Annual survey by WCC – data not yet available
Responsiveness	Median response time for: (a) attendance for urgent callouts (b) resolution of urgent callouts (c) attendance for non-urgent callouts (d) resolution of non-urgent callouts	60 minutes 4 hours 36 hours 15 days	On-track On-track On-track On-track	YTD = 43 min YTD = 2.42 hours YTD = 25.92 hours YTD = 1.76 days

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Response time to service requests	97% - Meet A and B response time targets for Priority One activities ("on-site within one hour")	On-track	YTD = 99.83%
Environmental Sustainability	Average drinking water consumption/resident/day	290 l/p/d		Determined Annually
	Percentage of real water loss from networked reticulation system			Measurement method under development Determined Annually
	Unaccounted for water (%) from the network	14%		Determined Annually
	Total city water consumption during the year	Less than 30 Billion Litres	On-track	YTD = 20.1 billion litres

**Performance Report (WCC)**

**5.2 Wastewater Network Indicators**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
Service Quality	Number of wastewater reticulation incidents per km of reticulation pipeline (blockages)	<1.2	On-track	YTD = 0.35
	Dry weather wastewater overflows/1000 connections	0		Measurement method under development
	Non-consented Overflows - Treatment Plants	0		Measurement method under development
	Consented Overflows - Treatment Plants	<10		Measurement method under development
Customer satisfaction/ dissatisfaction	Community satisfaction with the wastewater network (from survey)	75%		To be included in the WCC survey – will not be available until 2015/16
	Number of complaints about: (a) wastewater odour/1000 connections (b) wastewater system faults/1000 connections (c) wastewater system blockages/1000 connections (d) responsiveness to wastewater system issues/1000 connections			Measurement method under development
	Customer satisfaction with the city wastewater service (calling cards)	90%	On-track	YTD = 99.4%

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Residents (%) who agree that wastewater services provide good value for money	75%		Annual survey by WCC – data not yet available
Responsiveness	Median response time for:			
	(a) attendance time for wastewater overflows	60 minutes	On-track	YTD = 35 minutes
	(b) resolution time for wastewater overflows	6 hours	On-track	YTD = 2 hours
	Response time to service requests	95% - Meet A and B response time targets for Priority One activities ("on-site within one hour")	On-track	YTD = 99.45%
Environmental Sustainability	Breaches of resource consents for discharges from wastewater system:  (a) Number of abatement notices for discharges from wastewater system  (b) Number of infringement notices for discharges from wastewater system  (c) Number of enforcement orders for discharges from wastewater system  (d) Number of convictions for discharges from wastewater system	0	On-track	Zero incidents

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Freshwater – sites (%) within acceptable bacteria counts (E.coli)	95%	Concern	YTD = 78% (based on median results of the first three quarters)

**5.3 Stormwater Network Indicators**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
Service Quality	Number of flooding events	1	Concern	2 residential properties and 3 shops in Johnsonville were flooded in March.
	Number of habitable floors affected/1000 connected properties/flooding event	0.07	Concern	
	Number of buildings reported to have been flooded as a result of a less than 1-in-50-year rain event.	5	Concern	
	Number of Pipeline blockages per km of pipeline	<0.5	On-track	YTD = 0.02
Customer satisfaction/ dissatisfaction	Community satisfaction with stormwater management (from survey)	75%		To be included in the WCC survey – will not be available until 2015/16
	Residents satisfaction with the city stormwater service (calling cards)	85%	On-track	YTD = 100%

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Number of complaints about stormwater system performance/1000 connections			Measurement method under development
	Residents (%) who agree that stormwater services provide good value for money	75%		Annual survey by WCC – data not yet available
Responsiveness	Median response time to attend a flooding event	60 minutes	On-track	YTD = 39 minutes
	Response time to service requests	95% - Meet A and B response time targets for Priority One activities ("on-site within one hour")	On-track	YTD = 99.32%
Environmental Sustainability	Breaches of resource consents for discharges from stormwater system: (a) Number of abatement notices for discharges from stormwater system (b) Number of infringement notices for discharges from stormwater system (c) Number of enforcement orders for discharges from stormwater system (d) Number of convictions for discharges from stormwater system	0	On-track	Zero incidents
	Percentage of days during the bathing season, from 1 November to 31 March that the monitored beaches are suitable for recreational use.	90%	Achieved	100% (no beach closures)

**Performance Report (WCC)**

Level of Service	Performance Measure	Performance Target 2014/15	Achieved / On-track / Concern	Progress comment
	Percentage of monitored sites that have a rolling twelve month median value for E.coli (dry weather samples) that do not exceed 1000 cfu/100ml.	90%	Concern	74% at the end of the third quarter
	Bathing beaches (%) compliance with Ministry for the Environment guidelines (green status)	95%	Concern	YTD = 93.2% - refer to section 2.

## **6 Quarterly Meeting Action Log**

---

No quarterly action log

## 7 Document Quality Control

### Report status – Final

**Originator:**

Wellington Water Limited

**Contributors:**

Michelle Chew

Iqbal Idris

Peter Cuncarr

Meena Sridharan

Nicola Chisnall

**Reviewer:**

Jetesh Bhula – WCC Relationship Manager

**Approved:**

Jetesh Bhula – WCC Relationship Manager

### Version control:

Version	Publishing date	Electronic file location
Draft	13 April 2015	G:\Asset Planning Team\Reporting\SLA reporting\WCC\YE 1415\WCC SLA report Q3 2014-15 draft.docx
Final	20 April 2015	G:\Asset Planning Team\Reporting\SLA reporting\WCC\YE 1415\WCC SLA report Q3 2014-15 final.docx

Item 4.1 Attachment 4



**Wellington Water**  
**THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK 1 January - 31 March 2015**



The Macaskill Lakes at 3 April 2015, with Lake 1 at about 45% availability

## Supply resilient in dry weather, contractors upbeat on future

An extremely dry summer on the back of a dry autumn led to the recommendation to councils to increase garden watering restrictions off the base level (alternate day) to a sprinkler ban. Dry weather creates a double whammy for water, increasing demand at the same time as supplies from dehydrated catchments dwindle. Managing the use of sources and storage to meet demand and maximise supply security incurred significantly higher costs, on top of the extra advertising employed to promote the restrictions. But we made it through a record-breaking summer without tougher limits on water use, reflecting good public uptake of messages and effective supply management.

At our quarterly meeting with representatives of contractors and consultants with whom we work, we noted a buoyant feel to the room in relation to market conditions. Major projects in play – including the Transmission Gully and Mackays Crossing – Pekapeka highways – are key factors in this change in sentiment. Implications for us are that we'll need to be careful with our work planning and programming to ensure we maintain competitive bidding, and that there could be upward pressure on pricing. On the broader economic front, we see no significant impact from reported levels of property development, or material and labour costs. The draft regional plan continues through the review process and we continue to monitor this to ensure cost impacts of potential policy applications are fully understood. Towards the end of the quarter there was increasing noise at the national level on issues of water management, ownership, and regulation. We'll keep a close watch on developments in this area.

*Almost the entire country dried out over summer, putting pressure on rivers and water supply.*

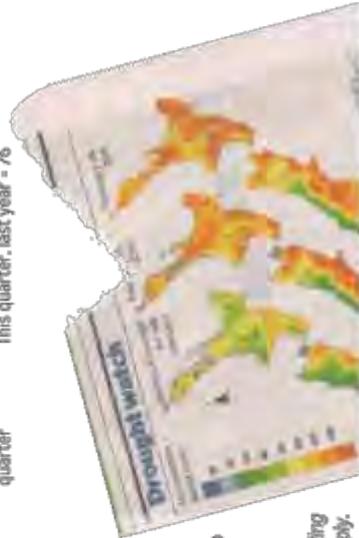
### New connection applications

*New water supply connections showed a decline on the previous quarter, and on the same quarter the previous year.*



Previous quarter

This quarter, last year = 76



## Contents

Our operating conditions	> Pg 1
Outcome 1. Safe to drink About the Aquifer	> Pg 2 > Pg 3
Outcome 2. Respectful Water quality communications	> Pg 4 > Pg 5
Outcome 3. Resilience Measuring resilience	> Pg 6 > Pg 7
Health and safety Programme delivery	> Pg 8 > Pg 9



**Wellington Water**  
THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK  
1 January – 31 March 2015

OUR WATER IS SAFE TO DRINK

OUTCOME 1.

**13,279,470,000 litres**  
delivered to 138,000 connections

Last summer (Jan-Mar 2014) we delivered 12,839,350,000 litres

**Dry summer challenges region's drinking water**

Despite the dry weather and very low river levels in our supply catchments, we delivered over 13 billion litres of water to customers and met all extraction consent conditions.

These conditions had a net negative impact (increase) on treatment costs. Reduced flow meant we could not use the Orongorongo hydro power plant, nor could we use other power saving options, and we had to pump more water than normal. On the plus side, cleaner river water reduced chemical treatment costs.

The advertising spend promoting the sprinkler ban and water saving tips topped the \$130,000 mark.

Emerging supply issues we are watching centre around water security and the Waikwhetu aquifer in particular. These include iron bacteria in the aquifer wells, age dating of aquifer water, bore strengthening for seismic resilience, and bore renewal.

It's important to note that none of these issues affects our Safe to Drink outcome, and we're working through each of them. A new casing in the well affected by iron bacteria has seen bacteria levels drop. Water age testing is in progress as is work on strengthening supply assets, and we're assessing bore condition ahead of renewal projects, which would likely be carried out next year.



**Drinking water safety**

Full compliance with the New Zealand Drinking Water Standards (DWSNZ 2005, 2008) for microbiological, chemical, aesthetic and reticulation measures



Key:

On track



Minor issues



Concerns to be addressed

In the coming quarter we'll initiate a review of communications relating to water restrictions. With the lake enlargement process complete we feel it's a good time to have a new look at restriction triggers and activities. We also learned a lot over the summer about communicating the many factors at play in managing our water supply and demand.

P1



**Wellington  
Water**

THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK  
1 January – 31 March 2015

OUTCOME 1. OUR WATER IS SAFE TO DRINK  
THE WAIWHETU AQUIFER

# The Waiwhetu Aquifer – where we get 40% of our water supply

Wellington's water supply history is a cycle of urban growth, rising demand, new supply development and gradually increasing pressure on capacity. Since the mid-1800s, the Waiwhetu Aquifer has played an increasingly important role in that story.

The aquifer first served as a private, then public water source for European settlers, but early municipal engineers preferred the known qualities of river water to supply growing cities in the region. As demand grew, and local water management authorities jockeyed for supply, bores were drilled first on Gear Island (Petone) in the 1930s, to supplement supply for Wellington City, then at Buick Street in 1963 to supply Petone.

As the supply / demand cycle continued, studies in the 1970s suggested the aquifer could supply a lot more water from further up the valley, and the Waterloo bores and treatment plant were commissioned in 1981.

The aquifer is generally seen as extending from Taita Gorge to the mouth of Wellington Harbour. It is naturally pressurised (artesian) from Melling. The aquifer structure is 70m thick at its western edge, narrowing to 20m at the east. There are three 'layers': the upper and lower Waiwhetu aquifers, and the Moera, which is about 50m below ground level at Waterloo.

The pressure in the aquifer varies and, particularly during drier conditions, responds directly to the amount of water being drawn because we draw more out than is coming in. We measure the pressure above sea level at McEwan Park, on the Petone foreshore. Above 3m is generally a sign of plentiful water; below 2.5m and we watch very carefully for further impact. Special consent is required to allow the pressure here to drop below 2.2m.

Water from an aquifer is regarded as safe (according to the Drinking Water Standards of NZ) if it is at least a year old. This is seen as enough time to ensure potentially harmful organisms that may enter the aquifer with surface water have died off.

We're required to carry out age dating tests every five years. Previous tests showed the Knights Road wellfield water was 18 months old; current sampling results will be known later this year, and we'll increase our testing regime as necessary to ensure we remain compliant with the age requirement.

After 30-plus years the extraction wells are nearing the end of their expected working life, and this year we are assessing their condition to see when they might need to be replaced or refurbished.



### Aqui-facts

**Did you know:**

- The maximum production capacity from the Waterloo treatment plant is 135 million litres a day, but is limited by resource consents to 115 MLD. Limits on extraction prevent seawater intrusion.
- There are eight wells feeding Waterloo treatment plant, stretching roughly along Knight's Road between the railway station and Westfield Shopping Centre.
- The Knights Road wells extend between 20-40m below ground level. There is sufficient pressure for water to rise to the surface here, but pumps are needed to extract the volume required for supply and distribution.
- To draw water from the aquifer requires a consent from Greater Wellington Regional Council. There are currently 22 active consents, including one to supply Waterloo, one for the hospital and four for golf clubs.
- There's a bore on Mahi/Somes Island into the same aquifer. Age testing has showed that water to be approximately 25 years old.
- The aquifer water is slightly acidic, around pH 6.3. It is treated with lime to meet drinking water standards and reduce wear on pipes and domestic plumbing.





**Overflows lead to reviews**

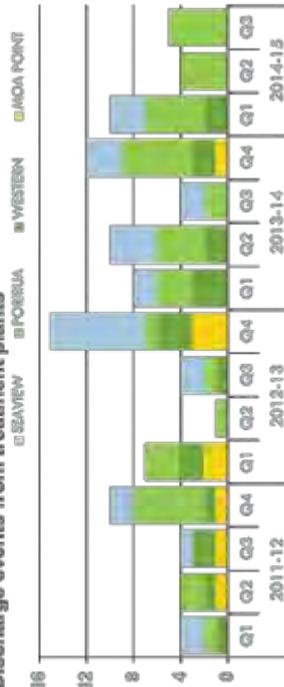
The quarter saw several overflow incidents from the wastewater and water network resulting in discharges to the environment.

A submerged cross-connection beneath Featherston Street that had been contributing to water quality issues in Wellington Harbour (near the Marine Police building) was found and fixed. Shortly after that repair, a blocked wastewater main resulted in a short discharge into the same area. In Whitby, a wastewater pipe failure led to a spill into the Pauteahau arm of Porirua Harbour, while a pipe burst at the Rukutane Point pump station saw untreated wastewater flow into the sea. Repairs were carried out to restore service. Also during the quarter a procedural failure after routine pump station maintenance led to an overflow at northern Titahi Bay, and a water pipe burst led to sediment entering Waiwhetu Stream.

We've worked hard on improving our communications with colleagues on the consent team at Greater Wellington Regional Council, and made sure they were kept informed of these incidents and the follow-up procedures.

There were three beach closure events in Hutt City and one in Porirua during the quarter. Follow up investigations showed water quality returning to normal within 24 hours. There were no incidents at our 33 monitored freshwater sites.

**Discharge events from treatment plants**



**Consent compliance 1 Jan – 31 Mar 2015:**

Nature of work	Target	Track
Extracting water	Full compliance	✓
Discharging water	Full compliance	✓
Wastewater – dry weather overflows	Full compliance*	✗
Wastewater – wet weather overflows	Full compliance	✓
Stormwater discharges	Full compliance	✓
How we carry out our work	No issues this quarter	✓

\*Although we technically complied with the conditions of our consent in relation to dry weather overflows, we view this events of the quarter as a fail with regard to this outcome.



**WELLINGTON WATER**  
THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK  
1 January – 31 March 2015

**OUTCOME 2. WE ARE RESPECTFUL OF THE ENVIRONMENT  
IMPROVING COMMUNICATIONS ON WATER QUALITY**

### Bypasses and overflows

An **overflow** refers to a discharge from the wastewater system that impacts a stream or coastal marine area. The discharge exits the wastewater system through a constructed overflow arrangement (weir or pipe) positioned in a manhole (an access node), pumping facility, treatment plant or customer controlled piping system (gully trap etc.).

A **wet weather overflow** occurs when stormwater infiltrates, dilutes and overloads the wastewater system.

A **dry-weather wastewater overflow** might be discharged from a private or public wastewater main due to a blockage caused by debris or fat clogging a pipe, pipe failure, tree root or some other form of intrusion into the main itself.

Other failure sources include power outages or mechanical failure in wastewater pump stations or wastewater treatment plants.

The public wastewater network includes all sewer mains, access nodes, pump stations and treatment plants. The private wastewater network includes all piping from a gully trap to the connection to the public main.

A **bypass** is when inflow volumes exceed the capacity of the network to treat it in the normal manner, but rather than overflowing, the water is diverted around the normal treatment path. In the case of a wastewater treatment plan, a bypass results in only partially treated water being discharged to the environment.

## Whaitua adviser appointed



Jonathan Gulland  
Whaitua relationships  
adviser.

Whaitua committees consist of representatives appointed to collaborate with their communities to create a vision and prioritise objectives for land and water management in their catchment. The committees' work will inform policies and rules in the Regional Plan (now in draft). Five whaitua committees will be set up in the region; two have been established (the Ruamahanga in Wairarapa and Porirua), and the third (Wellington/Hutt Valley) will be established later this year.

To help serve the community on fresh and coastal water quality issues, we've appointed a whaitua relationships adviser, Jonathan Gulland. Jonathan's role will be to participate in the process of forming the Porirua and Wellington/Hutt Valley whaitua, bringing back the views of the committee as they take shape, advising the councils on the implications of those views, and consulting with committee members on council views.

There's no question that freshwater and coastal water quality and allocation will be major issues over the coming years, so this will be an area where we expect to keep a close watch, and to report frequently.

Jonathan comes to Wellington Water from Porirua City Council, via Transpower and Wellington City Council, with an extensive background in stakeholder engagement and participation as well as environmental and project management. He says the breadth and challenge of the new role appealed to him.

"I'm looking forward both to the process and the outcomes. Having been at PCC while that committee came together, I'm convinced of the value this approach has to offer the community and the environment. It's a very exciting thing to be part of."

As part of Wellington City Council integrated catchment management plan, we're developing a newsletter to broaden the conversation about stormwater quality issues. The first issue is out in April.



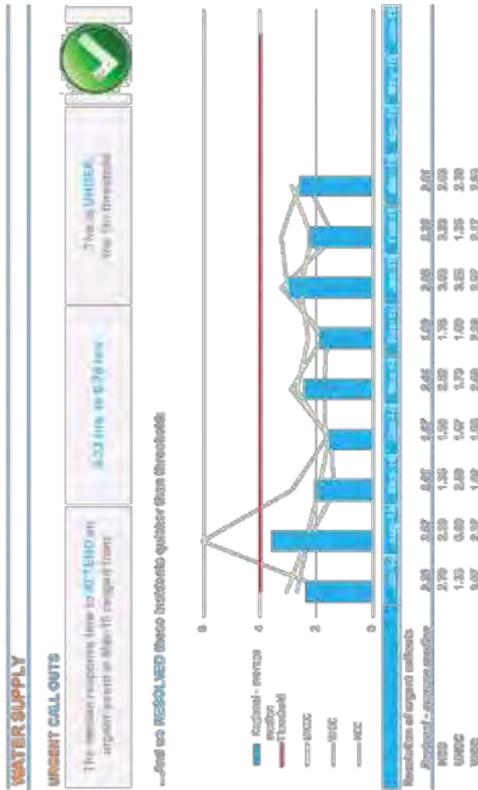

**THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK**  
 1 January – 31 March 2015

**OUTCOME 3:**  
**NETWORKS THAT ARE RESILIENT, NOW AND IN THE FUTURE**

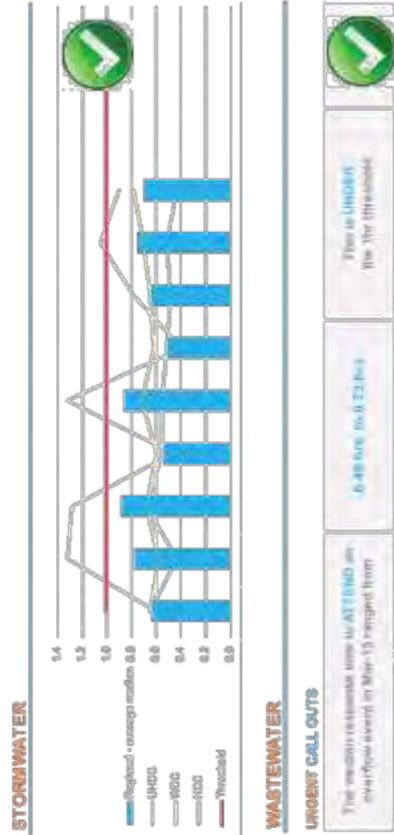
**Three waters network performance on track**

The metrics here show response times to attend and resolve network issues. This is one aspect of the customer experience of network resilience; if there's a service interruption, how long does it take to get fixed?

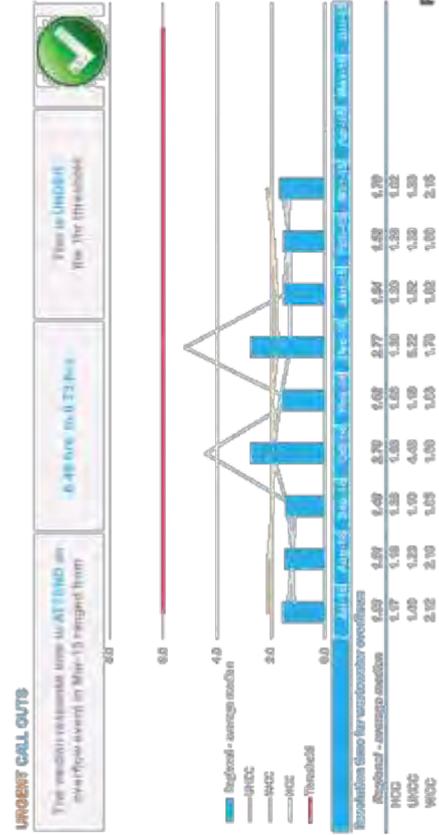
**MEDIAN RESPONSE TIMES: Hours to attend or resolve issue**



**MEDIAN RESPONSE TIMES: Hours to attend or resolve issue**



**WASTEWATER**



Wellington Water  
THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK  
1 January - 31 March 2015

OUTCOME 3. RESILIENT NETWORKS  
MEASURING AND IMPROVING SUPPLY RESILIENCE

**Building resilience**  
We're developing a regional strategic initiative on resilience that will cover a range of asset, performance and behaviour characteristics. As we refine these with councils, we'll share them in this report. A resilient system is one that performs well on a daily basis, but also is resistant to, and recovers quickly from, shock. How people interact with the system is also an important factor.

**Seismic resilient reservoirs**  
In the event of a major earthquake, seismic resilient reservoirs are more likely to retain their structural integrity – as well as their water. This will be very important in restoring supply to areas after the quake. All cities are actively improving the seismic resilience of their systems. Physical strengthening of reservoirs includes adding floor-wall and roof-wall joints, making walls stronger and improving roofing. Pipework improvements include installing auto-shutoff valves and magflow meters.

Studies have shown that should the major supply pipelines to the cities be disrupted, it could take up to 80 days for supply to be restored to some areas. While emergency water tanks installed at schools and community centres will help fill the gap, communities must also take responsibility for water supplies in an emergency.



Strengthening existing structures improves their resistance to seismic shock.

Magnetic flow meters measure and report flow.



Installing reinforced roofing on Newlands reservoir.

Auto shutoff valves preserve water in the reservoir in the event of a sudden increase in flow – such as major burst or break.

Emergency storage tanks at community centres and schools are another important tool in ensuring communities are close to water when they need it.





ORGANISATIONAL PERFORMANCE  
HEALTH AND SAFETY

### Health and Safety forum works to improve data

Wellington Water's role in health and safety is to proactively manage risk. That includes the performance of our contractors and consultants. We recognise that our suppliers are very much in the public eye with regard to the activities we are responsible for, so it makes sense to us to work with them as well as on our own performance.

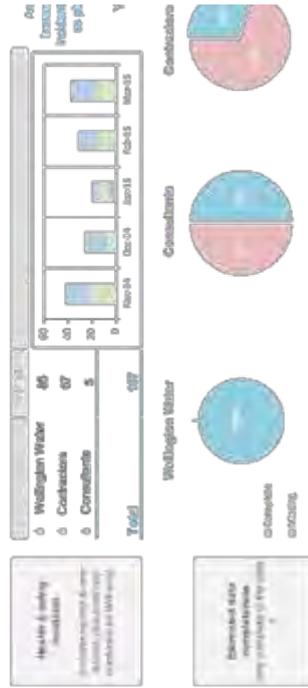
To that extent, we've been working with our contractors and consultants to gather information into a regional reporting structure. This process of gathering information from a large number of external sources is not always easy to establish, so we've also set a target to ensure we're improving the quality of data we get.

An increase of incident reporting of the last quarter has been pleasing to note. The best part has been a dramatic increase of near hit/miss incidents, at 59% of all reports, compared to 11% the previous quarter. This type of reporting is important because it helps us identify issues and trends before harm or loss occurs.

Over the last month of the quarter a spate of underground service strikes was reported from various projects and contractors. At this stage it is not clear if this is because of an increased awareness to report incidents of all types (possibly indicating under-reporting in the past), a failure of underground service identification (ongoing problem with poor records) or unsafe digging process (inadequate compliance with agreed best practice). We'll monitor this to gain more clarity.



Workers lower shoring components into a trench for a project in Upper Hutt. The trench heights at which shoring must be in place have been reviewed by Wellington Water recently, to ensure workers performing tasks below ground level are safe.



**Wellington Water**  
**THREE WATERS REPORT AND OUTLOOK**  
 1 January – 31 March 2015

### Capital works ramp up to hit budget in final quarter

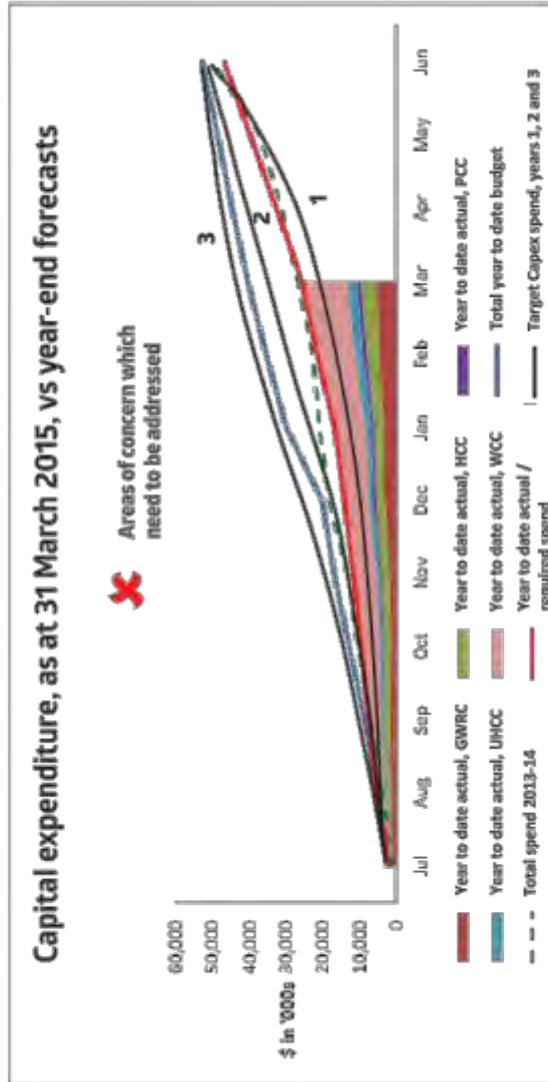
The capital works programme across all five councils is accelerating as we move into the last quarter. We are forecasting a \$24m spend for the quarter, with all but a few physical works projects now in construction. Overall the programme is on track at 93% programme delivery (excluding projects deferred by clients).

For the four cities we are forecasting to carry forward approximately \$6.5 million, of which \$5 million is related to reprofiting work for Porirua City Council and the deferral of the cross-harbour pipeline project.

The revised GWRC programme is largely on track. The programme forecast spend is approximately 8% (\$580,000) under budget due to deferral and cancellation of a number of projects. Year to date spend and commitments are \$5.4 million out of a revised forecast spend of \$7 million.

We are undertaking a programme to “fast-forward” our investigation and designs, and awarding physical works contracts more evenly through the year. This should improve our overall programme delivery performance.

There are some risks associated with the programme, as we have a large number of projects underway with some very tight programmes, any programme slippage may mean projects cannot be completed this financial year.



\$ m 2013/14	YTD actual	YTD budget	YTD variance	% variance	Annual Budget	YTD forecast	YTD variance
Capex	7,537	7,930	2,411	3%	10,471	10,041	1,066
Opex	25,884	4,584	16,950	37%	30,082	31,129	5,061
<b>Total</b>	<b>102,401</b>	<b>121,794</b>	<b>19,393</b>	<b>16%</b>	<b>160,553</b>	<b>153,532</b>	<b>7,021</b>

P1



---

## **FINAL 2015/16 STATEMENTS OF INTENT FOR COUNCIL CONTROLLED ORGANISATIONS**

---

### **Purpose**

1. To receive and consider the 2015/16 Statements of Intent (SOIs) for the Wellington Zoo Trust (the Zoo or the Trust) and the Karori Sanctuary Trust (ZEALANDIA or the Trust).

### **Summary**

2. At its meeting on 23 April 2015, the Committee reviewed the draft 2015/16 Statements of Intent (SOI) for the Zoo and ZEALANDIA and recommended some changes be communicated to both entities. The recommendations of the Committee have been addressed by the Zoo and ZEALANDIA in their final SOI.
3. The Council's 10-year plan will be considered at the meeting of the Governance, Finance and Policy (GFM) committee meeting on 25 May 2015. Because of the timing of this meeting, any changes made to funding Council Controlled Organisations and related projects cannot be addressed by each CCO in its final 2015/16 SOI.
4. Officers will work with the CCOs to address the impact of any changes to the Council's 10-year plan on their SOIs.

### **Recommendations**

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.
2. Note that following the Committee meeting on 23 April 2015 the officers wrote to the Council Controlled Organisations requesting changes to be made in their Statements of Intent and that these changes have been included in the final Statements of Intent.
3. Note that the Council's 10-year plan will be considered at the meeting of the Governance, Finance and Policy committee meeting on 25 May 2015. Because of the timing of this meeting, any potential changes made to funding for Council Controlled Organisations and related projects are not addressed in this report or the individual Statements of Intent.
4. Agree to recommend that the Council approve the 2015/16 Statements of Intent for the Wellington Zoo Trust and the Karori Sanctuary Trust subject to officers addressing the impact of any changes to the funding for Council Controlled Organisations that results from the Council's 10-year plan at the meeting of the Governance, Finance and Policy committee meeting on 25 May 2015:
5. Note any issues for the Chair to raise with the entities covered by this report.

### **Background**

5. Under the Local Government Act 2002, CCOs are required to submit a draft SOI to the Council by 1 March in the previous financial year. As a matter of good practice, the Council precedes this with a Letter of Expectation which outlines the Council's expectations in respect of the SOIs it will receive.

6. Officers received the draft SOIs and tabled these at the Economic Growth and Arts Committee meeting on 21 April 2015. The report included issues that had been identified in each draft SOI that were expected to be addressed in the final SOI. Officers then wrote to each CCO, highlighting these issues and requesting that they be addressed in the final SOI.
7. The final SOIs are included in this report for referral to the Council for its approval. As the key accountability document between the Council and the Board of each entity, the approval or support of the SOI is important in confirming the strategic direction and accountability to Council of each organisation.
8. The 2015/16 SOI for Wellington Water Limited will be considered by the Wellington Water Committee.

### **Discussion**

9. Officers have reviewed the draft SOIs and acknowledge that they respond constructively to the Letters of Expectations. The main areas for the committee to note are as follows:

#### **Wellington Zoo Trust:**

10. In its final SOI for 2015/16, the Zoo has responded to the points raised by the Environment Committee. The Trust has updated the SOI to include an outline of the requirements and timeframe for the potential acquisition of Snow Leopards and the associated request for additional capex funding in more detail.
11. Officers recommend that the Environment Committee recommend that the Council approve the Zoo's 2015/16 SOI.

#### **Karori Sanctuary Trust:**

12. In its 2015/16 SOI, ZEALANDIA has responded to the points raised by the Environment Committee and the SOI does contain baseline data for 30 June 2015 and forecast data to 30 June 2018.
13. Officers recommend that the Environment Committee recommend that the Council approve ZEALANDIA's 2015/16 SOI.

### **Attachments**

- |               |  |          |
|---------------|--|----------|
| Attachment 1. | Statement of Intent 2015-2016 Karori Sanctuary Trust               | Page 200 |
| Attachment 2. | Statement of Intent and Business Plan 2015-16 Wellington Zoo Trust | Page 241 |

Authors	Richard Hardie, Portfolio Manager Warwick Hayes, CCO Project Manager
Authoriser	Derek Fry, Director City Growth & Partnerships

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

The organisations in this report consult with the Council on a wide range of matters as part of our “no surprises” relationship.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

This report raises no new treaty considerations.

### **Financial implications**

The CCOs work within the context of the Council’s overall Long Term Plan and Annual Plan framework.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

This report complies with the legislative requirements of the Local Government Act (2002) and is consistent with existing Council policy.

### **Risks / legal**

Not applicable.

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

The CCOs work with the Council and other organisations in considering the environmental sustainability of their operations, including with the Council’s Our Living City programme.

### **Communications Plan**

Not applicable.

## Statement of Intent 2015-2016 Karori Sanctuary Trust

Presented to the Environment Committee  
pursuant to Schedule 8 of the Local Government Act (2002)

Page 1

## Contents

1. Introduction .....	4
2. The Operating Environment for ZEALANDIA in 2015/2016.....	6
3. Strategic Direction for 2015/2016 .....	9
3.1 Core Purpose.....	9
3.2 Strategic partnership .....	11
3.3 Strategic Framework.....	12
4. Ten Year Outlook .....	23
5. Nature and Scope of Activities .....	24
5.1 Core Business.....	24
6. Performance Measurements .....	25
6.1 Non-financial Performance Measures .....	25
6.2 Financial Performance Measures .....	26
6.3 Conservation Measures .....	26
7. Board's Approach to Governance.....	28
7.1 Relationship with Council .....	28
7.2 Board Membership .....	28
7.3 Board Performance.....	29
7.4 Annual General Meeting.....	29
8. Organisational Health, Capability and Risk Assessment.....	30
8.1 Organisation Health and Capability .....	30
8.2 Executive Team .....	30
8.3 Environmental Practices .....	30
8.4 Health & Safety Legislation .....	30
8.5 Asset Management Plan .....	30
8.6 Business Continuity Plan.....	31
8.7 Risk Management .....	31
9. Additional Information .....	35
9.1 Response to other specific Letter of Expectation matters (if applicable) .....	35
9.2 Ratio of Shareholders Funds to Total Assets .....	35
9.3 Estimate of Amount Intended for Distribution.....	35
9.4 Acquisition Procedures .....	35
9.5 Activities for which the Board seeks Compensation from a Local Authority .....	35
9.6 Estimate of Commercial Value of Shareholders Investment.....	35

Page 1

**Appendices**

Appendix A: Accounting Policies

Appendix B: ZEALANDIA 2015/16 Budget

## **1. Introduction**

This year marks the 20<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Karori Sanctuary Trust's foundation and the establishment of New Zealand's first urban nature sanctuary - ZEALANDIA. Due to the extraordinary commitment of hundreds of volunteers, members, donors (both individuals and organisations) together with the dedicated sanctuary staff, Wellington can boast a world leading example of ecological and habitat restoration within the urban landscape.

ZEALANDIA's state of the art Visitors Centre and Exhibition welcomes about 100,000 visitors per year, telling a unique national conservation story from the capital city. Exceptional learning experiences and community engagement programmes are designed to foster deeper connections and daily contact with the natural world.

The ZEALANDIA story is one of community action and people power. A primary role of the organisation is to increase the level of biodiversity within the city and to encourage visitors to care about their local environment and wildlife wherever they live. It is a call to action to protect their natural heritage and shape their future survival.

ZEALANDIA's 2015/16 Statement of Intent (SOI) provides a clear plan – from strategy, to business model, to risk management and revenue generation – in order to build a confident picture of our organisation's future resilience. It also builds on the success of the strategies set out in the 2013/14 Statement of Intent; its recovery-focused initiatives and their systematic and progressive steps towards long term sustainability. While there is still much work to do in strengthening ZEALANDIA's capability and capacity, the Trust remains confident the organisation can deliver even more powerfully for Wellington and beyond.

This document is the Trust's plan for capitalising on those gains and briefly outlines the longer term aspirations for fully harnessing the benefits and opportunities of the sanctuary. Vital to achieving our strategy is a continuing strong partnership with Wellington City Council and this Statement of Intent sets out our proposals for how that partnership can be expressed in 2015/16.

We believe that ZEALANDIA greatly enhances Wellington's reputation as a liveable city and that over time will only increase its contribution to the nationwide natural capital agenda. However, the Trust reiterates that the 2015/16 Statement of Intent, which is aligned to our 10 year business plan to 2025, is based on a detailed and conservative analyses of our current business, and still heavily relies on the future success of our extensive partnerships. Those include Wellington City Council, Victoria University, and organisations such as Te Papa, our Nature Connections partners including Wellington Zoo and Otari Wilton's Bush, the Department of Conservation, the Tenth's Trust and others. These relationships have moved on considerably since last year and the key imperatives for 2015/16 are outlined in this document.

Our future business projections reflect our strong commitment to these partnerships. Their success continues to be driven by practical, realistic operational plans and soundly based expectations of growth.

### **The second generation conservation effort**

Longer term, our aim is to be a leading centre for conservation and restoration action and research, learning and citizen engagement.

So while our core effort will be directed at continuing to manage and maintain the sanctuary, our key strategic direction is to fully play out our leadership position in the restoration sciences. Our intention is to shift the focus from an exhibition venue, where visitors drop in to view our sanctuary, to a conservation cause which enrolls activists into the race against time to save our natural heritage. Our programmes and activities will actively restore nature and equally ensure human well-being by enriching people's relationship with nature.

Page 4

This is what we mean by the second generation of conservation effort. As a focal point for community engagement, we envisage that ZEALANDIA becomes a place where people –like you– learn about nature, participate in research projects, travel in the lost ark, grow native plants, monitor native birds and take this learning back out to your communities where you earn your halo by making your world predator-free and call other people to action. We see a growing tribe of citizen scientists who champion and celebrate New Zealand’s natural capital.

We are optimistic and positive about the potential for ZEALANDIA to generate greater benefits for Wellington, and about our ability to establish a more sustainable financial position. We will do this by working with others, and in particular with Wellington City Council, whose continuing support is vital in creating ZEALANDIA’s sustainable future.

**Denise Church, Chair, Karori Sanctuary Trust  
Hilary Beaton, Chief Executive Officer, Karori Sanctuary Trust**

## **2. The Operating Environment for ZEALANDIA in 2015/2016**

### **Conservation and Biodiversity**

There is an increasing awareness worldwide of the need to protect our natural environment and Wellington is uniquely placed as a capital city with nature at its heart. ZEALANDIA plays an important role in the restoration of natural biodiversity in Wellington and in a range of Wellington City led and supported initiatives including the Living City Work programmes and the implementation of the Biodiversity Strategy. We are firmly committed to the Nature Connections and Halo projects that expand environmental programmes and enhance visitor experience in the Wellington region.

Ongoing support of other conservation and research programmes will continue and cement ZEALANDIA's leadership as a model for fenced mainland sanctuaries running restoration projects, as well as significantly contributing to conservation of threatened species by successful transfers to the sanctuary and to other sites.

The science of urban ecology is emerging as increasingly influential, and ZEALANDIA is well-placed to help grow momentum for this important work across the Wellington region. Our urban location, education programme, connection to the community, proximity to Victoria University, and the visible effect upon the city's birdlife is helping to nurture a generation of Wellingtonians that treasure New Zealand's indigenous flora and fauna.

Wellington is uniquely positioned to grow as a nature capital with ZEALANDIA at its heart as a nature destination and a site for urban ecology research and community learning. ZEALANDIA is fully aligned with the draft Wellington City draft biodiversity strategy.

### **Urbanisation**

According to the United Nations, 54% of the world's population lives in urban areas and this is expected to reach 70% by 2050. Our challenge as more and more of us live in urban centres is how to ensure that we don't lose our connection to nature. Being in nature is proven to have health benefits, both physical and mental, and the protection of green spaces within cities is crucial to the wellbeing of city residents.

ZEALANDIA is a unique model of increasing value as this shift towards urbanisation continues. The protection of such a large space within close proximity to the central business district of a capital city is a model that can be looked to from around the world of an example of how to balance urban environments with natural spaces.

### **Tourism**

Wellington has strong domestic tourism market with 75% of visitors to the city coming from other parts of New Zealand. Domestic visitors typically cite their reasons for travel as for a specific event, business or to have an urban experience.

International travellers from countries such as Germany, Scandinavia, Canada are boosting Wellington significantly. Chinese tourism has also seen large growth over the last two years and is continuing to increase. The way Chinese tourists travel in New Zealand is changing, moving away from organised tours to more self-organised trips.

The cruise market continues to be a large contributor to international visits to ZEALANDIA, with 79 cruise ships scheduled to visit the city in 2014/15. These tours are often cancelled when the weather is not ideal, leaving this a vulnerable revenue stream for ZEALANDIA.

### **Education and Learning**

Page 6

Education and learning has always been at the centre of ZEALANDIA's management plan. Our annual programme of school visits is delivered in partnership with the Ministry of Education's LEOTC programme, while youth engagement with nature is funded through numerous community organisations including the Mana Trust and Rotary.

Another arm of learning is through access to our sanctuary by academic researchers, locally and nationally.

A key partner in the delivery of an enriched education and visitor engagement programme of the future is the Victoria University of Wellington. A primary strategy of the University is "enhancing the resilience and sustainability of our natural heritage and capital" which sits well within ZEALANDIA's own strategic direction. By increasing ZEALANDIA's capacity to attract and accommodate world-class researchers to the sanctuary through our partnership with the university will also greatly enhance the City's capacity to attract and retain talent.

#### **Health and Well-being**

Research demonstrating how human health can benefit from exposure to green environments, nature and wildlife, both in relation to both physical and psychological wellbeing, is now very substantial. Some dates back a few decades. Much of the research shows the direct positive effect of nature on the health and happiness of people. There is also evidence to show how exposure to nature is associated with reduced stress and improved work performance.

A recent survey of ZEALANDIA members revealed that the biggest benefit derived from their annual subscription was the pursuit of better health and well-being. This indicates that the time is right to launch a campaign to promote the health benefits of nature at ZEALANDIA. By partnering with organisations that engage the community with nature-based activities, and providing a platform to raise awareness and open the debate around the connection between well-being and nature, ensures the conservation of the natural environment is positioned at the centre of national life.

#### **Technology**

Increasingly communities and supporters seek and obtain information from social media. ZEALANDIA is continuing to use social media as a way of engaging with communities, fostering dialogue and advocacy for our message.

In February 2014, Wellywifi was installed in our Visitor Centre which has had a very good uptake of the service. We are continuing to look at options to extend this access into the valley, which would improve both visitor experience and research functions. Revamping our website and enabling simpler bookings capability and purchasing, has the potential for increasing visitation and revenue generation.

The use of leading edge technology will significantly enhance conservation management. Being at the forefront of developing apps specifically for use in sanctuaries and education programmes is also on our agenda.

#### **Our Positioning /Relationships with Stakeholders**

The focus in 2014/15 was on building a foundation for ZEALANDIA's future.

An all of organisation realignment was completed, creating work programmes with responsibility over key accountability areas: membership, conservation, biosecurity, health and safety, volunteer management. Alongside this, systems and processes have been established to support the work of the sanctuary. As a result, the organisation is working more cohesively and efficiently.

We have refreshed our product offering and enhanced our visitor experience. The development of an annual programme encourages visitors to the sanctuary throughout the year and removes the perception of ZEALANDIA as a summer only destination. Our membership offer has also been refreshed and now includes early member-only access to the sanctuary which has been received very positively.

Page 7

The media coverage of ZEALANDIA has been consistently positive and focused on the conservation successes of the sanctuary and research projects and collaborations.

As we move into 2015/16 we will build upon this foundation, solidifying our place within the community and moving ZEALANDIA towards a sustainable future as a major contributor to Wellington's outstanding position as a great place to live, work and visit.



### **3. Strategic Direction for 2015/2016**

#### **3.1 Core Purpose**

The Karori Sanctuary Trust is an incorporated society, a charitable trust, and a not-for profit organisation. That is; we are a social enterprise, seeking to do public good by operating in a way that follows sound commercial disciplines.

As set out in our Trust Deed, the objects of the Trust are as follows:

To carry out education and research into all matters pertaining to the conservation and restoration of New Zealand's natural heritage and in particular to restore representative examples of New Zealand's natural heritage.

To establish and maintain a secure native wildlife sanctuary in the Karori Reservoir in the City of Wellington.

To restore the reservoir area ecosystem as closely as practicable to its presumed pre-human state but allowing for construction of specific habitats to enhance its diversity and conservation values.

To provide facilities for recreation and tourism activities.

To seek and foster community support and participation.

To manage and manipulate such ecosystems as may be necessary to maintain requisite populations.

The Trust operates as ZEALANDIA, under the guidance of a Trust Board that has adopted a shorter form of the objects as the mission for the organisation. Our mission: Restore nature and bring the benefits of our natural heritage to the people of Wellington and beyond.

In pursuit of this mission, ZEALANDIA operates four main functional strategies and work programmes:

#### **Sanctuary Experience – conservation, research, education and learning**

- Undertake conservation activities to restore the valley's ecosystems and processes as closely as practicable to their presumed pre-human condition, assuming the dams blocking the stream are representative of natural stochastic events that may have had the same effect.
- Integral to this is to increase natural biodiversity representative of the Wellington Ecological District in the sanctuary and beyond the perimeter fence, as well as to support national species recovery programmes and restoration work elsewhere where possible.
- Undertake and support research that will increase our understanding about the flora, fauna, and their habitats and ecological processes that threaten or sustain them, and that can inform and benefit restoration initiatives elsewhere in New Zealand. The use of the sanctuary as a place of learning and research is encouraged.
- Provide visitor experience and education programmes to increase their understanding of New Zealand's natural heritage, and the conservation challenges and successes here and elsewhere.

#### **Sanctuary Care and Preservation**

- Maintain a secure native wildlife sanctuary in the City of Wellington
- Provide world-class facilities for engaging visitor experience and recreation
- Connect and provide engagement with the community through high-quality volunteering experiences

#### **Sanctuary Enterprises**

- Maintain a world-class visitor experience through connection with nature and sustainable practices
- Development of commercial products and services to drive revenue

Page 8

- Provide commercial activities to connect visitors with our conservation mandate through:
  - Café & Functions
  - Retail
  - Exhibition & Events
  - Premium and Custom Tours
  - Marketing and Communications

**Sanctuary Corporate Services.**

- Contribute to conservation through our work at ZEALANDIA, advocacy and through our engagement with the community. We seek and foster community support and participation.
- Provide infrastructure and administrative services to whole of organisation.
- Manage and administer a range of critical administrative support services including:
  - Human Resources.
  - Fundraising & Grants.
  - Financial Management.

### **3.2 Strategic partnership**

The Wellington City Council is a strategic partner of the Karori Sanctuary Trust. The Council appoints two trustees, is a major funder, and owns the land on which the Trust Board operates ZEALANDIA.

Given this, the strategic priorities of the City are an important part of the strategic context for ZEALANDIA. ZEALANDIA aligns with the vision and goals expressed in "Wellington Towards 2040: Smart Capital". Developed in 2011, this document is the latest chapter in the Council's strategic plan setting out its vision for Wellington. (Priority One - Wellington: An inclusive place where talent wants to live.)

The four goals in 2040 strategy is supported by four goals – people-centred city, connected city, eco-city and dynamic central city. The Eco-city goal recognises the importance of Wellington taking an environmental leadership role as the capital city of clean and green New Zealand, with Wellington's many natural assets giving the City a head start and opportunities as part of a green economy. Research shows that Wellingtonians have more concern for the environment than the average New Zealander. These are values that both the Council and ZEALANDIA can build on to make Wellington an environmental leader.

The Wellington City Council Community Plan 2009-19 includes the following Community Outcomes (developed in consultation with the community) to which ZEALANDIA can contribute:

Wellington will protect and showcase its natural landforms and indigenous ecosystems.

Wellington will be a prime tourist and conference destination, with diverse and changing attractions that fit and highlight Wellington's best features.

A wide range of educational opportunities will be available for Wellingtonians of all ages.

Wellingtonians will enjoy recreation and be amongst the most active in New Zealand.

Wellington City and its amenities will be accessible to all Wellingtonians.

Opportunities for active and passive recreation in Wellington will be diverse, safe, affordable, accessible and attractive.

Wellingtonians will be actively involved in their communities, and work with others to make things happen.

The main principles of the Wellington City draft biodiversity strategy are:

- stronger recognition of the role that people play in biodiversity conservation, and the role that biodiversity plays in people's health and wellbeing
- a new approach to supporting community groups, allowing us to support all groups while increasing their ability to run effective restoration programmes
- larger focus on research and monitoring to support the scientific community and make sure our programmes are managed in the most effective way
- greater emphasis on leadership in the area of urban ecology.

ZEALANDIA's reputation is closely aligned with its contribution to Wellington City, with particular focus on:

- ecological restoration, conservation research, education, and the visitor experience
- relevance to and integration with the community
- advocacy and inspiration for Wellington's environmentally active community
- recognition as an economic driver for Wellington City and the Region
- recognition as an attractor of talent for Wellington
- recognition as a major player in Wellington's reputation as the Natural Capital
- the Council's expectation that ZEALANDIA achieves financial viability and sustainability.

### **3.3 Strategic Framework**

#### **Vision**

In seeking to respond to both our core purpose and to the strategic direction of the Wellington City Council, the Trust Board has identified a vision for the kind of organisation ZEALANDIA needs to be:

- a destination that is loved, valued and visited by locals
- international recognition as a groundbreaking conservation science project and must-do visitor experience
- an essential part of Wellington's natural capital

#### **Goals**

ZEALANDIA has identified five strategic goals to underpin its vision:

1. ZEALANDIA is an internationally recognised centre for ecological restoration, visible engagement with research and science, visitor experience and community involvement
2. ZEALANDIA's visitors are moved, touched and inspired to act on our call to action
3. ZEALANDIA's strategies and reputation are firmly aligned with those of Wellington City, and the people of Wellington love Zealandia as an integral part of the City?
4. ZEALANDIA extends into the backyards of Wellington's residents
5. ZEALANDIA is a financially viable and sustainable business.

#### **Key strategies**

Five key strategies have been developed in order to achieve the five goals above:

1. ZEALANDIA will continue to build both its capability and international reputation as a centre for ecological restoration, visible engagement with research and science, visitor experience and community involvement
2. ZEALANDIA will continue to develop and promote a range of opportunities for visitors to be moved, touched and inspired to act on our call to action
3. ZEALANDIA will extend its conservation, research and education programmes to the backyards of Wellington's residents.
4. ZEALANDIA will visibly align its goals and strategies with those of Wellington City
5. ZEALANDIA will move as quickly as possible to being a financially viable and sustainable aligned business

The following sections outline for each key strategy the:

- rationale
- priority focus area
- key performance indicator(s) for 2015/16
- Zealandia initiatives and 'targeted' outcomes
- a wider set of measures of the success of the initiatives, and
- the expected contribution to Wellington City Council initiatives.

*The full set of Key Performance Indicators is then set out (on page 27) as a scorecard to enable ZEALANDIA management, the Trust Board and the Council to focus on the most important measures of success for 2015/16.*

**Key Strategy 1:**

**Goal**

- ZEALANDIA is an internationally recognised centre for ecological restoration, visible engagement with research and science, visitor experience and community involvement

**Rationale**

**ZEALANDIA will continue to build both its capability and international reputation as a centre for ecological restoration, visible engagement with research and science, visitor experience and community involvement**

Our partnerships are vital to furthering our position as a world leading conservation research centre and work is continuing to develop and strengthen these relationships.

Discussions with Victoria University of Wellington regarding the establishment of a Centre for Science and Society that connects the work of conservation restoration with the broader community, have progressed over the past year and a Concept Document and subsequent draft Memorandum of Agreement for this relationship has been developed. This partnership will increase our research capacity, creating a 'living laboratory' resource for study as well as a centre for citizen science engagement that benefits both the research community and Wellington's residents. We aim to have the Memorandum of Agreement in place by the end of June 2015 and for work to begin in 2015/16.

Research is central to ZEALANDIA's conservation effort. In 2015/16 we will develop a targeted research programme with Victoria University that ensures we proactively engage with the national agenda for conservation restoration and community engagement. To ensure that science and knowledge are seen as an embedded part of ZEALANDIA, it is important the research that we complete is published. We aim to publish key research achievements as part of our 20<sup>th</sup> Anniversary celebrations.

While our primary partnership is with Victoria University in the creation of a centre for science and society and the establishment of a Strategic Scientific Steering group, we will continue to have a relationship with other tertiary organisations both national and international as well as other research organisations such as Landcare Research.

One aspect of the partnership with Victoria University is ZEALANDIA's commitment to establishing a "Thinker-in-Residence" at the sanctuary; a position and responsibility that will be larger than just the concerns of the sanctuary. This will provide numerous other science and education related opportunities for our partners in the tertiary and public engagement spheres.

It is also the intention of the partnership to broaden the pursuit of peoples' connection to nature and to create a hub where this can be explored, experimented and examined. The planned multi-functional space within ZEALANDIA's Visitor Centre will also act as a lecture theatre, incubator, function and conference space as well as an area for education activities and entertainment.

While this work will not be completed in 2015/16, we do intend to take significant first steps towards an initiative which will form a defining part of ZEALANDIA's second generation contribution for Wellington.

**Priority areas and key performance indicators for 2015/16**

**1. Conservation success factors:**

- Maintain and restore viable populations of indigenous plants and animals in accordance with the Restoration Strategy
- Manage the welfare of species held in captivity appropriately to ensure successful breeding outcomes

- Maintain the integrity of the valley through effective monitoring and management of threats (plant and animal pests), and quarantine and contingency planning.
2. Establish a centre for in partnership with Victoria University of Wellington:
- Agree to appoint key staff
  - Publication of key research outcomes
  - Appoint a thinker in residence

**ZEALANDIA's Strategic Initiatives and Targeted Outcomes**

ZEALANDIA's Strategic Initiatives	Targeted Outcome
1. ZEALANDIA is recognised internationally as a centre for ecological restoration and conservation action	Formal Agreement with Victoria University of Wellington to establish a presence at ZEALANDIA,
	Recruitment of key staff, jointly funded by Victoria University and ZEALANDIA.
	Development of a research programme by June 2016
	Publication of key research outcomes
	Strategic Scientific Steering Group established and functioning by 2016, which nominates resident thinker

**ZEALANDIA's Contribution to relevant Wellington City Council Initiatives**

WCC Strategic Initiative	ZEALANDIA's Contribution to Key Outcomes of WCC Initiative
Our Living City Work Programme	<i>Growing and enjoying our natural capital Transforming our economy and reducing impact Environmental leadership</i>
Our Capital Spaces Framework	<i>Protect our birds, nature, streams and landscape Contribute to Wellington's outstanding quality of life Doing it together</i>
Wellington Regional Economic Development Agency	<i>Encourage links between Wellington's tertiary education and research institutions and the business community</i>
Draft Biodiversity Strategy & Action Plan	<i>Making Wellington more liveable Creating a stronger sense of place, where Wellington recognises and protects significant features of its natural heritage More actively engaged, where a collaborative participatory approach is pursued for environmental kaitiakitanga (guardianship) by information sharing and establishing partnerships Wellington is a "living city", one that protects and restores indigenous biodiversity and celebrates nature.</i>

**Key Strategy 2**

**Goal**

- ZEALANDIA’s visitors are moved, touched and inspired to act on our call to action

**Rationale**

**ZEALANDIA will continue to develop and promote a range of opportunities for visitors to be moved, touched and inspired to act on our call to action**

Through our various touch points with our community- conservation, research, education and tourism – our annual programme will work on a ‘call to action’ which asks people to question current human behaviours and offer them alternative ways of thinking about their relationship to nature.

In 2015/16 we will continue our annual public programme that defines ZEALANDIA as a leading conservation restoration site and determine key messages that will be consistent with current global challenges. By giving visitors an understanding of ZEALANDIA’s goals in the urban environment and the value of the work that we do, they are more likely to engage with us and act as ambassadors for our message.

This level of engagement will encourage more people to visit the sanctuary and spread the message of the significant role ZEALANDIA plays in restoring our natural heritage to Wellington city and beyond. It will also encourage people to initiate action in other local, national or international restoration work.

**Priority area and key performance indicator(s) for 2015/16**

**Reputation and influence**

- Identity statement for Zealandia in the urban environment and ‘call for action’ agreed by the Board by October 2015

**Visitor numbers**

- 95,947 separate visitations (noting that 2015/16 is a year where Sirocco will be at ZEALANDIA and this will generate a significant number of visits in the usually quiet winter period)

**Visitor experience**

- 93% of visitors are satisfied with their experience

**ZEALANDIA’s Strategic Initiatives and Targeted Outcomes**

ZEALANDIA’s Strategic Initiatives	Targeted Outcomes
2. Define a clear identity for ZEALANDIA in the urban environment	Identity statement for Zealandia in the urban environment and ‘call for action’ agreed by the Board by [date] Key messages used consistently throughout our programme
3. Improve visitor experience through the articulation and presentation of our story	Annual visitor experience programme developed/enhanced (more detail?)
	Professional development programme for staff/volunteers in telling our story [developed and] implemented throughout the year
	Complete signage projects that tell the story of the sanctuary
	Monthly Kids Trail and Children’s discovery area established part of programme
	Plan for matauranga Maori focus developed and implementation underway by June 2016
	Accessibility progressively improved and recognised.
	Animation of various exhibition spaces throughout the Visitor Centre to tell our story via exhibitions and annual programming events by [date]

4. Increase presence/profile within our community	1,500 people reached via attendance at community events.
	ZEALANDIA is represented and visible at five or more city events

These initiatives are designed both to increase visitor/visitation numbers and visitor satisfaction and city residents' awareness of Zealandia. (These are measured in section 6.1 Non Financial Performance Measures).

**ZEALANDIA's Contribution to relevant Wellington City Council Initiatives**

WCC Strategic Initiative	ZEALANDIA's Contribution to Key Outcomes of WCC Initiative
Our Living City Work Programme	<i>Growing and enjoying our natural capital. Environmental leadership</i>
Our Capital Spaces Framework	<i>Contribute to Wellington's outstanding quality of life. Doing it together.</i>
Wellington Regional Economic Development Agency	<i>Destination Wellington.</i>
Draft Biodiversity Strategy & Action Plan	<i>Creating a stronger sense of place, where Wellington recognises and protects significant features of its natural heritage</i>

**Key Strategy 3**

- **ZEALANDIA will extend its conservation, research and education programmes to the backyards of Wellington’s residents**

**Goal**

- **ZEALANDIA extends into the backyards of Wellington’s residents**

**Rationale**

A significant outcome of the conservation success of ZEALANDIA is demonstrated by the native birdlife spilling over the sanctuary’s perimeter fence and into the city. ZEALANDIA’s ongoing success is essential to Wellington as the ongoing source of this native wildlife.

In 2015/16, our goal is to help native birdlife successfully establish outside the sanctuary by helping improve security beyond the perimeter fence. We will educate our visitors on how to make their backyard a safe place for our native birdlife, and work with Wellington City Council and other community groups to successfully control animal pests, thereby creating safer areas for these species to spread to.

We will actively engage with schools and communities by taking the messages and means to start their own backyard restorations. This will be done in collaboration with existing programmes and organisations working in isolation. Steps have already been made through Nature Connections and WWF to expand the reach and relevance of our resources.

**Priority area and key performance indicator(s) for 2015/16**

**Reputation and influence**

- ZEALANDIA recognised as the “go to” centre for information on community restoration information

**Community engagement**

- Increased participation in Outreach Programme

**Civic pride**

- Increased recognition for ZEALANDIA as a centre for conservation action

**ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiatives and Targeted Outcomes**

ZEALANDIA’s Strategic Initiatives	Targeted Outcome
5. ZEALANDIA extends to residents’ backyards	Community groups sign up for ZEALANDIA Outreach programme
	City residents report increasing numbers of native birds in their gardens.
	Education materials on how to attract native fauna and keep them safe (eg. lizard garden, traps etc) available on website
	Increased number of households actively managing pests in their backyards.

**ZEALANDIA’s Contribution to Relevant Wellington City Council Initiatives**

WCC Strategic Initiative	ZEALANDIA’s Contribution to Key Outcomes of WCC Initiative
Our Living City Work Programme	<i>Growing and enjoying our natural capital. Environmental leadership</i>
Our Capital Spaces Framework	<i>Protect our birds, nature, streams and landscape Contribute to Wellington’s outstanding quality of life Doing it together</i>

<p>Draft Biodiversity Strategy &amp; Action Plan</p>	<p><i>Making Wellington more liveable</i>  <i>Wellington's natural environment is accessible to all</i>  <i>Creating a stronger sense of place, where Wellington recognises and protects significant features of its natural heritage</i>  <i>More actively engaged, where a collaborative participatory approach is pursued for environmental kaitiakitanga (guardianship) by information sharing and establishing partnerships</i>  <i>Wellington is a "living city", one that protects and restores indigenous biodiversity and celebrates nature</i></p>
<p>Accessible Wellington Action Plan</p>	<p><i>Promoting Inclusion</i></p>

**Key Strategy 4**

**Goal**

- ZEALANDIA’s strategies and reputation are firmly aligned with those of Wellington City, and the people of Wellington love Zealandia as an integral part of the City.

**Rationale**

**ZEALANDIA will visibly align its goals and strategies with those of Wellington City**

In the 2014 Nielsen Quality of Life Survey, 92% of Wellington residents said that the city is a great place to live. The survey demonstrated that rankings for quality of life and city pride are greater in Wellington than the national average.

ZEALANDIA is a significant contributor to this quality of life. The availability of a 225ha sanctuary just minutes from the centre of a capital city is not only unique but provides many benefits to residents. It provides a place to connect with our native flora and fauna and to educate our children on the importance of protecting our natural heritage. The sanctuary is a place for our students to conduct research and provides all Wellingtonians with the opportunity to engage in a practical restoration project via membership and volunteering. It is also a place where people come to exercise and feel safe. Crucially, it is the source of the native birdlife that is spreading throughout the city so that the benefits of the sanctuary are shared with all Wellington residents regardless of whether they visit.

Conversations are ongoing with Te Papa and we are also reinvigorating our relationships with other conservation sites through ‘Nature Connections’ in which we are lead partner with Wellington Zoo (a Wellington City Council ...).

Through our deepening relationship with Council and other partners, and as we move beyond the fence and strengthen ties with our community, we will increasingly align our reputation with the City. Our goal is to have the people of Wellington love ZEALANDIA as they love the city.

**Priority area and key performance indicator(s) for 2015/16**

**ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiatives and Targeted Outcomes**

ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiative	Targeted Outcome
6. Align ZEALANDIA’s reputation with Wellington City	ZEALANDIA’S 20th Anniversary is celebrated by the community
	Increased visibility through our Outreach programme
	Regular, proactive release of good news stories

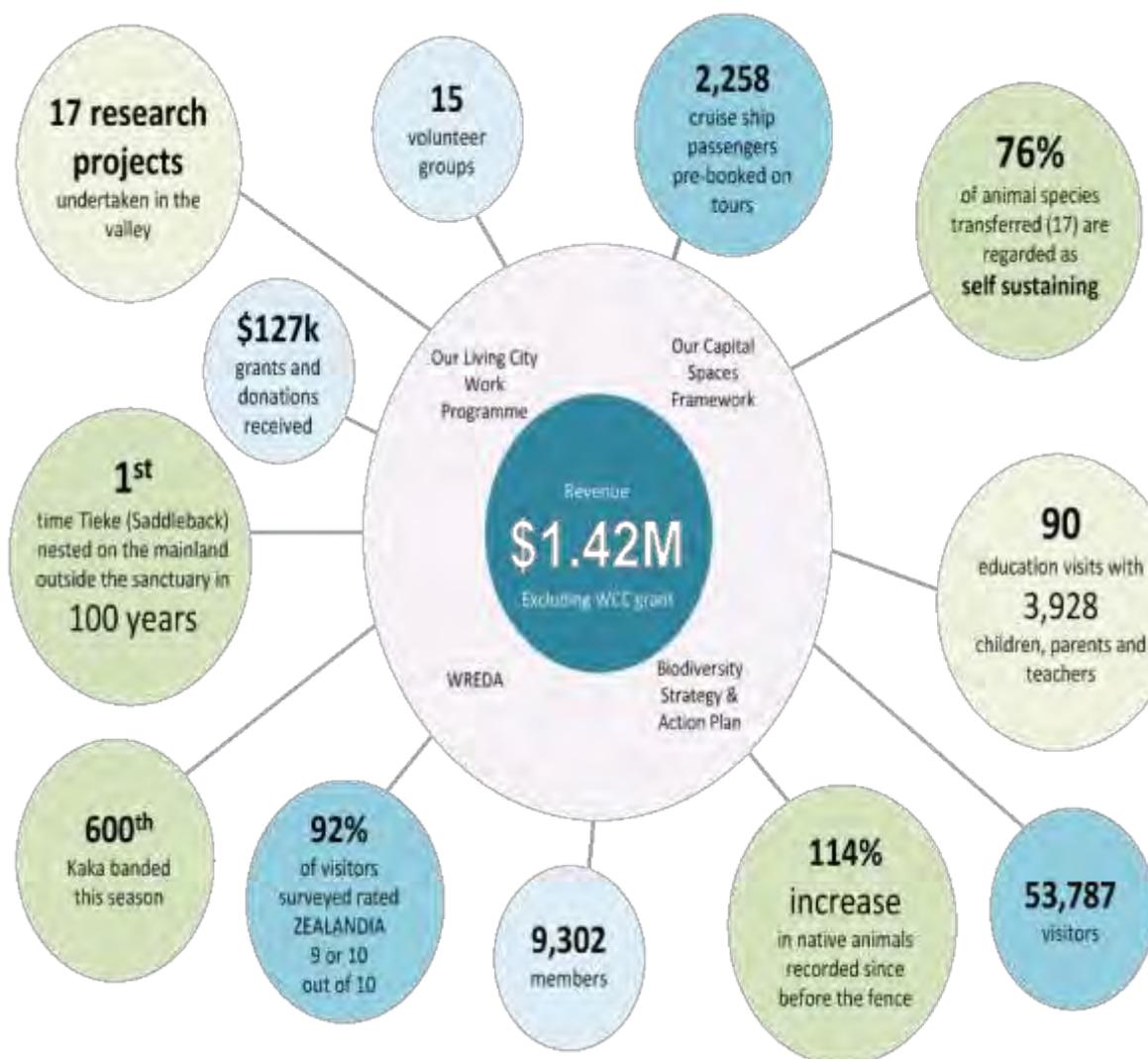
**ZEALANDIA’s Contribution to relevant Wellington City Council Initiatives**

WCC Strategic Initiative	ZEALANDIA’s Contribution to Key Outcomes of WCC Initiative
Our Living City Work Programme	<i>Growing and enjoying our natural capital.</i>
Our Capital Spaces Framework	<i>Contribute to Wellington’s outstanding quality of life. Doing it together.</i>
Wellington Regional Economic Development Agency	<i>Destination Wellington.</i>
Draft Biodiversity Strategy & Action Plan	<i>Making Wellington more liveable. Wellington’s natural environment is more accessible to all for a wide range of social and recreational opportunities.</i>

	<p><i>Creating a stronger sense of place, where Wellington recognises and protects significant features of its natural heritage.</i></p> <p><i>Healthier, with the protection of land and water based ecosystems to sustain natural processes.</i></p> <p><i>Wellington is a "living city", one that protects and restores indigenous biodiversity and celebrates nature.</i></p>
Accessible Wellington Action Plan	<p><i>Promoting inclusion.</i></p> <p><i>All Wellingtonians can use and enjoy open spaces for a wide range of social and recreational purposes.</i></p>

**Zealandia' current contribution to Wellington City is depicted in the following diagram.**

*Figures for 2014/15 year as at end of January 2015*



**Key Strategy 5**

**Goal**

- ZEALANDIA is a financially viable and sustainable business.

**Rationale**

**ZEALANDIA will move as quickly as possible to being a financially viable and sustainable aligned business**

ZEALANDIA is focused on becoming a sustainable business across every aspect of our organisation. This goal is central to every strategy identified as a priority for 2015/16.

ZEALANDIA has been through a significant period of change with the organisational realignment that was completed in October 2014. The realignment was challenging with a large number of staff changes and the transformation of the organisation structure was a steep learning curve. Despite these challenges, the organisation has continued to perform over this period and as new staff settle into their positions, the benefits are beginning to show.

Financial sustainability is key for the organisation and ZEALANDIA is committed to meeting the budget set for 2015/16. This will be achieved by careful monitoring of expenditure and the continued development of diverse revenue streams.

Included in these revenue streams is a continued emphasis on donations and third party funding. A systematic approach to grant applications has been applied in 2014/15 and this is already having an impact on grants received. This approach will continue in 2015/16. Discussions are also underway to set up a pass-through agency in the United States to allow our annual 3,500 American visitors to donate to the sanctuary. Donor care will continue to be a focus and a donor conversion programme will be implemented, transforming one off donors to ongoing monthly givers.

A broad perspective is required for ZEALANDIA to become a sustainable business. Alongside financial management, the success of the organisation relies on careful future planning of the sanctuary landscape. The long term vision for the valley has been outlined in the Sanctuary Blueprint project and 2015/16 will see the first phase of this project implemented.

Success also relies on ZEALANDIA having a strong foundation and being equipped to efficiently carry out its work. This requires reliable equipment and clear systems, policies and procedure to provide a stable platform for the organisation.

**Priority area and key performance indicator(s) for 2015/16**

A financial surplus of \$128,000 in 2015/16

Commercial revenue equating to 50% of overall budget.

Membership revenue of \$290,000 in 2015/16

**ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiatives and Targeted Outcomes**

ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiative	Targeted Outcome
7. Diversify revenue streams	Commercial partnerships established with organisations that are aligned with ZEALANDIA's vision (can you specify target value?)
	Donor conversion programme underway/ implemented?
	Corporate sponsorship programme underway/implemented
	An improved premium product offering

<b>ZEALANDIA Strategic Initiative</b>	<b>Targeted Outcome</b>
	A Corporate Team Building product developed
	An event programme for Rata café established
	Refurbishment of the top floor exhibition to create a multi-functional space that will provide greater venue hire options (progressed or completed?)
8. Implement the Sanctuary Blueprint project	Phase 1 valley enhancements of the Sanctuary Blueprint project completed
9. Improve organisational capability	IT capability across the organisation is improved with the server software upgrade and rollout of upgraded computers and software to staff
	Automation of membership renewal process
	Website upgrade and improved online booking system
	Point of sale system reviewed and updated
	Options for improved CRM database investigated
	Full review of organisational policy and procedures completed

**ZEALANDIA's Contribution to relevant Wellington City Council Initiatives**

<b>WCC Strategic Initiative</b>	<b>ZEALANDIA's Contribution to Key Outcomes of WCC Initiative</b>
Our Living City Work Programme	<i>Growing and enjoying our natural capital, Transforming our economy and reducing impact.</i>
Our Capital Spaces Framework	<i>Contribute to Wellington's outstanding quality of life. Doing it together.</i>
Wellington Regional Economic Development Agency	<i>Attract, retain and grow investment, business and talent, to create jobs and to support economic growth in Wellington region. Destination Wellington.</i>

#### 4. Ten Year Outlook

In order to deliver our 10 Year Strategic Plan, our efforts are focused on a five point plan as detailed below, which is in line with WCC's own strategic direction.

##### **Focus 1: Create a Financial Surplus to Allow Investment**

At the core of the 10-Year Strategic Plan is the clear goal for ZEALANDIA to become a sustainable social enterprise, blending the best of its community contribution and connection with well honed professional input. To make this shift we need capacity as well as capability. Some financial head room will allow us to invest in those things that matter and that directly contribute to the success of the sanctuary, namely:

- Our People – the experience we give our visitors and members, volunteers and staff, our investment in our conservation research, education and learning; and
- Our Place – the valley, the wildlife, our facilities, equipment, the exhibition and our administrative systems and services.

With this in mind, a full diagnostic has been completed of our budgets and a programme has been developed based around four cost/revenue centres:

- **Sanctuary Experience**
- **Sanctuary Enterprises**
- **Sanctuary Care and Preservation**
- **Sanctuary Corporate Services**

Each of these four programmes has a dedicated manager, focused on driving the success of their area in both revenue raising and expenditure containment. The creation of the Strategic Management Team (SMT), completed in 2014, has enabled us to respond effectively to the challenges of managing a social enterprise.

##### **Focus 2: Ensure the Organisation is fit for Purpose**

We have already completed a review of our financial and IT systems, a record management project and HR realignment. The ZEALANDIA Way project (defining our ethos and culture) and the Valley Blueprint phase 1 (redefining activity areas within the sanctuary) are near completion.

##### **Focus 3: Invest Wisely**

The 10-year vision relies on the development of a strategic programme developed by the Trust with management. This big picture view will allow us to invest both our time and finances wisely, in the areas that are most critical to the success of ZEALANDIA.

This strategic programme includes a fundraising strategy, divided into first and second tier priorities. The first tier priorities are focused on scene setting, engaging with currently active members, donor care, database management and developing relationships with our existing supporters. The second tier priorities are broadening our wider philanthropic engagement, identifying specific events including annual member appeals, grants/bequests and developing relationships with new sponsors.

##### **Focus 4: Partnerships**

The strong partnerships that ZEALANDIA has developed are a vital part of our 10-year plan. Our relationship with Victoria University is progressing and we believe this partnership will connect people to nature for the benefit of both, creating a better Wellington for us all.

Conversations are ongoing with Te Papa and we are also reinvigorating our relationships with other conservation sites through Nature Connections in which we are lead partner with Wellington Zoo. We have secured some new business arrangements with ZIP Ltd and Tuatara Brewing; Forest and Bird, Department of Conservation and Parks and Gardens, as well as Volunteers Wellington.

Page 22

**Focus 5: Open for Business**

For ZEALANDIA to succeed, we need to be responsive, it needs to be easy to do business with us and it needs to be easy to visit the sanctuary. A recent membership survey resulted in an immediate implementation to a paperless option for renewals, marks a new era of responsiveness, proving our commitment to meeting the needs of our community. There is more to come.

In keeping with this, we reviewed our opening hours in response to nature, considering longer hours in summer, shorter hours in winter and the early opening hours this summer has been warmly received. We also have plans to diversify our revenue streams with an increase focus on conferences, corporate groups and consultation services.

We have a lot to do. We aim to be a world-leader in the space of conservation restoration. We are outward-looking in our aspirations and with our endeavours reaching beyond the fence. Ours are lofty goals which we can achieve by focusing the organisation on strategic priorities and with the support and enthusiasm of our staff, volunteers and members, along with our active partnerships with other Wellington organisations. This is an exciting time to be a part of the ZEALANDIA journey.

## **5. Nature and Scope of Activities**

### **5.1 Core Business**

- Undertake conservation activities to restore the valley's ecosystems and processes as closely as practicable to their presumed pre-human condition, assuming the dams blocking the stream are representative of natural stochastic events that may have had the same effect. Integral to this is to increase natural biodiversity representative of the Wellington Ecological District in the sanctuary and beyond the perimeter fence, as well as to support national species recovery programmes and restoration work elsewhere where possible.
- Undertake and support research that will increase our understanding about the flora, fauna, and their habitats and ecological processes that threaten or sustain them, and that can inform and benefit restoration initiatives elsewhere in New Zealand. The use of the sanctuary as a place of learning and research is encouraged.
- Contribute to conservation through our work at ZEALANDIA, advocacy and through our engagement with the community. We seek and foster community support and participation.
- Maintain a secure native wildlife sanctuary in the City of Wellington.
- Provide visitor experience and education programmes to increase their understanding of New Zealand's natural heritage, and the conservation challenges and successes here and elsewhere.
- Provide facilities for engaging visitor experience and recreation.

## 6. Performance Measurements

### 6.1 Non-financial Performance Measures

	2014-15 Target	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Visitation	91,400	95,947 <sup>1</sup>	93,600	96,500
Members (Individuals)	10,000	10,200	10,400	10,600
Volunteers	>400	>400	>400	>430
Percentage of Satisfied Visitors	92%	93%	93%	95%
City-residents' awareness	86%	87%	88%	90%

<sup>1</sup> Note that 2015/16 is a year where Sirocco will be at ZEALANDIA and this will generate a significant number of visits in the usually quiet winter period.

A measure of visitor awareness of, and response to, our call to action will be developed with 2015/16 as the baseline year.

Quarter target	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Visitation	18,307	26,346	29,038	22,256	95,947	93,600	96,500
Education visits (LEOTC, tertiary, early childhood, school holiday programme, and outreach)	2,197	2,088	1,585	2,508	8,378	8,500	8,6500

The Trust notes Council's request to be presented with a richer understanding of visitor demographics and education related usage of the sanctuary.

The visitor information that Council has requested is collected by the Trust and can readily be provided. Details such as where visitors reside and how they heard about us, are collected at the admissions desk. Member visits are also recorded daily and tracked on a weekly basis.

A member survey was recently conducted which provided invaluable information about visitor patterns, satisfaction and preferences. This survey will be completed annually and the findings will be presented to WCC.

ZEALANDIA also uses GetSmart, an online visitor survey that is used by approximately 10 nature based attractions across Wellington, which provides valuable benchmarking information. This survey collects information on the reason for visiting, duration of visits, visitor demographics and satisfaction ratings.

A summary and analysis of this information will be provided to WCC on a quarterly basis, to provide the richer picture of visitation to the sanctuary.

Detailed information of education visits is also recorded. The trust will provided a summary and analysis of this information to WCC on a quarterly basis. This quarterly report will include updates on programme, community outreach initiatives and outline the strategies in place to continually develop this area of the business.

**6.2 Financial Performance Measures**

Measure	2014-15 Target	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Full cost per visitor (including WCC costs)	\$16.52	\$16.28	\$16.91	\$16.51
Average subsidy per visit (total WCC operating grant/all visitors)	\$9.57	\$9.12	\$9.35	\$9.07
Average revenue per visit (excludes Council & Government grants)	\$27.46	\$25.90	\$25.96	\$25.81
Non-Council Donations/Funding	\$150k	\$250k	\$272	\$272

**6.3 Conservation Measures**

The Trust notes Council's request to consider alternative methods of recording and presenting conservation measures and agrees that more meaningful reporting on these KPIs is required.

Measures have been set based around three critical success factors:

**Success Factor 1:** Maintain and restore viable populations of indigenous plants and animals in accordance with the Restoration Strategy.

**Success Factor 2:** Manage the welfare of species held in captivity appropriately to ensure successful breeding outcomes.

**Success Factor 3:** Maintain the integrity of the valley through effective monitoring and management of threats (plant and animal pests), and quarantine and contingency planning.

Conservation Measures	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Restore missing species to the wild in accordance with the Restoration Strategy			
Number of new animal species transferred	1	1	1
No. animal species being actively managed (supplementary fed, nestbox management, banding etc) assuming 1 new species transferred/annum	9	10	9
No. animal species being monitored (assuming 1 new species transferred/annum)	12	12	12
Percentage of transferred animal species (17) regarded as self-sustaining (assuming ongoing management)	76%	76%	76%
Improve the population status of nationally threatened species present			
Number of threatened species present (excluding species held for advocacy or temporarily eg. takahe, kakapo)	4	4	4
Number of threatened species actively managed	3	3	3
Percentage of threatened species actively managed that increase or are regarded as self-sustaining	3	3	3

Conservation Measures	2015-16	2016-17	2017-18
Manage species held for captive breeding purposes to ensure they remain healthy and breed successfully			
No. species of held for captive breeding	2	2	2
No. species breeding successfully	2	2	2
Monitor animal pest status, control mice & successfully respond to any incursions			
Mice maintained at levels below or similar to previous years (abundance per100 trap nights)	<10	<10	<10
No. invasive mammalian species actively searched for (eg by audits)	7	7	7
Percentage incursions successfully eradicated	100	100	100
No. biosecurity incursions	0	0	0
Monitor plant pest status and reduce distribution of environmental weeds (currently 123) within and near the fence perimeter			
No. species actively controlled or surveyed	44	44	44
No. species where control has achieved a decline to low levels of infestation	52	52	56

## **7. Board's Approach to Governance**

The Karori Sanctuary Trust (KST) is governed by a Trust Deed, first executed in 1995 and most recently updated in December 2012.

### **7.1 Relationship with Council**

The Board of the KST has two Council appointed members (including Chair) and three members appointed by the Guardians of the Trust.

The Wellington City Council (WCC) is a strategic partner, trustee appointee, a major funder and landlord of the KST. As part of the strengthened partnership model a new governance structure for the KST that clarifies the relative roles of the Council, the Guardians and Trust board was implemented in December 2012.

The existing Funding Deed between the Council and the Trust sets out WCC's reporting and monitoring regime and the conditions for major transactions requiring WCC approval. The Trust will report quarterly to WCC through the Environment Committee on the agreed measures, which will include a Statement of Financial Performance, Statement of Financial Position and Cash Flow Statement.

The Trust's audited accounts will be presented to WCC by due date. The Trust will continue to recognise the Council as a principle funder.

The principles governing the relationship between the Trust and WCC are:

- Council will be provided with access to information it requests.
- A "no surprises" approach.
- Work in a collaborative and constructive manner recognising each other's viewpoints and respecting differences.
- Act towards each other honestly and always in good faith.
- Communicate with each other openly, promptly and in a clear and timely manner.
- Recognise the accountabilities that each have to the other and to those for the benefit of whom services are provide.

### **7.2 Board Membership**

The members of the Karori Sanctuary Trust are as follows.

<b>Trustee</b>	<b>Term Expires</b>
<b>Denise Church</b> (Chair) Appointed by Council	January 2016
<b>Phillip Meyer</b> Appointed by Council	January 2016
<b>Charles Daugherty</b> Appointed by Guardians	January 2016
<b>Pam Fuller</b> Appointed by Guardians	January 2016
<b>Steven Thompson</b> Appointed by Guardians	January 2016

The KST Trust Deed, that outlines the roles of the Trust and the Guardians was updated and signed in December 2012. All trustees may receive an honorarium set by the Council and Guardians.

The Trust Board shall meet no less frequently than eight times a year.

The Chief Executive attends all meetings accompanied by her/his management team as required.

Under the terms of the Trust Deed, the Board is required to have an Audit and Risk Committee. Members of the Audit and Risk Committee are Denise Church, Phillip Meyer and Iain Craig.

Other than the Audit & Risk Committee, the Board does not consider further formal committees are required. However, Trustees will contribute knowledge and skills across a range of work areas over the 2015/16 year and may from time to time contribute to working groups established by the Chief Executive.

### **7.3 Board Performance**

The Chair and the Board as a whole will participate in an annual review of their performance as follows:

- the Board as a whole by the Board;
- Individual Board members by the Board, through the Chair; and
- the Chair by the Board.

The method/standards used to assess the performance will be based on the standards as issued by the NZ Institute of Directors adapted for the KST. From these reviews, development needs and any other actions required to ensure best practice governance and performance standards will be determined and implemented.

The Board undertook an externally supported review in November 2014 and will revisit follow on actions from the review in mid-2015.

A report will be provided to WCC Chief Executive outlining the form the review took and the outcomes. The review will be completed by 30 September 2015.

The Board will undertake an annual review of the Chief Executive's performance.

The Council is a strategic partner and major funder of the KST. The Funding Deed between the Council and the Trust sets out the Council's reporting and monitoring regime and the conditions for major transactions requiring Council approval.

### **7.4 Annual General Meeting**

As per established practice the KST holds an Annual General Meeting (AGM) each year of members to discuss the Annual Report and current strategies. The Board establishes a date for the AGM in consultation with the Guardians. In 2014 the AGM was held on 19<sup>th</sup> October and was well attended.

The AGM in 2015 will be held in October.

## **8. Organisational Health, Capability and Risk Assessment**

### **8.1 Organisation Health and Capability**

Our aim is deliver our work by attracting and retaining talented and capable staff and through strategic partnerships. Critical to our success is having experienced and motivated staff. Training and professional development for staff will continue to be a priority for 2015/2016.

We will continue to work closely with Victoria University, WCC (e.g. shared services initiative) and other partners to enable to build the capability and credibility of the organisation.

### **8.2 Executive Team**

Hilary Beaton	Chief Executive Officer
Vacant	Corporate Services Manager*
Ian Phillips	Commercial Development Manager
Raewyn Empson	Conservation, Research, Learning and Experience Manager
Russ Drewry	Sanctuary Care and Preservation Manager

\*Currently, engaged a Business Analyst to assist with financial management systems re-design.

### **8.3 Environmental Practices**

The KST is committed to and incorporates sustainable practices. ZEALANDIA is awarded the Qualmark's Enviro Gold accreditation.

### **8.4 Health & Safety Legislation**

KST has robust health and safety systems in place and a detailed Emergency Procedure Action Plan.

The Trust has been making provisions to transition and prepare for the expected changes in Health and Safety legislation which is expected to come in to effect in the second half of 2015. In response to these anticipated changes, the KST is progressing the following initiatives:

- Changing the reporting information and structure leading to increased Board involvement and awareness;
- Identifying the organisation's officers and making them aware of their due diligence responsibilities;
- Looking at other the Persons Conducting a Business or Undertaking (PCBUs) that the Trust deals with and requiring more robust evidence of their suitability and pertinent qualifications before engaging them (or partnering with them in joint activities);
- Increasing institutional knowledge in Health and safety matters through training and attendance of seminars; and
- Giving employees and volunteers a more inclusive role in the identification and management of health and safety matters.

This process will continue to evolve as the legislation is published and the new guidelines and requirements become clearer and we will continue to foster a collaborative and proactive approach both internally and externally with our partners.

### **8.5 Asset Management Plan**

The KST is focused on ongoing, prudent asset management. In 2015/16 we will undertake a review of all our assets and develop a robust Asset Management Plan. This plan will fully account for all ongoing costs associated with the management of our assets and further inform our future planning. The Trust will work constructively with WCC to take advantage of Council’s capability in asset management.

**8.6 Business Continuity Plan**

The KST will review its Business Continuity Plan in 2015/16 and will seek endorsement of the plan by WCC’s Manager Risk Assurance.

**8.7 Risk Management**

The KST has a robust risk management process which is monitored by an Audit and Risk committee. This committee reports to the Board. The KST has robust fit-for-purpose systems and processes and financial delegations.

The KST has insurance policies for Material Damage, Business Interruption, Combined Liability (Public, Employer, Statutory, Fidelity Guarantee and Lawsafe) and Trustee Liability.

The Trust regularly reviews all known and potential risks using standard risk methodology and has robust health and safety systems in place. Risk ratings are determined using the following matrix.

		Impact			
		Minor (1)	Moderate (2)	Major (3)	Severe (4)
Likelihood	Almost Certain (5)	Medium	High	High	High
	Likely (4)	Medium	Medium	High	High
	Possible (3)	Medium	Medium	Medium	High
	Unlikely (2)	Low	Low	Medium	Medium
	Very Unlikely (1)	Low	Low	Low	Medium

For medium and high risks, control systems and management strategies are established, as appropriate. The objective is to reduce the residual risk to the point where all cost-effective mitigations have been put in place. The Audit and Risk committee is responsible for reviewing these strategies. The Trust’s management is responsible for their implementation. There are four response types, depending on the risk assessment and cost effectiveness considerations. These are:

- **Avoidance:** To eliminate the conditions that allow the risk to be present at all, often by changing or stopping the activity.
- **Acceptance:** To acknowledge the risk’s existence, but to take no pre-emptive action to resolve it, except for the possible development of contingency plans should the risk event come to pass.
- **Mitigation:** To minimise the probability of a risk’s occurrence or the impact of the risk should it occur.
- **Deflection:** To transfer the risk (in whole or part to another organisation, individual, or entity – such as through insurance).

This section of identified risks and their ratings relate to the performance of 2014/2015 financial year.

Risks	Likelihood Rating	Impact Rating	Overall Rating	Control System/ Mitigation Strategies
Failure to achieve budget as set in 2014/15 SOI.	Possible	Severe	High	Budget control; regular reviews; monthly reforecasting of end of year result. Expenditure control.
Staff fraud.	Possible	Severe	High	Policy and procedures in place that cover delegations, signatures, cash handling etc. Code of Conduct in place. Audit- review.
Commercial revenues not achieved (membership, admission, retail, cafe/functions etc).	Likely	Major	High	Regular review (weekly). Review of trends and actions. Addressing early signs immediately. New programmes/initiatives introduced.
Significant site incident causing harm or death to staff or visitors.	Unlikely	Severe	Medium	A comprehensive health and safety plan is in place and regularly reviewed. H&S KPIs established to encourage early reporting of potential hazards. Hazard Register is in place and regularly reviewed. Clear communication to visitors of safety rules. Clear communication to staff and volunteers. Event management process.
Failure to maintain its position as one of the leading fenced sanctuaries resulting in lack of credibility and reduced visitor numbers.	Possible	Major	Medium	Ensure competent staff. Ensure conservation work is not compromised. Proactively maintaining a wide network of experts and partners. Relationship with stakeholders. Acknowledging the development of a number of new Sanctuaries around NZ and highlighting the work we are doing.
Staff experience health and safety issues due to current accommodation.	Possible	Major	Medium	A comprehensive health and safety plan is in place and regularly reviewed and action taken. WCC funding for renovations to the admin building at 31 Walapu Road has been received.
Failure to develop self sustaining populations of wildlife resulting in reduced fauna visibility and/or reduced visitor numbers.	Possible	Major	Medium	Ensure competent staff. Ensure conservation work is not compromised. Proactively maintain a wide network of experts and partners to assist.

Risks	Likelihood Rating	Impact Rating	Overall Rating	Control System/ Mitigation Strategies
Biosecurity breach, eco terrorism resulting in significant loss of wildlife, unexpected costs and loss of credibility if fail to detect in a timely manner.	Possible	Major	Medium	Ensure robust biosecurity strategy and programme. Proactively maintain a wide network of experts and partners to assist. Develop process to respond in a timely manner. Annual Pest and Weed control programs are in place. Operations gate has been secured with a padlock as an interim measure. Investigating installing card access on the gate as a long term measure.
Fire, earthquake, illnesses, resulting in significant loss of wildlife, unexpected costs, closure for long period.	Possible	Major	Medium	Emergency plan in place to deal with natural disaster. Business continuity plan has been developed. Proactively maintaining a wide network of experts and partners to assist. Ensure adequate insurance cover.
Potential legal issues which may affect the Trust's reputation and generate additional costs.	Possible	Major	Medium	Incidents reported to Board.
Loss of key staff.	Likely	Moderate	Medium	Training plans and opportunities being offered.
Policy and procedural failure.	Likely	Moderate	Medium	Policies in place reviewed yearly (or/and when relevant). Align with legislation
IT infrastructure loss and failure.	Possible	Moderate	Medium	Back up provided by Datacom over the weekend. Server monitored remotely by Datacom to resolve any issues.
Loss of wildlife due to disease, inbreeding depression, climate change.	Possible	Moderate	Medium	Ensure processes are in place for maintaining hygiene and monitoring of population health for prevention/early detection of disease again where practical early detection. Plan for enhancing genetic diversity if feasible (not always).
Failure to maintain relationships with key stakeholders resulting in loss of credibility and/or loss of support.	Possible	Major	Medium	Ensure strong stakeholder engagement.
Negative activists campaigning for local government support to be withdrawn, or threaten to undermine the work done at ZEALANDIA by acts of vandalism.	Possible	Moderate	Medium	A robust communications plan and regular 'good news' stories publicised. Accurate and timely reporting of our achievements to WCC.

Risks	Likelihood Rating	Impact Rating	Overall Rating	Control System/ Mitigation Strategies
Board involvement in operational/executive matters compromises governance/independent oversight.	Likely	Minor	Medium	The Board is to remain aware of this risk and ensure where one Board member has operational input, the other members will maintain the role of independent oversight. The Board's involvement in operational matters is to end by June 2015.

**9. Additional Information**

**9.1 Response to other specific Letter of Expectation matters (if applicable)**

Not applicable.

**9.2 Ratio of Shareholders Funds to Total Assets**

Please refer to the Balance Sheet included in the Accounting policies.

**9.3 Estimate of Amount Intended for Distribution**

The Karori Sanctuary Trust is a not-for-profit organisation and registered charity and does not make a distribution to the Settler.

**9.4 Acquisition Procedures**

The Trustees have no intention of subscribing for, purchasing or otherwise acquiring shares in any other company or any organisation.

**9.5 Activities for which the Board seeks Compensation from a Local Authority**

Total funding from WCC in 2014/15 is \$875k. The development of the Trust's 10 year sustainable business plan anticipates as a baseline the continuation of the current level of funding.

**9.6 Estimate of Commercial Value of Shareholders Investment**

Not applicable.

## Appendix A: Accounting Policies

### BASIS OF REPORTING

#### a) Basis of Reporting

The financial statements presented here are for the reporting entity, the Karori Sanctuary Trust. The Trust is a charitable trust registered under the Charities Act 2005, established to develop a secure native wildlife sanctuary in the Karori Reservoir valley in the city of Wellington.

The Trust is a qualifying entity within the differential reporting framework issued by the New Zealand Institute of Chartered Accountants. The Trust qualifies on the basis that it has no public accountability (that is: not an issuer as defined under the Financial Reporting Act 1993 nor does it have coercive power to tax, rate or levy to obtain public funds) and is not considered large as defined by the framework. The Trust has taken advantage of all differential reporting concessions available to it except for FRS10 Statement of Cash Flows.

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice. The Trust has chosen not to adopt the NZ equivalent to International Financial Reporting Standards (NZ IFRS). The decision not to adopt is consistent with the exemption provided by the Accounting Standard Review Board ("ASRB") Release 9, issued September 2007. ASRB Release 9 provides a choice to certain qualifying entities to either adopt NZ IFRS or to continue to apply NZ Financial Reporting Standards (NZ FRS).

The measurement base adopted is that of historical cost.

Reliance is placed on the assumption that the Trust continues to receive sufficient income to fund ongoing operations.

#### b) Recognition of Income

Grants are recognised as income when the requirements under the grant agreement have been met. Any grants for which the requirements under the grant agreement have not been completed are carried as liabilities until all the conditions have been fulfilled.

Income received from membership subscriptions is allocated proportionally over the period to which they relate. The unearned portion of subscriptions is shown under current liabilities. Prepaid visits are also treated as current liabilities.

Other income is accounted for on a cash basis.

In the accounts, there is no financial recognition of support given in the form of donated labour and materials.

#### c) Fixed Assets

Fixed Assets are recorded at cost less accumulated depreciation.

#### d) Depreciation

Depreciation of fixed assets is calculated on a straight-line basis so as to allocate the cost of the assets over their useful lives as follows:

Predator Fence	25 years
Buildings/Infrastructure	10 - 50 years
Leasehold Improvements	10 - 50 years
Fixtures Plant and Equipment	3 - 5 years
Boat	15 years
Vehicles	5 - 10 years
Other Assets	3 - 5 years

**e) Receivables**

Receivables are stated at anticipated realisable value.

**f) Retail Stock on Hand**

Retail stock on hand is stated at the lower of cost and net realisable value. Cost is determined on a first in, first out basis.

**g) Goods and Services Tax**

The financial statements have been prepared so that all components are stated exclusive of GST with the exception of receivables and payables that include GST invoiced.

**h) Income Tax**

The Trust being a charitable organisation is income tax exempt under the Income Tax Act 2007.

**i) Changes in Accounting Policies**

There have been no changes in accounting policies. All policies have been applied on a basis consistent with the prior year.

**Appendix B: 2015/16 ZEALANDIA Budget**

ZEALANDIA will continue to drive revenue and contain costs in 2015/16 and complete the year with a healthy surplus.

The budget for 2015/16 has been prepared with the Board and Management's priority focus of increasing working capital. To this end, the budget that has been submitted has no provision for Capital Expenditure. No expenditure will be made outside of this budget except where third party funding is received.

ZEALANDIA - KARORI SANCTUARY TRUST

Forecast 30-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME	Qtr to 30-Sep-15	Qtr to 31-Dec-15	Qtr to 31-Mar-16	Qtr to 30-Jun-16	FYE 30-Jun-16	FYE 30-Jun-17	FYE 30-Jun-18
	<b>Trading Revenue</b>							
	Admissions							
	Membership Subscriptions							
	Other Operating Revenue							
	Sales of Goods							
2,185,000	Other trading revenue	422,000	746,000	845,000	472,000	2,485,000	2,430,000	2,491,000
	<b>Other Operating Revenue</b>							
875,000	Shareholder grants	218,750	218,750	218,750	218,750	875,000	875,000	875,000
170,000	Sponsorships, grants and donations	62,500	62,500	62,500	62,500	250,000	272,000	272,000
	Other operating income							
	<b>Non-operating Revenue</b>							
	Sub-lease and other non-operating income							
23,000	Interest income	6,750	6,750	6,750	6,750	27,000	27,000	27,000
7,000	Other income							
<b>3,260,000</b>	<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>710,000</b>	<b>1,034,000</b>	<b>1,133,000</b>	<b>760,000</b>	<b>3,637,000</b>	<b>3,604,000</b>	<b>3,665,000</b>
	<b>Operating Expenses (overheads)</b>							
2,007,000	Salaries and wages	479,000	515,000	522,000	479,000	1,995,000	2,029,000	2,075,000
	Cost of goods sold							
1,233,000	Other operating expenses	325,000	381,000	365,000	367,000	1,438,000	1,326,000	1,361,000
	Trustee expenses							
	Administration costs							
<b>3,240,000</b>	<b>Total Operating Expenditure</b>	<b>804,000</b>	<b>896,000</b>	<b>887,000</b>	<b>846,000</b>	<b>3,433,000</b>	<b>3,355,000</b>	<b>3,436,000</b>
<b>20,000</b>	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit) before Depreciation and Tax</b>	<b>(94,000)</b>	<b>138,000</b>	<b>246,000</b>	<b>(86,000)</b>	<b>204,000</b>	<b>249,000</b>	<b>229,000</b>
43,000	Interest expense	11,000	11,000	10,000	9,000	41,000	41,000	41,000
1,427,484	Depreciation	300,000	300,000	300,000	300,000	1,200,000	1,427,000	1,427,000
<b>(1,450,484)</b>	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	<b>(405,000)</b>	<b>(173,000)</b>	<b>(64,000)</b>	<b>(395,000)</b>	<b>(1,037,000)</b>	<b>(1,219,000)</b>	<b>(1,239,000)</b>

ZEALANDIA - KARORI SANCTUARY TRUST

Forecast 30-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION	As at 30-Sep-15	As at 31-Dec-15	As at 31-Mar-16	As at 30-Jun-16	As at 30-Jun-16	As at 30-Jun-17	As at 30-Jun-18
	<b>Equity</b>							
4,257,000	Trust Funds	2,807,000	2,807,000	2,807,000	2,807,000	2,807,000	1,770,000	551,000
(1,450,000)	Current year earnings	(405,000)	(578,000)	(642,000)	(1,037,000)	(1,037,000)	(1,219,000)	(1,239,000)
<u>2,807,000</u>	<b>Total Shareholder/Trust Funds</b>	<u>2,402,000</u>	<u>2,229,000</u>	<u>2,165,000</u>	<u>1,770,000</u>	<u>1,770,000</u>	<u>551,000</u>	<u>(688,000)</u>
	<b>Current Assets</b>							
550,000	Cash and cash equivalents	380,000	480,000	700,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	600,000
40,000	Accounts receivable	5,000	15,000	15,000	50,000	50,000	50,000	50,000
	Prepayments							
	Inventory							
60,000	Other current assets	60,000	60,000	60,000	60,000	60,000	60,000	60,000
<u>650,000</u>	<b>Total Current Assets</b>	<u>445,000</u>	<u>555,000</u>	<u>775,000</u>	<u>610,000</u>	<u>610,000</u>	<u>610,000</u>	<u>710,000</u>
	<b>Investments</b>							
	Term deposits							
	Other investments							
	<b>Total Investments</b>							
	<b>Non-current Assets</b>							
13,783,000	Fixed assets	13,483,000	13,183,000	12,883,000	12,583,000	12,583,000	11,156,000	9,729,000
	Intangible assets							
	Other non-current assets							
<u>13,783,000</u>	<b>Total Non-current Assets</b>	<u>13,483,000</u>	<u>13,183,000</u>	<u>12,883,000</u>	<u>12,583,000</u>	<u>12,583,000</u>	<u>11,156,000</u>	<u>9,729,000</u>
<u>14,433,000</u>	<b>Total Assets</b>	<u>13,928,000</u>	<u>13,738,000</u>	<u>13,658,000</u>	<u>13,193,000</u>	<u>13,193,000</u>	<u>11,766,000</u>	<u>10,439,000</u>
	<b>Current Liabilities</b>							
221,000	Accounts payable	279,000	236,000	210,000	230,000	230,000	200,000	220,000
	Income in advance							
	Employee entitlements							
372,000	Provisions and accruals	314,000	340,000	350,000	260,000	260,000	200,000	200,000
186,000	Other current liabilities	186,000	186,000	186,000	186,000	186,000	168,000	160,000
<u>779,000</u>	<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	<u>779,000</u>	<u>762,000</u>	<u>746,000</u>	<u>676,000</u>	<u>676,000</u>	<u>568,000</u>	<u>580,000</u>
	<b>Non-current Liabilities</b>							
10,347,000	Shareholder advances	10,347,000	10,347,000	10,347,000	10,347,000	10,347,000	10,347,000	10,347,000
500,000	Other non-current liabilities	400,000	400,000	400,000	400,000	400,000	300,000	200,000
<u>10,847,000</u>	<b>Total Non-current Liabilities</b>	<u>10,747,000</u>	<u>10,747,000</u>	<u>10,747,000</u>	<u>10,747,000</u>	<u>10,747,000</u>	<u>10,647,000</u>	<u>10,547,000</u>
<u>11,626,000</u>	<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<u>11,526,000</u>	<u>11,509,000</u>	<u>11,493,000</u>	<u>11,423,000</u>	<u>11,423,000</u>	<u>11,215,000</u>	<u>11,127,000</u>
<u>2,807,000</u>	<b>Net Assets</b>	<u>2,402,000</u>	<u>2,229,000</u>	<u>2,165,000</u>	<u>1,770,000</u>	<u>1,770,000</u>	<u>551,000</u>	<u>(688,000)</u>
ok	Check Net Assets = Shareholders Funds	ok						

ZEALANDIA - KARORI SANCTUARY TRUST

Forecast 30-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS	Qtr to 30-Sep-15	Qtr to 31-Dec-15	Qtr to 31-Mar-16	Qtr to 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-17	Total YE 30-Jun-18
	<b>Cash Flows From Operating Activities</b>							
	<i>Inflows</i>							
2,185,000	Trading Receipts	422,000	746,000	845,000	472,000	2,485,000	2,430,000	2,491,000
875,000	Shareholder grants	218,750	218,750	218,750	218,750	875,000	875,000	875,000
170,000	Sponsorships and donations	62,500	62,500	62,500	62,500	250,000	272,000	272,000
30,000	Other Income	6,750	6,750	6,750	6,750	27,000	27,000	27,000
	<i>Outflows</i>							
2,007,000	Payments to Employees	479,000	515,000	522,000	479,000	1,995,000	2,029,000	2,075,000
1,039,000	Payments to Suppliers	315,000	433,000	296,000	497,000	1,541,000	1,409,000	1,329,000
10,000	Net GST Cashflow	50,000	(50,000)	60,000	(50,000)	10,000	25,000	20,000
	Other Operating Costs							
204,000	<b>Net Cash Flows From (Used In) Operating Activities</b>	(134,000)	136,000	255,000	(166,000)	91,000	141,000	241,000
	<b>Cash Flows From (Used In) Investing Activities</b>							
	<i>Inflows</i>							
	Sale of fixed assets							
	Sale of investment assets							
	Other							
	<i>Outflows</i>							
	Purchase of fixed assets							
	Purchase of investments							
	Other							
	<b>Total Investing Cash Flow</b>							
	<b>Cash Flows From (Used In) Financing Activities</b>							
	<i>Inflows</i>							
	Drawdown of loans							
	Investment income							
	Other							
	<i>Outflows</i>							
100,000	Repayment of loans	25,000	25,000	25,000	25,000	100,000	100,000	100,000
43,000	Interest paid	11,000	11,000	10,000	9,000	41,000	41,000	41,000
	Other							
(143,000)	<b>Total Financing Cash Flow</b>	(36,000)	(36,000)	(35,000)	(34,000)	(141,000)	(141,000)	(141,000)
61,000	<b>Net Increase/(Decrease) in Cash Held</b>	(170,000)	100,000	220,000	(200,000)	(50,000)		100,000
489,000	<b>Opening Cash Equivalents</b>	550,000	380,000	480,000	700,000	550,000	500,000	500,000
	Adjustments (rounding)							
550,000	<b>Closing Cash Equivalents</b>	380,000	480,000	700,000	500,000	500,000	500,000	600,000
ok	<i>Check closing cash = Cash and cash equivalents</i>	ok	ok	ok	ok	ok	ok	ok

**Statement of Intent and Business Plan  
2015-16  
Wellington Zoo Trust**

Pursuant to Schedule 8 of the Local Government Act (2002)



*Grassland Cats — exhibit opened September 2014*

## **Contents**

1. Introduction .....	3
2. Strategic Direction.....	5
3. Contribution to our city and links to the WCC Strategy .....	13
4. Nature and Scope of Activities .....	15
5. Performance Measurements .....	16
6. Board's Approach to Governance .....	19
7. Organisational Health, Capability and Risk Assessment .....	20
8. Additional Information .....	24
9. Appendix: Accounting Policies .....	25
10. Appendix: Forecast Financial Statements .....	30

## 1. Introduction

Wellington Zoo is a boutique and mighty Zoo in the Australasian regional context and a leader in zoo sustainability initiatives on a global scale. As a social enterprise we exist to create community benefit and to solve a social problem – the loss of species worldwide. We operate to fulfil our aim to ignite a conservation revolution through celebration, innovation and pride.

The Zoo is a place of happiness and love underpinned by strong conservation animal welfare and visitor experience expertise.

As the global trend of species loss becomes more critical the Zoo's role in animal care, conservation breeding for restoration of wild populations, care of injured or orphaned wildlife, support for local and global conservation programmes, science and veterinary research and advocacy for endangered animals becomes even more imperative. To ensure we can achieve these aims our financial sustainability, best practice animal housing and care and excellence in visitor programming become key strategic outcomes for us.

As the world's first carbonZero certified Zoo we believe in sustainability for growth and for a continuing social licence to operate. Wellington Zoo gives back to the community through well-being outcomes, socially responsible behaviour and conservation legitimacy. We believe the Zoo's outcomes contribute a better society for us and for our children after us.



Wellington Zoo contributes to the vibrancy and forward thinking of our city through employment of Wellingtonians, working with Wellingtonian suppliers and other Wellington organisations in partnerships driven by outcomes and provision of quality of visitor experiences for our local and global community. The Zoo aims to be a reflection of our city and contribute to the thriving cultural and natural heritage of Wellington as an accessible and liveable city. The economic benefit the Zoo generates additional liveability to our citizens and reflects the Economic Strategy of the Council for Wellington.

We have consistently met or outperformed almost all of our performance targets in the last nine years. Since the beginning of the Zoo Capital Plan (ZCP) investment in 2006 our visitation has **increased 35.6% on the base 2004-05 figures**. We have also increased our contribution to the operating costs of the Zoo from 37% to 56% in that time.

In the current plans for the upcoming LTP no new Zoo CAPEX submissions have been approved for inclusion. However we will be proceeding with planning for Snow Leopards in preparation for future funding (explained more fully later in this SOI).

We are pleased to report that all our permanent and fixed term staff are paid above Living Wage. Our casual staff all paid at \$15ph plus holiday loading. We annually review all our salaries for all staff in line with our remuneration policy. We value our people and want to pay them fairly. The OPEX uplift indicated in the LTP for the Zoo will help us ensure that all our permanent and fixed term staff will stay ahead of the Living Wage and that we can gradually raise the wage paid to casual staff. We do not want to fall behind in salary increases for the people who, day in day out, deliver success for the Zoo.

We are grateful that our renewals budget in the LTP is set to be more closely aligned with our Asset Management Plan in the main. This will allow us to maintain the Zoo appropriately and be closer aligned with depreciation costs.

Health and Safety provisions for the Zoo are being discussed as part of the LTP which hopefully will result in a position created to be located at the Zoo but with responsibility across all CCOs. This is supported by the CE Zealandia and the CE Wellington Museums Trust in discussions we have had in this regard. There is quite a large piece of work to complete to prepare for the legislation in 2015 and this role should sit at executive level rather than at middle management. This would change the salary required and we believe this is warranted especially with a shared resource.

It is also possible that under the new law WCC would be seen as our landlord with Health and Safety responsibilities to us as 'tenant'. In this regard the law will require WCC to ensure that we are fully funded to implement the changes required for compliance with the law. We have asked for \$150,000 pa in the LTP for Health and Safety and we believe this is appropriate given the changes required and could be a shared resource for all CCOs. However further discussion may be required on this solution. Currently \$80k has been agreed for the Zoo alone.

We agree to the nonfinancial expectations of the Zoo and the SOI outlines how we will implement these expectations.



*Do at the Zoo – celebrating Conservation Week*

## 2. Strategic Direction

### a) Core Purpose

Wellington Zoo Trust Incorporated is incorporated under the Charitable Trust Act 1957 and is a not for profit organisation.

#### **PURPOSE**

Wellington Zoo exists to grow a conservation revolution. We lead the way in connecting people to animals and saving animals in the wild by having our community love their Zoo and love animals.

#### **DREAM**

Wellington Zoo's dream is to be 'the best little zoo in the world'.

#### **TRUST DEED**

Wellington Zoo Trust Deed states the objects of the Trust as follows:

"7.1 *The objects for which the Trust is established, to the extent that they are a charitable purpose within New Zealand, are as follows:*

7.1.1 *To manage, administer, plan, develop, maintain, operate and promote Wellington Zoo as a zoological park for the benefit of the Wellington community and as an attraction for visitors to Wellington;*

7.1.2 *To educate the community by building an awareness of plant and animal species and the actions required to promote conservation;*

7.1.3 *To promote species conservation;*

7.1.4 *To support and complement the conservation and learning activities undertaken by other organisations;*

7.1.5 *To develop, manage and plan animal species management programmes;*

7.1.6 *To promote and coordinate the raising of funds to assist the management, administration, maintenance, planning, promotion and further development of Wellington Zoo;*

7.1.7 *To acquire additional plant and animal species;*

7.1.8 *Generally to do all acts, matters and things that the Trustees think necessary or conducive to further or attain the objects of the Trust set out above for the benefit of the Wellington community."*

**b) Operating Environment Update**

The operating environment continues to be challenging as people look for discounts and deals rather than paying full fees. However we are seeing a growth in our commercial products revenue such as animal Close Encounters. Costs such as salaries continue to climb and we are in the process of redefining the strategic framework for Wellington Zoo Trust in order to act in accordance with our operating environment.

The Board and Strategic Management Team (SMT) have begun a strategic review of the Zoo's future goals to ensure we maximise a continuation of the positive momentum in visitor admissions and financial performance. We are well aware of the need to be continually improving and creating an offering that the community feels is value for money and leading edge for zoo experiences. We have agreed that a disruptive change must occur to drive a new model for the Zoo and ensure our continued success as an organisation.



*Our newest animal Close Encounter – Black and White Ruffed Lemur*

**c) Strategic Framework**

We believe that the ZCP was a disruptive force for change at the Zoo when it was begun in 2006 and this is what we need again — not so much a physical change as we believe we have created an innovative platform for future initiatives. What we need is a disruption of business as usual as the ZCP was and we see this new iteration of the Zoo as being in the development of new ideas, new thinking and innovation. Most of our people have only known success and the Zoo is widely recognised as delivering on its promises. We must continue to drive success and business integrity.

Much has been discussed on the world stage about the role zoos must play to support wild conservation through best practice animal welfare, community engagement and support for global and local conservation programmes.

Below is a strategic focus diagram using Simon Sinek's Golden Circle of Why, How, What approach for business outcomes and strategic planning which summarises our thoughts on the most important areas for the future of Wellington Zoo. This new strategic framework changes our strategic elements from six to four and focusses our efforts for the 'new Zoo'.

Our impossible question that we asked ourselves was 'what can we do about loss of species the world over?' How can we be a boutique and mighty Zoo in the conservation space? How can we drive change through celebration, innovation and pride? What is the revolution we want? How do we close the loop between a zoo visit and saving animals in the wild?

So this discussion is about the new Zoo, not the old, and seeks to take us into a new realm which builds on our success of the past few years, using the rebuilt Zoo physical platform and sets the stage for Wellington Zoo to be seen as a leader in the conservation of species.

We have adjusted our measures under each strategy and we will build our annual plans and budgets accordingly. We are also undertaking a values project in the first half of this year which will underpin the delivery of this strategy and drive our shared values. It is timely that we do this in 2015 as *Meet the Locals* will be the launch pad for the new Zoo. As the final project of the ZCP, *Meet the Locals* is as significant for Wellington Zoo as The Nest Te Kōhanga was in 2009 and it will add additional value to the strategic future of our Zoo.



Wellington Zoo Trust's strategic elements are to:

**1. Connect people with animals**

The Zoo is perfectly positioned, as a multi award winner in visitor experience, business leadership, vibrancy, sustainability and conservation, to take an active role in delivering conservation and sustainability messages to a large audience of over 230,000 visitors on-site and many more online.

Wellington Zoo will continue to build its reputation as a unique and intimate Zoo by including more opportunities for our visitors to experience multi layered and multisensory learning experiences. We will design creative and profound visitor experiences which connect people to animals in ways which drive them to positive action.

Our people are passionate about their work and we will ensure they are supported in their development and have the necessary capability to deliver our strategy.

The physical asset of the Zoo must be well cared for in order for the Zoo to have credibility. The CX125 renewals budget indicated in the LTP will allow us to do this well.



*Meeting a Leopard Gecko up close*

**Snow Leopards**

This important project as noted in our current LTP submission provides further opportunities for our community to engage with global conservation issues. This project was also indicated in the ZCP2 bid from the last LTP. As with all projects in the Zoo, this project will address health and safety issues such as gradients and accessibility within the exhibit, animal welfare issues in regard to animal housing and care, staff working environments and improved visitor experience.

The old Sun Bear exhibit is unusable in its current form from a staff safety perspective and an animal welfare perspective. It is old concrete pits and unsuitable for a modern zoo – this was why we developed a new home for Sun Bears in the Asia Precinct. Snow Leopards are endangered Asian animals which live in the Himalayas. They are perfectly suitable for the space vacated by the Sun Bears.

Snow Leopards are endangered in the wild, with a population of less than 7,000 thought to exist in their mountainous habitat. Their plight is a reflection on the impact of climate change on their natural habitat, and we would like to share their story with our visitors. If we acquired Snow Leopards we would be the only zoo in New Zealand with these animals.

The animals would need to be sourced from either Europe or the USA as there is no local Cooperative Conservation Programme in place. We would source two animals as a minimum.

We are working on a concept design presently with Isthmus landscape architects and Calibre civil and structural engineers and Monastra QS Consultants as our consultant team and are planning to have developed design for this project with a firm QS estimate in time for mid term capex bids in 2015.

Our estimate to complete this project at this stage is around \$3 million depending on design options. We expect to be able to start building this exhibit in March 2016 with an estimated completion date around September 2016.



*Architect's concept drawing of Snow Leopard Exhibit*

**2. Save animals in the wild**

Our end game is to save animals in the wild, locally and globally.

We are a key stakeholder in collaborative conservation breeding as well as science and veterinary research programmes within the zoo industry with other conservation agencies and higher learning organisations in Wellington and across New Zealand.

Our Collection Plan focuses on the number of critically endangered and endangered species we have in human care at the Zoo and those we support through our conservation programmes in the animal's range state. We support programmes for critically endangered and endangered species e.g. Sumatran Tigers, Tasmanian Devils, Cotton Top Tamarins, Black and White Ruffed Lemurs and Golden Lion Tamarins. The planned acquisition of Snow Leopards will provide further opportunities for our community to engage with global conservation issues.

The Nest Te Kōhanga works with a variety of native species. Native wildlife cases now make up 70% of the veterinary medicine case load – including many who are critically endangered and endangered.



*A rare Fiordland Crested Penguin sent from Hokitika to The Nest Te Kōhanga for treatment*

### 3. *People love and support the Zoo*

The Trust now contributes 56% of its operational costs and has increased this gradually since the inception of the Trust in 2003 from 37%.

The Zoo's contribution to the economic development of our city is through its financial results, creating a facility Wellingtonians can feel proud of, by the employment of over 80 people (62 FTE) and by being one of the largest businesses in Newtown.

The Trust will continue its commercial imperatives this year to ensure financial sustainability. As a social enterprise we seek to create our financial sustainability so that our social and environmental goals can be achieved.

Wellington Zoo aims to be 'the best little zoo in the world' and has immense community support as shown in consistent visitor attendance and membership growth. We intend to position the brand of new Zoo with a new advertising agency and a new strategy now in place.

Wellington Zoo is inclusive for all sectors of our community – our visitor mix is diverse and we ensure that all visitors feel safe and respected.

We seek to ensure the Zoo is accessible for our community with annual initiatives which assist all sectors of our community to enjoy their Zoo.

Partnerships which are accountable and result driven have and will be part of our strategic imperatives. Programmes such as "Zoofari" the partnership with The Warehouse whereby the fundraising undertaken in their stores provides funding for low decile schools to access free transport to enable those children to visit the Zoo.

Our partnership with Massey University for the Zoo Animal and Wildlife Health Masterate is the only one of its kind in the world and is the key to building capability in this area of veterinary science for our country. Zoo and wildlife medicine is a specific skill set which requires expertise across a range of species. Together with Massey University Veterinary School, Wellington Zoo is growing this capability for New Zealand through the highly respected work at The Nest Te Kōhanga.

We are looking at new possibilities for collaborative science and research projects which will create value for New Zealand.

*From a regular visitor Feb 2015*

*I really just want to give you some positive feedback. We are regular visitors to the zoo, we have renewed our pass 3 years in a row (i have 2 little ones). I am such a fan. The zoo just keeps getting better and better. love the signage, love the up close encounters, the vet talks at the operating table at the nest. the passion of staff and volunteers for the place is truly visible and the vision is fab. love the gardens, the little blue penguins new spot, lemur signage...i could go on. there is always something new to see. thankyou for keeping on making the place such a joy to visit. so proud it is here in wellington.*

*p.s. can't wait for the new NZ experience that has peep holes to see the progress!*



One of the classes supported by The Warehouse Zoofari programme

#### 4. Lead the way

Wellington Zoo has been recognised in a multitude of awards over the past few years, from sustainability to business and environmental leadership. We appreciate that we have been externally validated for the work we have done to create a Zoo which does our city proud. We will continue to strive for excellence across our organisation. As the world's first carboNZero certified zoo, sustainability is in our DNA as a leader in this area.

There are a number of Zoo staff who hold regional zoo positions, including the Chief Executive who is the Immediate Past President of the Zoo Aquarium Association Australasia.

The Chief Executive is also a member of the NZ Animal Behaviour and Welfare Consultative Committee, the Wellington Conservation Board and the NZ Committee for the IUCN.

Animal care is the *raison d'être* for zoos. It is one of the defining differences between good zoos and bad zoos worldwide. In the 21<sup>st</sup> century compromised animal welfare in zoos is unacceptable. Animal Welfare is an area of developing and ever changing science and a 21<sup>st</sup> century zoo must be leading the ethical paradigm for animal care. Wellington Zoo takes this responsibility seriously and endeavours to raise the bar in regard to care of our precious animals.

Animal welfare extends to our collection animals, the ever increasing number of native wildlife we care for in The Nest Te Kōhanga and any animals we care for as part of conservation breeding programmes for restoration of wild populations.



*As part of the ongoing recovery programme in conjunction with DOC, a rare Otago Skink receives a health check*

### 3. Contribution to our city and links to the WCC Strategy

The Towards 2040 Strategy for our city aligns with the goals of Wellington Zoo Trust in that it is about inspiring each other to see the possibilities for the future. The work of the Zoo supports the four pillars of the Towards 2040 Strategy: eco city, people centred city, connected city and dynamic city centre. The Zoo is an iconic asset for our city and as our population grows there will be an even greater desire for the Zoo to be a sophisticated and accessible attraction which delivers 21st century conservation programmes on site and off site. Community space such as the Zoo becomes even more critical to city living as the city grows and develops. The Zoo contributes to the unique identity of Newtown and adds to the perception of Wellington as an open and welcoming city by providing visitor facilities to enjoy and increasing the attractiveness of Wellington as a place people choose to live.

The Zoo is a strong contributor to our city, focusing on knowledge, collaboration, innovation and positive action. It contributes to the vibrancy and forward thinking of our city. We aim to be a reflection of our city and contribute as a cutting edge business with talented people to the thriving cultural and natural heritage of Wellington as a liveable city. The Zoo supports the Economic Strategy for our city by contributing strongly to liveability outcomes and by being part of the well-being of people that Wellington is renowned for amongst New Zealand cities. We feel very positively about working with WREDA to ensure economic growth for our city. As winners of Green Gold and Vibrant Gold at the Wellington Gold Awards we believe we are perfectly placed to add value to the economy of our region.

As a result of aiming for and achieving the Trust's strategic vision, Wellington Zoo will be seen as:

- A leader in the city, and a major partner of Wellington City Council in shaping the community's views on and action for conservation and sustainable living
- A valued and valuable member of the Newtown and Wellington communities that adds to the prosperity of our city through events, connections, inclusivity and engagement
- A substantial player in the drive to position Wellington as a centre for learning about and expertise in conservation and sustainability
- A key contributor to helping the city become internationally competitive, entrepreneurial and innovative by attracting investment in education, research, tourism and employment and contributing to the provision of a vibrant city attracting a creative working population
- An important part of Wellington's history as New Zealand's first zoo and the most visited paid cultural attraction in Wellington.

Wellington Zoo can be seen as an important part of the regional fabric that stimulates overall wealth creation and social stability and connects people to conservation and environmental issues. As our region's only zoo we are a unique asset for our city.



*Over 1550 Newtown neighbours attended our 10<sup>th</sup> Neighbours Night BBQ – 2015*

## 4. Nature and Scope of Activities

### Core Business

The Trust will continue to provide the core business services that the Zoo has historically delivered to Wellington. These can be summarised as follows:

- Strategic direction and operational management of the Zoo
- Development and maintenance of animal exhibits which offer high quality experiences to visitors and high quality living environments to the resident animals
- Provision of engaging learning experiences for visitors and community involvement with the Zoo as a community asset
- Educational curriculum delivery to develop children as democratic citizens
- Management of collection animals to achieve excellent levels of health and emotional/psychological well-being according to the Five Domains of animal welfare
- Contribution to conservation through advocacy, support for ex situ and in situ conservation programmes, and sustainable management practices on site
- Participation in collaborative inter-zoo management programmes for collection species and other zoo specific activities
- Contribution to conservation, scientific, learning and management research projects in the field and on site
- Fundraising for the organisation's future sustainability, development and conservation projects.



*Endangered and critically endangered species from our collection and their associated programmes that we support*

## 5. Performance Measurements

For the next three years the following table indicates the measures for WCC to monitor.

Measure	Frequency of Measure	Target 2015-16	Target 2016-17	Target 2017-18	Notes
<i>Connect people with nature</i>					
Fundraising targets for ZCP reached or exceeded	Annually	25% of ZCP Capex Spend	NA	NA	Varies according to ZCP CAPEX spend. This measure is appropriate for 2015-16 only as the ZCP will then be complete
Meet ZCP project timing and budget programme	Per project	Complete Meet the Locals	NA	NA	With this project the ZCP is complete
Measure visitor feedback and satisfaction	Annually	1 research project	1 research project	1 research project	Trends from our weekly surveys will be tested in a larger visitor satisfaction project annually
Participate in visitor research project re behaviour change	Annually	> 1	NA	NA	The three year collaborative Zoo Action project looking at engaging visitors with behaviour change as a result of their visit to the Zoo is coming to a close this year
Contact animals meeting visitors in Zoo	Quarterly	1000 hours	1100 hours	1100 hours	
People participating in Animal Close Encounters	Quarterly	3,665	3,865	4,065	
Number of students participating in LEOTC sessions	Quarterly	10,000	10,000	10,000	
<i>People Love and Support Wildlife</i>					
Increase total visitation by 2% each year on base year 2005/06 (170,116 visitors) as per the ZCP Business Case	Annually	234,714	NA	NA	These increases are beyond the required 2% pa as agreed in the ZCP Business case. This is appropriate for 2015-16 only as the ZCP will then be complete
Increase total visitation as per agreed %	Annually	NA	237,763	240,854	New measure introduced after completion of the ZCP
Percentage of operating costs generated by the Trust	Annually	55%	55%	55%	

Ratio of Trust generated income as percentage of WCC grant	Annually	124%	121%	121%	
Average income per visitor from Trust generated revenue	Annually	\$14.86	\$14.72	\$14.86	
Average WCC subsidy per visitor	Annually	\$11.99	\$12.13	\$12.28	This KPI measures only WCC Zoo OPEX Grant per visitor
Full cost per visitor including WCC costs	Annually	\$21.19	\$21.44	\$21.50	This KPI is generated by WCC. It includes depreciation, shared services costs, CCO team costs, insurance, CAPEX interest and the OPEX grant
Volunteer hours	Annually	≥11,520 hours (6 FTE)	≥12,480 hours (6.5 FTE)	≥13,440 hours (7 FTE)	
<b>Conservation in the world</b>					
Number of vulnerable, endangered or critically endangered species (IUCN list) in the Zoo's collection	Annually	≥26	≥27	≥30	New Measure
Number of threatened Native species (DOC rating) treated in the Nest Te Kōhanga	Annually	≥30	≥31	≥32	New Measure
Number of Field Conservation Projects supported for threatened (NZ) endangered or critically endangered (global) species	Annually	≥ 4	≥ 5	≥ 6	
% of OPEX directly contributed to field conservation	Annually	3%	4%	5%	This measure uses the American Zoo Association Framework (now adopted by the Zoo Aquarium Association Australasia) to measure direct contribution to field conservation.
Participate in animal based scientific projects	Annually	≥ 4	≥ 5	≥ 6	
<b>Lead the way</b>					
Maintain Zoo and Aquarium Association Animal Welfare Accreditation	Annually	Achieved	Achieved	Achieved	New Measure
Maintain carbonZero certification	Annually	Achieved	Achieved	Achieved	New Measure
H&S targets met	Annually	Achieved	Achieved	Achieved	New Measure

**Item 4.2 Attachment 2**

Initiatives to embed professional development of our people	Annually	≥ 8	≥ 9	≥ 10	Golden Agouti Staff Recognition Awards; Volunteer recognition, Organisational Values Project, training initiatives, development opportunities for specific technical skills, recruitment of talented staff
Staff turnover (permanent staff only)	Annually	≤ 20%	≤ 20%	≤ 20%	The 2013 NZ Staff Turnover Survey was released mid-2014. The survey findings put the 2013 national average turnover at 17.2% and at 22.6% for the Not for Profit sector. If we compare the Zoo to similar sized organisations in the Public and Private sectors (31-64 staff) the figures are 25.70% and 19.31% respectively

**Budgeted Visitor Numbers by Quarter for 2015-16**

Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	TOTAL
47,304	62,248	65,743	59,419	234,714

## 6. Board's Approach to Governance

Wellington Zoo Trust is a Council Controlled Organisation having been established in 2003 by the Wellington City Council to develop and manage Wellington Zoo.

### Relationship with Council

The Trust ensures the ongoing viability of the organisation is maintained through the monitoring of Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) and the financial results. Governing policies have been developed by Trustees to ensure the business of the Trust is managed consistently with its Deed and stated direction.

As part of the ongoing relationship with the Wellington City Council, the Chair and Chief Executive meet with the Mayor, Environment Portfolio leaders and Wellington City Council Chief Executive on a regular basis. The Wellington Zoo Chief Executive meets regularly with officers of the CCO's & City Growth Projects unit and other Council management when appropriate. The Chair and Chief Executive attend the Environment Portfolio meetings as required.

The Trust's Statement of Financial Performance and audited accounts will be presented to Council within 60 days of financial year end.

The Trust will disclose any material or potentially contentious transactions that are planned within its annual business plan. Where this is not possible, the earliest practicable notice will be given to Council of such transactions.

The Trust will publicly acknowledge Council's contribution to the Zoo wherever appropriate.

The principles governing the relationship between the Trust and Council will include:

- A "no surprises" approach
- Open communications which acknowledge each partner's objectives and constraints
- Mutually respectful negotiation of resolution of differences
- Reciprocal recognition of the requirements of each other's processes
- Provision of quarterly reports against agreed KPIs and an annual report within three months of balance date.

### Board Membership

Name	Term Expires
Ross Martin ( <i>Chair</i> )	31 December 2015
Frances Russell ( <i>Deputy Chair</i> )	31 December 2016
Linda Meade	30 June 2015
Sarah Free	October 2016
Raewyn Bleakley	30 November 2017
Craig Ellison	30 November 2017

All Board members are non-executive.

#### **Board Committees**

The Board operates three committees:

- Finance, Audit and Risk Committee
- Remuneration Committee
- Fundraising and Sponsorship Committee

#### **Board Development**

The Board conducts an annual review of overall Board performance and individual and chair performance and from this determines development needs and any other actions required to ensure best practice governance and performance standards are met. The Trust promotes Board development for corporate governance and spends at least 10 hours a year on this at Board meetings and additional workshops and discussions. A report will be tabled to the WCC Chief Executive on the Board review and outcomes by **30 September 2015**.

## **7. Organisational Health, Capability and Risk Assessment**

Wellington Zoo Trust has a Finance, Audit and Risk Committee which meets quarterly throughout the year. The Board monitors our risk matrix at least annually and this matrix is updated as required.

Health and Safety is currently managed via the Collection Development Manager who currently has this area of responsibility. He works with our Safety Improvement Team to ensure safe practices in the Zoo for animals, staff and visitors. All Health and Safety incidents are monitored weekly by the SMT and by the Board at their regular meetings. Annual trends are analysed by the SMT and the Board and actions taken to rectify any worrying trends.

Our health and safety plan covers everything from working in an office to managing a variety of wild animals in purpose built enclosures. We have a hazard identification register which identifies each and every individual work space and environment within the Zoo the risks that apply to these areas and the cause of control or mitigation. Accident reporting and investigation management are encouraged in a positive way so that staff realise the benefit of accurate reporting of all incidents and provide good detail for investigative reports.

We report on all of the following categories, Equipment (failure or need), Animal (issue), Slip, Trip, Fall, Fire, Obstruction, Illness, Near Miss, Manual Handling, and Other. Wellington Zoo has Standard Operating Procedures (SOP) in place for all sections of our operation. These form part of our induction of staff and are reviewed regularly by our operations people to keep them current. Any improvements or recommendations that come out of an incident report, investigation report or review of a SOP get forwarded to our Health and Safety Manager for review and action.

We consider health and safety issues from day one and incorporate health and safety measures into every project throughout the design process. We then request at Pre Qualifying stage as part of our Expressions of Interest documentation the ability of the contractor to provide evidence of their health and safety plan and how they manage health and safety on site on a daily basis. We also request their environmental policy and management systems which all form part of the measures they are judged on.

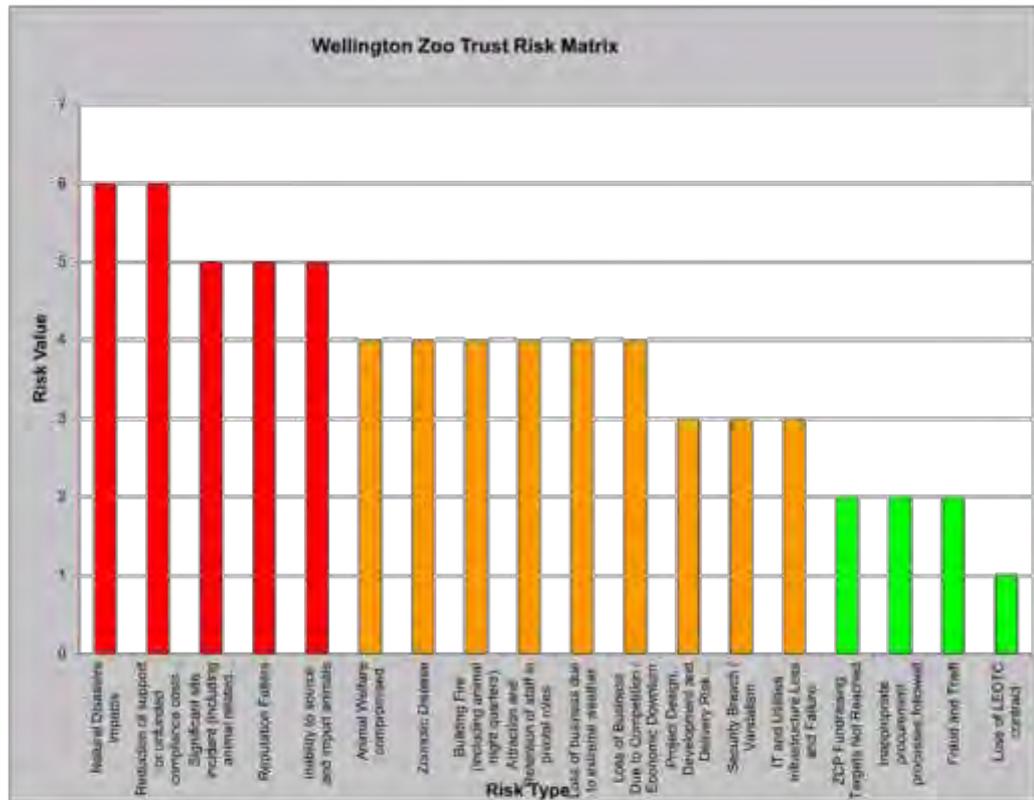
Before a construction contractor is engaged they must provide a site specific safety plan which includes Wellington Zoo's health and safety plan as a back to back document for that specific project. When inducted to site the contractor is questioned on our health and safety plan to ensure that they understand the environment that they are going to be working in. All construction contractors on site are required to pass on their weekly tool box meeting minutes and provide a project report which includes health and safety and current hazards that are apparent on site.

**However with the new legislation being enacted later in 2015 we have submitted a case for more resources in this area as indicated. We believe that this resource is imperative to ensure our ability to safeguard the Zoo. We believe this Health and Safety position should sit at Senior Management level to give emphasis to the importance of this role. We take the safety of our people and our community seriously and to prepare fully for the legislation change we have engaged Major Consulting Group to complete an audit of our Health and Safety and to assist us in preparing our strategy. We believe that a shared resource at senior management level across CCOs would be beneficial and would assist in aligning to WCC Health and Safety policy and strategy.**

The Business Continuity Plan is reviewed annually. Our current plan has been forwarded to the WCC Manager Risk Assurance for endorsement as per the Letter of Expectation. We will be working together on this over the 2015-16 financial year.

Risk Analysis & Mitigation Plan for Wellington Zoo Trust

Areas of Risk	Risk Identification	Probability	Impact	Risk Value	Impact	\$ Value of Risk	Risk Mitigation	Responsibility	Accountability
Financial, H & S, Operational, Collection, Visitation	Natural Disasters Impacts	-1	7	6			Business Continuity plan.	CEO	Board GMAC Manager Capital Development
Financial, H & S, Operational, Collection, Visitation, Reputational, Fundraising	Reduction of support or unfunded compliance costs from WCC	-1	7	6			Statement of Intent, Contract for Services	Board	Board CEO
Financial, H & S, Operational, Visitation, Reputational, Fund Raising, ZCP	Significant site incident (including animal related incidents)	-2	7	5			Health & Safety Management System, Containment Standards	CEO	Board GMAC Manager Capital Development
Financial, Operational, Reputational, Visitation, Fundraising, ZCP, CarbonMare certification	Reputation Failure	-1	6	5			Code of Conduct, Media Policy, Use of Electronic Media Policy, Disciplinary Policy, Carbon Emissions Reduction and Management Plan	CEO	Board
Financial, Operational, Visitation, Reputational, Fund Raising, ZCP	Inability to source and import animals	-1	6	5			Collection Plan	CEO	Board GMAC
Financial, Operational, Reputational, Fundraising, Collection	Animal Welfare compromised	-2	6	4			ZAA Accreditation, Husbandry Manuals, Staff development policies, Animal Welfare Committee	CEO	Board GMAC
Financial, H & S, Operational, Collection, Visitation	Zoonotic Diseases	-3	7	4			Zoonotic disease policy, EPA policies	CEO	Board GMAC
Financial, H & S, Operational, Visitation, ZCP, Collection	Building Fire (including animal night quarters)	-2	6	4			Health & Safety Management System, Fire Alarms, Building WOFs	CEO	Board GMAC Manager Capital Development
Financial, H & S, Operational, Visitation, Fundraising, ZCP	Attraction and Retention of staff in pivotal roles	-1	5	4			Staff Development Policy, Remuneration Policy, Recruitment Policy	CEO	Board GMF&C
Financial, H & S, Operational, Collection, Visitation	Loss of business due to extreme weather	-1	5	4			Marketing Strategy, Pricing Policy	CEO	Board GM&BP GMCE
Financial, Reputational, Visitation, Fundraising	Loss of Business Due to Competition / Economic Downturn	-1	5	4			Business Plan, Strategic Plan, Marketing Strategy, Collection plan	Board	Board CEO
Financial, Operational, Visitation, Fundraising, ZCP	Project Design, Development and Delivery Risk (including not obtaining resource consent)	-2	6	3			Project Management Process	CEO	Board Manager Capital Development
Financial, H & S, Operational, Collection	Security breach / Vandalism	-2	5	3			CCTV System, Security Alarms, Maintenance of Perimeter Fence	CEO	Board GMAC
Financial, Operational, Visitation, Fundraising, ZCP, Collection, H & S	IT and Utilities Infrastructure Loss and Failure	-1	4	3			Business Continuity Plan, WCC Business Continuity Plan.	CEO	Board Manager Capital Development GMAC
Financial, H & S, Visitation, ZCP	ZCP Fundraising Targets Not Reached	-3	5	2			Fundraising Strategy	CEO	Board GM&BP GMCE
Financial, Operational, Reputational, Fund Raising, ZCP	Inappropriate procurement processes followed	-2	4	2			Procurement Policy, Register of Interests	CEO	Board CFO
Financial, Operational, Reputational, Fundraising	Fraud and Theft	-2	4	2			CCTV, Code of Conduct, Financial management procedures.	CEO	Board CFO
Financial, Operational, Reputational, Visitation, Fundraising	Loss of LEOTC contract	-3	4	1		\$91,000 p.a.	Meet NPAs as per Contract	CEO	Board GMCE



Score	Probability that the Event will Occur
1	Almost Certain and / or could occur frequently
0	Very likely to occur and / or could occur more than once
-1	Moderately likely to occur and / or could occur at least once
-2	Unlikely to occur and / or might occur once
-3	Very unlikely to occur

Score	Level of Impact of the Event Occurring
7	Catastrophic Damage value greater than 60% of the project value, or Major delay to the project completion, or Major impact on this and other business opportunities
6	Very High Impact Damage value about 20% - 50% of the project value, or Significant delay to project completion, or Significant impact on this and other business opportunities
5	Major Damage value about 5% - 20% of the project value, or Project completion affected, or Some impact on this or other business opportunities
4	Minor Damage value less than 5% of the project value, or Project completion not impacted (although a phase of the project may be), or This business opportunity could be impacted
3	Negligible Damage value covered by contingency, any delays barely noticeable and client unaffected
2	Minimal

These two scores are added together to give a "Risk Value". This will be in the range zero to eight.

**Red** All risks with a Risk Value of 5-8 must have a mitigation plan developed and agreed by all parties to the project. This level of risk will probably require some immediate special action or special planning dedicated to reducing the particular risk. A contingency plan should also be developed.

**Orange** All risks with a Risk Value of 3 or 4 shall have a mitigation plan so they can be managed.

**Green** All risks with a Risk Value of 0-2 can just be recorded and accepted as such (and such time as they produce a higher score).

**Red** Any risk that has a Probability Value of one (1) or an Impact Value of five (5) or more must still have a mitigation plan even if the overall Risk Value is less than 5.

## 8. Additional Information

**a) Response to other specific Letter of Expectation matters (if applicable)**

Not Applicable

**b) Ratio of shareholders funds to total assets**

Please refer to the Balance Sheet included and Accounting Policies.

**c) Estimate of amount intended for distribution**

Wellington Zoo Trust does not make a distribution to the Settlor.

**d) Acquisition procedures**

The Trustees currently have no intention of subscribing for, purchasing or otherwise acquiring shares in any other company or other organisation.

**e) Activities for which the Board seeks compensation from a local authority**

The Trust is seeking **operational funding grant of \$2,813,500**. This excludes any additional funding for H&S requirements.

Although the Trust does not own the Zoo's assets, it is charged with planning and developing them under its founding documents. Accordingly, the Trust acknowledges the amount in the Letter of Expectation that the Council approve **\$516,000 for CX340** as per the LTP for the current ZCP. This figure is inclusive of external fundraising but exclusive of any carry forward from 2014-15.

The Board acknowledges the **\$799,597 currently in the Long Term Plan for CX125** (Zoo asset renewals) for 2015-16.

**f) Estimate of commercial value of shareholders investment**

Not Applicable

**g) Other matters (if applicable) e.g. water supply services LGA requirements**

Not Applicable

**h) Supplementary information the entity wishes to include**

As per Section 4.2 of the Contract for Services, we request that this contract be extended for a further year to 30 June 2016. However we would like to review the Contract for Services over the time of this SOI.

## **9. Appendix: Accounting Policies**

### **Reporting Entity**

The Wellington Zoo Trust (the Trust) is a charitable trust registered under the Charitable Trusts Act 1957 domiciled in New Zealand and is also a Council Controlled Organisation as defined under Section 6, Part 1 of the Local Government Act 2002, by virtue of the Council's right to appoint the Board of Trustees. The Trust was established on 1 July 2003 by the Wellington City Council.

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Charitable Trusts Act 1957 and section 69 of the Local Government Act 2002.

The Trust is reliant on the Wellington City Council (the Council) for the majority of its income and operates under a Contract for Services with the Council. The Contract for Services was negotiated for a period of 3 years to 30 June 2012. This contract has been re-extended for a further year to 30 June 2015. Ongoing funding for the Trust has been approved in the 2012/2022 Long Term Plan.

The primary objective of the Trust is to manage, administer, plan, develop, maintain, operate and promote the Wellington Zoo for the benefits of the inhabitants of Wellington and as an attraction to visitors to Wellington, not to make a financial return. Accordingly, the Trust has designated itself as a public benefit entity for the purposes of New Zealand Equivalents to International Financial Reporting Standards (NZIFRS).

The reporting period for these financial statements is for the year ended 30 June 2014. The financial statements were authorised for issue by the Board of Trustees on 8 August 2014.

### **Statement of Compliance with International Financial Reporting Standards**

The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with New Zealand generally accepted accounting practice. They comply with New Zealand equivalents to IFRS (NZ IFRS) and other applicable Financial Reporting Standards, as appropriate for public benefit entities.

### **Measurement Base**

The measurement base applied is historical cost. The accrual basis of accounting has been used.

### **Functional and Presentation Currency**

These financial statements are presented in New Zealand dollars rounded to the nearest thousand, unless otherwise stated.

### **Significant Accounting Policies**

#### **Critical Accounting estimates and assumptions**

In preparing these financial statements, the Trust has made estimates and assumptions concerning the future. These estimates and assumptions may differ from the subsequent actual results. Estimates and assumptions are continually evaluated and are based on historical experience and other factors, including expectations of future events that are believed to be reasonable under the circumstances.

#### **Grants**

Grants received from the Wellington City Council are the primary source of funding to the Trust and are restricted for the purposes of the Trust meeting its objectives as specified in the Trust Deed. The Trust also receives other assistance for specific purposes, and these grants usually contain restrictions on their use.

Grants are recognised as income when they become receivable unless there is an obligation to return the funds if the conditions of the grant are not met. If there is such an obligation the grants are initially recorded as grants received in advance, and recognised as income when the conditions of the grant are satisfied.

#### **Sales**

Products held for sale are recognised when a product is sold to the customer.

#### **Donated, subsidised or vested assets**

Where a physical asset is acquired for nil or nominal consideration, the fair value of the asset received is recognised as income. Such income is recognised when control over the asset is obtained.

#### **Interest**

Interest income is recognised using the effective interest rate method.

#### **Volunteer Services Recognition**

The Trust benefits from the service of dedicated volunteers in the delivery of its activities. Due to the difficulty in determining the value of these donated services with sufficient reliability, donated services are not recognised in these financial statements.

#### **Taxation**

The Trust is registered as a Charitable Trust and is exempt from income tax under the Income Tax Act 2004. The Trust is not exempt from indirect tax legislation such as Goods and Services Tax and accordingly is required to comply with these regulations.

#### **Goods and Services Tax (GST)**

All items in the financial statements are exclusive of GST, with the exception of receivables and payables, which are stated as GST inclusive. Where GST is not recoverable as an input tax, it is recognised as part of the related asset or expense.

#### **Debtors and other receivables**

Debtor and other receivables are initially measured at fair value and subsequently measured at amortised cost using the effective interest method, less any provision for impairment.

#### **Cash and cash equivalents**

Cash and cash equivalents include cash on hand, deposits held at call with banks, other short-term highly liquid investments with original maturities of less than three months.

#### **Creditors and other payables**

Creditors and other payables are initially measured at fair value and subsequently measured at amortised cost using the effective interest method.

#### **Inventory**

Inventories are recorded at the lower of cost (determined on a first-in first-out basis) or net realisable value. This valuation includes allowances for slow moving and obsolete stock.

Net realisable value is the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business, less applicable variable selling expenses.

#### **Property, Plant and Equipment**

##### ***Recognition***

Property, plant and equipment consists primarily of operational assets. Expenditure is capitalised when it creates a new asset or increases the economic benefits over the total life of an existing asset. Costs that do not meet criteria for capitalisation are expensed.

The Trust also manages the construction and development of buildings, structures and enclosures on behalf of the Council. These assets are not recorded in the Trust's financial statements as ownership vests in the Council.

##### ***Measurement***

Property, plant and equipment are valued at historical cost less accumulated depreciation and impairment losses.

The initial cost of property, plant and equipment includes the purchase consideration, and those costs that are directly attributable to bringing the asset into the location and condition necessary for its intended purpose. Subsequent expenditure that extends or expands the asset's service potential is capitalised.

##### ***Impairment***

The carrying amounts of property, plant and equipment are reviewed at least annually to determine if there is any indication of impairment. Where an asset's recoverable amount is less than its carrying amount, it will be reported at its recoverable amount and an impairment loss will be recognised. The recoverable amount is the higher of an item's fair value less costs to sell and value in use.

##### ***Disposal***

Realised gains and losses arising from the disposal of property, plant and equipment are recognised in the Statement of Comprehensive Income in the period in which the transaction occurs.

#### **Depreciation**

Depreciation is provided on all assets owned by the Trust excluding assets under construction (work in progress). Depreciation is calculated on a straight line basis, to allocate the cost or value of the asset (less any residual value) over its useful life. The estimated useful lives of the assets are as follows:

##### ***Plant***

Audio Visual Equipment	3 years
Projector	5 years
Shade Sail	10 years
Hospital Equipment	10 years
Garden Furniture	10 years
Living Room Furniture	15 years
Endoscope	8 years

##### ***Furniture and Equipment***

Composter	10 years
CCTV	3 years
Incubators	12.5 years

#### **Work in Progress**

The cost of projects within work in progress is transferred to the relevant asset class when the project is completed and then depreciated.

#### **Employee Entitlements**

A provision for employee benefits (holiday leave, long service leave, and retirement gratuities) is recognised as a liability when benefits are earned but not paid. The Trust recognises a liability and an expense for a one off payment where contractually obliged or where there is a past practice that has created a constructive obligation.

#### **Holiday Leave**

Holiday leave (annual leave, long service leave qualified for and time off in lieu) is calculated on an actual entitlement basis at the greater of the average or current hourly earnings in accordance with sections 16(2) & 16(4) of the Holidays Act 2003.

#### **Long Service Leave and Retirement Gratuities**

Long service leave (not yet qualified for) and retirement gratuities have been calculated on an actuarial basis based on the likely future entitlements accruing to staff, after taking into account years of service, years to entitlement, the likelihood that staff will reach the point of entitlement, and other contractual entitlements information. The present value of the estimated future cash flows has been calculated using an inflation factor and a discount rate. The inflation rate used is the annual Consumer Price Index to 31 March prior to year end.

#### **Other Contractual Entitlements**

Other contractual entitlements include termination benefits. Termination benefits are recognised in the Statement of Financial Performance only when there is a demonstrable commitment to either terminate employment prior to normal retirement date or to provide such benefits as a result of an offer to encourage voluntary redundancy. Termination benefits settled within 12 months are reported at the amount expected to be paid, otherwise they are reported as the present value of the estimated future cash outflows.

#### **Provisions**

The Trust recognises a provision for future expenditure of uncertain amount or timing when there is a present obligation (either legal or constructive) as a result of a past event, it is probable that expenditures will be required to settle the obligation and a reliable estimate can be made of the amount of the obligation.

Provisions are not recognised for future operating losses. Provisions are measured at the present value of the expenditures expected to be required to settle the obligation using a pre-tax discount rate that reflects current market assessments of the time value of money and the risks specific to the obligation. The increase in the provision due to the passage of time is recognised as a finance cost.

#### **Other Liabilities and Provisions**

Other liabilities and provisions are recorded at the best estimate of the expenditure required to settle the obligation. Liabilities and provisions to be settled beyond 12 months are recorded at their present value.

#### **Contingent Assets and Liabilities**

Contingent liabilities and contingent assets are disclosed in the notes to the financial statements. Contingent liabilities are disclosed if the possibility that they will crystallise is not remote. Contingent assets are disclosed if it is probable that the benefits will be realised.

#### **Animal Acquisitions**

Animal acquisitions are expensed at cost.

### **Equity**

Equity is the residual interest in the Trust and is measured as the difference between total assets and total liabilities. The components of equity are retained earnings and restricted funds (special funds, trusts and bequests).

Restricted funds are those reserves that are subject to specific conditions of use whether under statute or accepted as binding by the Trust because of the specific reason for which the funds were provided.

Transfers from these reserves may be made only for specified purposes or when certain specified conditions are met.

### **Statement of Cash Flows**

The statement of cash flows is prepared using the direct approach. Operating activities include cash received from all income sources of the Trust and record the cash payments made for the supply of goods and services. Investing activities relate to the acquisition and disposal of assets. Financing activities relate to transactions that change the equity and debt capital structure of the Trust.

### **Related Parties**

Related parties arise where one entity has the ability to affect the financial and operating policies of another through the presence of control or significant influence. Related parties include Wellington City Council, Group, key management personnel and the governing body (Trust Board).

Trustees' remuneration is any money, consideration or benefit received, receivable or otherwise made available, directly or indirectly, to a trustee during the reporting period. The disclosures for the Trust include the remuneration of the Trustee board as they occupy the position of a member of the governing body of the Trust.

### **Changes in Accounting Policies**

There have been no changes in accounting policies. Uniform accounting policies have been applied on a consistent basis during the year.

Standards, amendments, and interpretations issued but not effective that have not been early adopted which are relevant to the Trust include:

The NZ IFRS PBE suite of accounting standards currently applicable for Public Benefit Entities is interim, pending the introduction of a new set of New Zealand Public Sector Accounting Standards (PBE standards). The transition date to the PBE standards is 1 July 2014.

Under this framework, the Trust will be eligible to apply the reduced disclosure regime (Tier 2 entity) of the Public Benefit Entity Accounting Standards. The Trust has not assessed the implications of the new accounting standards at this time.

No disclosures have been made in regard to new or amended NZ IFRS that are only applicable to 'for profit' entities.



**Ross Martin, Chair**

### 10. Appendix: Forecast Financial Statements

CCO: Wellington Zoo Trust Business Plan 2015/16		\$NZ000's						
Estimate 30-Jun-15	EARNINGS STATEMENT	Qtr to 30-Sep-15	Qtr to 31-Dec-15	Qtr to 31-Mar-16	Qtr to 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-17	Total YE 30-Jun-18
	<b>Revenue</b>							
2889	Trading Income	604	887	873	656	3,020	3,050	3,130
2757	WCC Grants	703	703	704	704	2,814	2,883	2,957
82	Other Grants	21	21	20	20	82	82	82
182	Sponsorships and Donations-Operational	49	76	52	60	237	237	237
730	Sponsorships and Donations-Capital					0	0	0
76	Investment Income	12	13	12	13	50	30	30
99	Other Income	25	25	25	25	100	100	100
6,815	<b>Total Revenue</b>	1,414	1,725	1,686	1,478	6,303	6,382	6,536
	<b>Expenditure</b>							
4,032	Employee Costs	1,064	1,064	1,065	1,065	4,258	4,317	4,427
1,958	Other Operating Expenses	504	531	491	498	2,024	2,045	2,102
21	Depreciation	5	5	5	6	21	20	7
0	Interest	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
730	Vested Assets					0	0	0
6,741	<b>Total Expenditure</b>	1,573	1,600	1,561	1,569	6,303	6,382	6,536
74	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit) before Taxation</b>	(159)	125	125	(91)	0	0	0
0	Taxation Expense					0	0	0
74	<b>Operating Surplus (Deficit)</b>	(159)	125	125	(91)	0	0	0
74	<b>Net Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	(159)	125	125	(91)	0	0	0
1.1%	<b>Operating Margin</b>	-11.2%	7.2%	7.4%	-6.2%	0.0%	0.0%	0.0%

Estimate 30-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION	As at 30-Sep-15	As at 31-Dec-15	As at 31-Mar-16	As at 30-Jun-16		As at 30-Jun-17	As at 30-Jun-18
	<b>Shareholder/Trust Funds</b>							
0	Share Capital/Settled Funds	0	0	0	0		0	0
0	Revaluation Reserves	0	0	0	0		0	0
583	Restricted Funds	583	583	583	583		583	583
380	Retained Earnings	221	346	471	380		380	380
963	<b>Total Shareholder/Trust Funds</b>	804	929	1,054	963		963	963
	<b>Current Assets</b>							
2,032	Cash and Bank	2,582	2,609	2,842	2,053		2,073	2,102
30	Accounts Receivable	30	30	30	30		60	60
60	Other Current Assets	60	60	60	60		60	60
2,122	<b>Total Current Assets</b>	2,672	2,699	2,932	2,143		2,193	2,222
	<b>Investments</b>							
0	Deposits on Call	0	0	0	0		0	0
0	Other Investments	0	0	0	0		0	0
0	<b>Total Investments</b>	0	0	0	0		0	0
	<b>Non-Current Assets</b>							
48	Fixed Assets	43	38	33	27		7	0
0	Other Non-current Assets	0	0	0	0		0	0
48	<b>Total Non-current Assets</b>	43	38	33	27		7	0
2,170	<b>Total Assets</b>	2,715	2,737	2,965	2,170		2,200	2,222
	<b>Current Liabilities</b>							
830	Accounts Payable and Accruals	800	700	700	400		400	400
365	Provisions	1,099	496	1,199	795		837	859
1,195	<b>Total Current Liabilities</b>	1,899	1,196	1,899	1,195		1,237	1,259
	<b>Non-Current Liabilities</b>							
0	Loans - WCC	0	0	0	0		0	0
0	Loans - Other	0	0	0	0		0	0
12	Other Non-Current Liabilities	12	12	12	12		0	0
12	<b>Total Non-Current Liabilities</b>	12	12	12	12		0	0
963	<b>Net Assets</b>	804	929	1,054	963		963	963
1.8	<b>Current Ratio</b>	1.4	1.8	2	1.8		2	1.8
44.0%	<b>Equity Ratio</b>	29.6%	43.5%	35.5%	44.4%		43.8%	43.3%

Estimate 50-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS	Qtr to Sep-15	Qtr to Dec-15	Qtr to Mar-16	Qtr to Jun-16	Total Yr Jun-16	Total Yr Jun-17	Total Yr Jun-18
	<i>Cash provided from:</i>							
2,889	Trading Receipts	604	887	873	656	3,020	3,050	3,130
2,757	WCC Grants	1407	0	1407	0	2,814	2,883	2,957
82	Other Grants	21	21	20	20	82	82	82
912	Sponsorships and Donations	49	76	52	60	237	237	237
76	Investment Income	12	13	12	13	50	30	30
99	Other Income	25	25	25	25	100	100	100
6,815		2,118	1,022	2,389	774	6,303	6,382	6,536
	<i>Cash applied to:</i>							
4,032	Payments to Employees	1,064	1,064	1,065	1,065	4,258	4,317	4,427
1,958	Payments to Suppliers	504	531	491	498	2,024	2,045	2,080
	Net GST Cashflow					0	0	0
730	Other Operating Costs (VESTING)			0	0	0	0	0
	Interest Paid	0				0	0	0
6,720		1,568	1,595	1,556	1,563	6,282	6,362	6,507
95	<b>Total Operating Cash Flow</b>	550	(573)	833	(789)	21	20	29
	<b>Investing Cash Flow</b>							
	<i>Cash provided from:</i>							
	Sale of Fixed Assets					0	0	0
	Other					0	0	0
0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	<i>Cash applied to:</i>							
0	Purchase of Fixed Assets					0	0	0
	Other Investing Cash for Capital Projects					0	0	0
0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	<b>Total Investing Cash Flow</b>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Estimate 30-Jun-15	STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS (CONT)	Qtr to 30-Sep-15	Qtr to 31-Dec-15	Qtr to 31-Mar-16	Qtr to 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-17	Total YE 30-Jun-18
	<b>Financing Cash Flow</b>							
	<i>Cash provided from:</i>							
	Drawdown of Loans					0	0	0
	Other					0	0	0
0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	<i>Cash applied to:</i>							
	Repayment of Loans					0	0	0
	Other					0	0	0
0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
0	<b>Total Financing Cash Flow</b>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
95	<b>Net Increase/(Decrease) in Cash Held</b>	550	(573)	833	(789)	21	20	29
1,937	<b>Opening Cash Equivalents</b>	2,032	2,582	2,009	2,842	2,032	2,053	2,073
2,032	<b>Closing Cash Equivalents</b>	2,582	2,009	2,842	2,053	2,053	2,073	2,102

Estimate 30-Jun-15	CASHFLOW RECONCILIATION	Qtr to 30-Sep-15	Qtr to 31-Dec-15	Qtr to 31-Mar-16	Qtr to 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-16	Total YE 30-Jun-17	Total YE 30-Jun-18
74	<b>Operating Surplus/(Deficit) for the Year</b>	(159)	125	125	(91)	0	0	0
	<i>Add Non Cash Items</i>							
21	Depreciation	5	5	5	6	21	20	7
	Other (Gifted Hospital Assets)		0		0	0	0	
95		(154)	130	130	(85)	21	20	7
	<b>Movements in Working Capital</b>							
	(Increase)/Decrease in Receivables	0	0	0	0	0	(30)	0
	(Increase)/Decrease in Other Current Assets	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Increase/(Decrease) in Accounts Payable	(30)	(100)	0	(300)	(430)	0	0
	Increase/(Decrease) in Other Current Liabilities	734	(603)	703	(404)	430	30	22
0		704	(703)	703	(704)	0	0	22
	<b>Net Gain/(Loss) on Sale:</b>							
	Fixed Assets	0				0		
	Investments	0				0		
0		0	0	0	0	0	0	0
95	<b>Net Cash Flow from Operations</b>	550	(573)	833	(789)	21	20	29



---

## 2014/15 THIRD QUARTER REPORT

---

### Purpose

1. This report outlines progress towards the delivery of the 2014/15 Annual Plan as at 31 March 2015.

### Recommendation/s

That the Environment Committee:

1. Note the information.

### Background

2. The quarterly report informs councillors of progress against the annual plan, and also ensures the annual report does not contain any unexpected and significant variances from performance. Responsibility for the report falls within the purview of the Governance, Finance and Planning Committee.

### Discussion

3. The attached quarterly report, with the accompanying appendix one, outlines the Council's progress against planned or budgeted performance for:
  - Income
  - Operational expenditure
  - Capital expenditure
  - Service delivery (KPI performance)
  - Compliance with Treasury Policy
  - Key programmes.
4. Significant variances are explained, by activity group, in appendix one to the quarterly report. This quarterly report explains variances greater than 10%.
5. Details relating to significant projects are highlighted, by relevant committee, on pages 2-4 of the quarterly report itself.

### Attachments

- |               |                                  |          |
|---------------|----------------------------------|----------|
| Attachment 1. | Third Quarter Report 2014/15     | Page 277 |
| Attachment 2. | Appendix one - Q3 Report 2014/15 | Page 281 |

Author	Shanan Smith, Senior Advisor Planning and Reporting
Authoriser	John McGrath, Acting Director Strategy and External Relations

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

Not applicable.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

Not applicable.

### **Financial implications**

This report outlines progress against the planned projects, spending and service levels indicated in the Annual Plan.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

Not applicable.

### **Risks / legal**

Not applicable. This report outlines progress towards the annual plan and annual report, which are legislative requirements.

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

Not applicable.

### **Communications Plan**

Not applicable.

# QUARTERLY REPORT

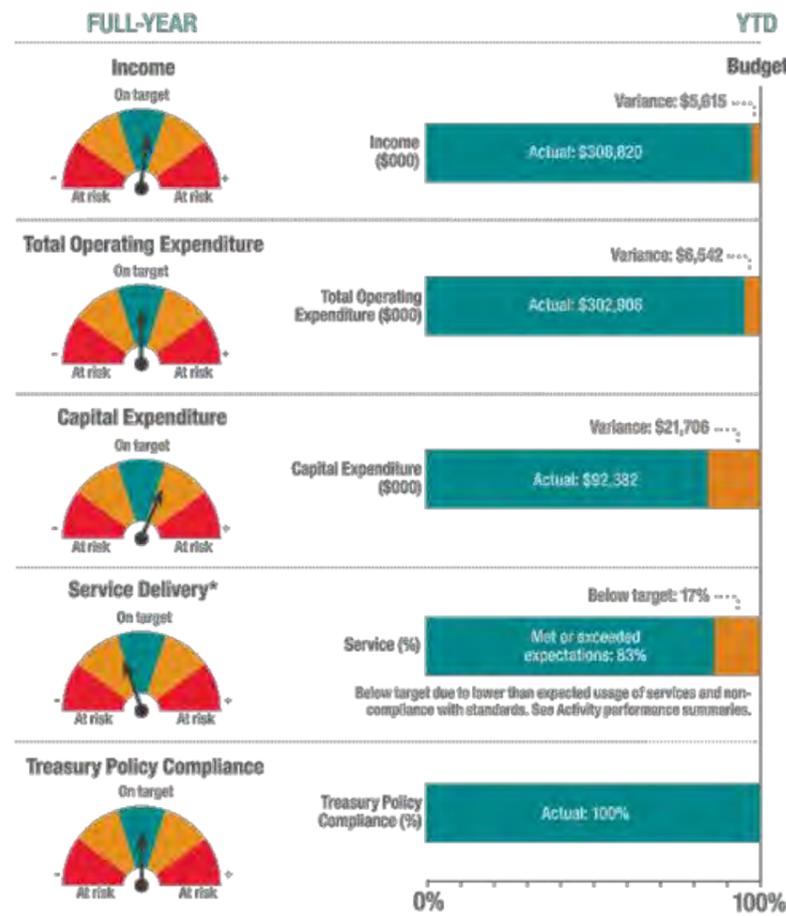
## QUARTER THREE (1 JANUARY – 31 MARCH 2015)

This report summarises the Council's progress in the third quarter of 2014/15 towards fulfilling the intentions outlined in the Annual Plan. Quarterly performance is assessed against:

- income
  - total operating expenditure
  - capital expenditure
  - service delivery (KPI performance)
  - Treasury policy compliance.
- Areas where there is a risk to or significant variance from budgeted expectations are discussed in the performance summaries for each of the Council's seven activity areas.

Council is making good progress with the major projects it had planned for the year and is largely on track to meet year-end targets. Service performance exceptions are mainly due to lower than forecast use of services. See activity performance summaries for more information.

## HOW ARE WE PERFORMING?



Note: that the figures for service performance only include key performance indicators (KPIs) that are measured on a monthly or quarterly basis. Annual KPIs will be incorporated at year-end (30 June 2016). In some areas, KPIs exceeded their targets by over 10%. These exceptional results are also outlined in the Activity performance summaries.

## FINANCIAL SNAPSHOT

### STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE

The Council's consolidated financial performance for the period 1 July 2014 to 31 March 2015 is presented in this section. Positive numbers in the financial statements indicate a favourable variance from budget and negative numbers (represented by brackets) indicate an unfavourable variance from budget.

	YTD 2014/15			Full year 2014/15	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
Rates Income	191,509	191,450	59	254,667	255,267
Other Income	1,889	2,011	(121)	11,423	13,681
Lease Income	27,992	27,376	215	36,245	36,574
Interest Income	0	33	(33)	8	44
Income from Activities	86,185	80,835	5,350	129,765	123,205
Development Contributions	1,645	1,500	145	2,000	2,000
<b>Total Income</b>	<b>308,820</b>	<b>303,205</b>	<b>5,615</b>	<b>434,108</b>	<b>430,771</b>
Personnel Expenditure	73,318	73,248	(70)	96,907	97,678
General Expenses	141,711	142,333	622	200,378	200,245
Financing Expenditure	14,890	17,281	2,390	20,897	23,041
Depreciation & Loss/Gain on Sale	72,988	76,585	3,599	98,194	102,164
<b>Total Expenditure</b>	<b>302,906</b>	<b>309,448</b>	<b>6,542</b>	<b>416,376</b>	<b>423,127</b>
<b>Net Operating Surplus/(Deficit)</b>	<b>5,914</b>	<b>(6,243)</b>	<b>12,157</b>	<b>17,732</b>	<b>7,644</b>

The year-to-date net operating surplus of \$5.914m is \$12.157m better than the budgeted deficit of \$6.243m. This favourable variance is attributable to a combination of factors as outlined below.

### INCOME

Year-to-date total income is above budget by \$5.615m:

- Income from Activities is \$5.350m above budget mainly due to higher New Zealand Transport Agency funding (\$4.7m) for the capital roading programme and recognition of increased government funding from the housing upgrade programme (\$0.703m).

### EXPENDITURE

Year-to-date total expenditure is under budget by \$6.542m:

- Depreciation & Loss/Gain on Sale is \$3.599m under budget largely due to savings as a result of lower infrastructure asset values at 30 June 2014 than forecast. These differences will be permanent.
- Financing Expenditure is under budget by \$2.390m due to lower levels of borrowings resulting from delays in the capital programme in the first nine months of the year.

### FULL YEAR FORECAST

The forecast Net Operating Surplus for the year is currently \$10.1m more than budget. This includes \$4.0m of depreciation savings resulting from lower infrastructure asset values at 30 June 2014, \$6.1m additional funding from the New Zealand Transport Agency funding in respect of the capital roading programme, \$1.3m recognition of additional government grant income from the housing upgrade programme and \$2.1m of financing expenditure savings due to a more favourable borrowings position. Offsetting these favourable forecast variances is lower revenue from parking, pools and fitness centres, the ASB centre and building consents (\$3.1m), and Council-approved overspends for Community Events and the Events Development Fund (\$1.6m).

### NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE

	YTD 2014/15			Full Year 2014/15	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
Governance	10,543	10,837	294	14,281	14,438
Environment	94,200	101,308	7,108	126,371	133,486
Economic Development	18,487	19,466	979	24,770	23,774
Cultural Wellbeing	15,575	14,875	(600)	18,047	17,190
Social and Recreation	37,862	38,319	466	49,945	50,228
Urban Development	15,121	14,413	(707)	20,346	19,270
Transport	17,149	18,536	1,387	24,405	25,028
<b>Total Activity Area</b>	<b>208,927</b>	<b>217,854</b>	<b>8,927</b>	<b>278,166</b>	<b>283,414</b>
Council	(214,841)	(211,611)	3,230	(295,897)	(291,058)
<b>Total</b>	<b>(5,914)</b>	<b>6,243</b>	<b>12,157</b>	<b>(17,732)</b>	<b>(7,644)</b>

### CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

	YTD 2014/15			Full Year 2014/15	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
Environment	18,116	26,645	8,530	33,122	33,216
Economic Development	1,339	2,030	691	2,471	2,471
Cultural Wellbeing	113	1,875	1,763	2,321	2,321
Social and Recreation	20,913	23,440	2,527	31,421	30,775
Urban Development	13,430	14,037	608	25,714	23,058
Transport	28,522	30,637	2,115	42,612	39,803
<b>Total Activity Area</b>	<b>82,432</b>	<b>98,665</b>	<b>16,233</b>	<b>137,661</b>	<b>131,644</b>
Council	9,849	15,423	5,474	19,297	20,369
<b>Total</b>	<b>92,382</b>	<b>114,088</b>	<b>21,706</b>	<b>156,958</b>	<b>152,013</b>

### Year to date

Year to date underspend is due to several projects being behind schedule: Water and Sewer Network renewals \$7.4m; Earthquake Strengthening programme \$1.7m; Housing Renewal works \$1.6m; Zoo upgrades \$1.3m; and the refurbishment of the Museum of City and Sea \$1.2m.

### Full year forecast

The full year forecast includes forecast overspends in three large projects: Johnsonville Triangle roading project \$5.1m offset by unbudgeted external funding \$4.8 m (net forecast overspend \$0.3m); Victoria Street upgrade \$4.9m offset by unbudgeted external funding \$2.2m (net forecast overspend \$2.7m); and the Housing Upgrade Programme (Kotuku project) \$1.4m (ahead of budget - to be brought forward from 2015/16). The forecast overspends are offset by forecast project underspends of \$11.0m.

### STATEMENT OF BORROWINGS

Total committed borrowing facilities are \$451.5m providing headroom of \$111.5m. Our liquidity ratio is at 112% compared to the policy minimum of 110%.

	Forecast 30 June 2015 \$000	YTD 31 March 2015 \$000	30 June 2014 \$000
Facilities at start of year	460,500	460,500	429,000
New/matured facilities (net)	(9,000)	(9,000)	31,500
Facilities at end of period	451,500	451,500	460,500
Borrowings at start of year	348,000	348,000	341,000
Change in core borrowing + (-)	22,457	16,843	6,638
Repayment of loans + (-)	-	-	-
Change in working capital requirement + (-)	(1,457)	(24,843)	362
<b>Net borrowings at end of period</b>	<b>369,000</b>	<b>340,000</b>	<b>348,000</b>
Plus unutilised facilities	82,500	111,500	112,500
<b>Total borrowing facilities available</b>	<b>451,500</b>	<b>451,500</b>	<b>460,500</b>

Note: 'Borrowing facilities' excludes \$5m of uncommitted funding lines. Facilities do not include short term commercial paper/deposits.

### TREASURY POLICY COMPLIANCE

All of the core policy compliance requirements were achieved as shown below.

### PRUDENTIAL TREASURY LIMITS

Prudential limits*	Policy limit (%)	Actual (%)	Compliance
Borrowings as a % of equity	<10	5.3	Yes
Borrowing as a % of income	<150	86.1	Yes
Net interest as a % of annual rates income	<20	8.2	Yes

Interest rate risk control limits (interest rate exposure)	Policy limit (%)	Actual (%)	Compliance
Fixed interest proportion	50-95	92	Yes
Broken down: 0-3 year bucket	20-60	20	Yes
Broken down: 3-5 year bucket	20-60	21	Yes
Broken down: 5-10 year bucket	20-60	50	Yes

Liquidity/funding risk (access to funds)**	Policy limit (%)	Actual (%)	Compliance
Liquidity/funding risk (access to funds)**	>110	112	Yes
Broken down: 0-3 year bucket	20-60	52	Yes
Broken down: 3-5 year bucket	20-60	28	Yes
Broken down: 5-10 year bucket	15-60	20	Yes

\* Equity is based on the 2014/15 annual plan. Net interest is actual. Annual rates and income are based on 2014/15 annual plan.

\*\* Liquidity is defined as: Current borrowings + committed loan facilities divided by 12 month peak borrowings (for the purpose of measuring liquidity short dated Commercial Paper is excluded).

Item 4.3 Attachment 1

KEY PROGRAMMES		Q1 Actual (1 Jul–30 Sep 2014)	Q2 Actual (1 Oct–31 Dec 2014)	Q3 Actual (1 Jan–31 Mar 2015)	Q4 Planned (1 Apr–30 Jun 2015)
Committee	Programme	Milestones			
GOVERNANCE	ACCOUNTABILITY AND PLANNING	Annual Report adopted			
		Long-term plan: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Workshop series commenced.</li> </ul>	Long-term plan: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Financial strategy.</li> <li>Infrastructure strategy.</li> <li>Programme overview.</li> </ul>	Long-term plan: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Funding and financial policies.</li> <li>Performance framework.</li> <li>Adopt draft plan documents and consultation document.</li> </ul>	Long-term plan: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consultation.</li> <li>Adopt final plan.</li> </ul>
		Mid-term capex review – \$15m investment package adopted and to be implemented, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Funding for Meet the Locals enclosure at Wellington Zoo.</li> <li>Expansion of City to Sea Museum.</li> <li>Victoria Street transformation in line with Central City Framework.</li> <li>Urban catalyst projects.</li> </ul>			
ECONOMIC GROWTH AND ARTS	ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT	Region wide consultation on development of Wellington Regional Economic Development Agency (WREDA).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WREDA established on 5 December 2014.</li> <li>WREDA Chair (Peter Biggs) and Board appointed.</li> <li>Recruitment process for WREDA Chief Executive commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WREDA transition and implementation.</li> <li>Continue recruitment process for WREDA Chief Executive.</li> <li>Developing draft business plan for 2015/16. To be presented to WRS Committee in April.</li> </ul>	
	8 BIG IDEAS	Convention centre: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Public consultation undertaken.</li> </ul>	Convention centre: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Final commercial terms agreed for Council consideration and final decision on proposal.</li> <li>Developer subsequently indicated problems in finalising deal on proposed site.</li> </ul>	Convention centre: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Progress options for delivery of the project and report back to Council.</li> </ul>	
		Tech hub: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Developed Expression of Interest (EOI) documentation.</li> </ul>	Tech hub: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EOI process completed and preferred provider identified.</li> </ul>	Tech hub: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Business case developed.</li> </ul>	Tech hub: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Negotiations with preferred partner subject to LTP funding approval.</li> <li>Business case to be considered by Economic Growth and Arts committee.</li> </ul>
		Airport runway extension: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Results of economic impact assessments received.</li> </ul>	Airport runway extension: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reports peer reviewed by council officers and external experts.</li> <li>Report back to Council and approval of additional funding to complete RMA approvals process.</li> </ul>	Airport runway extension: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wellington Regional Mayoral Forum agreed in principle to fund up to \$150 million towards the project.</li> <li>Continue to develop business case for runway extension.</li> </ul>	Airport runway extension: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plan to present updates to the regional councils.</li> <li>Monitor progress of RMA approvals process.</li> </ul>
		Film museum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Preliminary investigations and concept development continue.</li> </ul>			
	MAJOR EVENTS	World of Wearable-Arts – 25 Sep to 12 Oct. Beervana – 22 to 23 Aug. All Blacks v South Africa Test – 13 Sep. LUX Light Festival – 22 Aug to 1 Sep. Oktoberfest – 19 to 20 Sep.	SkyShow – 8 Nov. Toi Māori Art Market – 14 to 16 Nov. Rugby League Four Nations Final – 15 Nov. Capital Christmas – 10 to 24 Dec. New Year's Eve Festival – 31 Dec.	IRB Sevens – 6 to 7 Feb. Homegrown Music Festival – 7 Mar. ICC Cricket World Cup – 14 Feb to 29 Mar. Cuba-Dupa – 28 to 29 Mar.	World Water Ski Racing Championships – 9 to 20 Apr. WW100 and ANZAC Commemorations – 25 Apr. AFL match – 25 Apr. FIFA Under-20 World Cup – 30 May to 20 Jun.
COMMUNITY SPORTS AND RECREATION	HOUSING UPGRADE	Berkeley Dallard and Etona: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction completed and buildings reoccupied.</li> </ul>			
		Arlington Site 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Business case under development.</li> </ul>			Arlington Site 1: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Councillor workshop on redevelopment options.</li> </ul>
		Arlington Site 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RFP under development.</li> </ul>	Arlington Site 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>High-level brief issued to potential suppliers.</li> </ul>	Arlington Site 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RFP issued.</li> </ul>	Arlington Site 2: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RFP results evaluation.</li> <li>Commence development of detailed design.</li> </ul>

# KEY PROGRAMMES

		Q1 Actual (1 Jul–30 Sep 2014)	Q2 Actual (1 Oct–31 Dec 2014)	Q3 Actual (1 Jan–31 Mar 2015)	Q4 Planned (1 Apr–30 Jun 2015)
Committee	Programme	Milestones			
COMMUNITY SPORTS AND RECREATION	HOUSING UPGRADE	<p>Marshall Court:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Under construction.</li> </ul> <p>Kotuku:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tender evaluation complete.</li> </ul>	<p>Kotuku:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction contract commenced.</li> </ul>	<p>Marshall Court:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction complete.</li> <li>Units let to suitable occupants.</li> </ul> <p>Kotuku:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Under construction.</li> </ul>	<p>Standalone properties renewal and upgrade programme:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Programme planning and investigation continues.</li> <li>First 15 properties completed.</li> </ul>
	RECREATION UPGRADES	<p>Keith Spry Pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Teaching pool and children's pool tanks completed.</li> <li>Maintenance work started on existing pool.</li> </ul>	<p>Keith Spry Pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrade work on new pools and change rooms continued.</li> </ul>	<p>Keith Spry Pool:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Upgrade work completed and pool opened to the public in February 2015.</li> </ul>	
ENVIRONMENT	WATER UPGRADES	<p>Seismic strengthening:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Strengthening of Maupuia No1 and No2 reservoirs completed.</li> <li>Melrose reservoir design work completed.</li> </ul>	<p>Seismic strengthening:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Melrose reservoir tender completed.</li> </ul>	<p>Seismic strengthening:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Melrose reservoir construction commenced. Completion due January 2016.</li> <li>Auto-shut valve (ASV) at Roseneath No 2 reservoir installed.</li> <li>Linden and Newlands reservoir design work completed.</li> </ul>	<p>Seismic strengthening:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Linden and Newlands reservoir construction contract awarded.</li> <li>ASV installations at Montgomery, Mt Wakefield and Broadmeadows reservoirs commences.</li> </ul>
	NATURAL ENVIRONMENT	<p>Our Capital Spaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Completed pre-engagement for review of Biodiversity Action Plan.</li> <li>Completed sediment reduction plan for Porirua Harbour Strategy.</li> <li>Established interagency planning group for the development of Watts Peninsula as a heritage park.</li> <li>Funding approved for Mountain Bike Economic Growth Initiative (MBEGI) to develop business plan for Wellington as a premier mountain bike destination.</li> </ul>	<p>Our Capital Spaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Biodiversity Strategy approved by Environment Committee to formally consult.</li> <li>Consultation on draft Suburban Reserves Management Plan completed.</li> <li>MBEGI undertaking economic modelling for visitor mountain biking activity in Wellington.</li> </ul>	<p>Our Capital Spaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consultation completed on Our Natural Capital – Biodiversity Strategy. We received 52 detailed submissions and 26 oral submissions.</li> <li>Completed consultation on Mt Victoria Master Plan.</li> </ul>	<p>Our Capital Spaces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Final Biodiversity Strategy to Environment Committee for approval (4 June).</li> <li>Mt Victoria Master Plan finalised.</li> <li>MBEGI completed business plan for Wellington as a premier mountain bike destination.</li> </ul>
TRANSPORT AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT	CITY RESILIENCE	<p>Earthquake strengthening of Council buildings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clarrie Gibbons Building strengthening completed.</li> <li>Network Newtown strengthening commenced.</li> <li>Truby King House chimney strengthening completed.</li> <li>Thistle Hall strengthening continues.</li> </ul>	<p>Earthquake strengthening of Council buildings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Network Newtown strengthening nearly completed.</li> <li>Portico demolition commenced.</li> <li>Band Rotunda design work commenced.</li> <li>Planning for strengthening chapel and crematorium at Karori Cemetery commenced.</li> <li>Thistle Hall strengthening completed.</li> </ul>	<p>Earthquake strengthening of Council buildings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Band Rotunda strengthening plan and tendering process complete.</li> <li>Thistle Hall contract maintenance period complete.</li> </ul>	<p>Earthquake strengthening of Council buildings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Band Rotunda remediation complete.</li> <li>Portico demolition completed.</li> <li>Planning for strengthening chapel and crematorium at Karori Cemetery completed.</li> </ul>
		<p>Application submitted to the Rockefeller Foundation's "100 Resilient Cities" programme.</p>	<p>Application to "100 Resilient Cities" programme successful.</p>	<p>Wellington City Council part of the New Zealand delegation to the World Conference on Disaster Risk Reduction in Sendai Japan.</p>	<p>Appoint Chief Resilience Officer to lead development of a city resilience strategy.</p>
		<p>Town Hall strengthening project is awaiting further information on options. Alternative use continues to be worked on.</p>			

Item 4.3 Attachment 1

KEY PROGRAMMES

		Q1 Actual (1 Jul–30 Sep 2014)	Q2 Actual (1 Oct–31 Dec 2014)	Q3 Actual (1 Jan–31 Mar 2015)	Q4 Planned (1 Apr–30 Jun 2015)	
Committee	Programme	Milestones				
TRANSPORT AND URBAN DEVELOPMENT	CITY RESILIENCE	<p>Hataitai Bus Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Portal strengthening design and tender documents completed and issued.</li> <li>Public notification of works and stakeholder briefings.</li> </ul>	<p>Hataitai Bus Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract awarded and work to strengthen portals commenced in November 2014.</li> <li>Work is progressing on both sides of tunnel with 26% completed to date.</li> </ul> <p>Seatoun Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Received draft assessment report.</li> </ul>	<p>Hataitai Bus Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Work to strengthen portals continues with 90% completed.</li> </ul> <p>Seatoun Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contract tender for strengthening work on hold due to request from GWRC to delay work until after the trolley buses are decommissioned in 2017.</li> </ul>	<p>Hataitai Bus Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Work to strengthen portals completed.</li> </ul> <p>Seatoun Tunnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complete detailed design for strengthening work.</li> </ul>	
	WATERFRONT FRAMEWORK AND WATERFRONT DEVELOPMENT PLAN	North Kumutoto project:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Council decision on building, long-term lease and public space projects.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Application for resource consent submitted.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Resource consent application process continues. Council planning report lodged with Environment Court.</li> </ul>	
		TSB Arena and Shed 6:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Investigations commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Detailed planning completed and tender documentation prepared.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Work underway to renew exterior cladding.</li> </ul>	
					<p>Waterfront Development Plan</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Agree and consult on draft three-year Waterfront Development Plan (WDP)</li> </ul>	<p>Waterfront Development Plan</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Consider submissions and adopt final WDP including the design of Frank Kitts Park.</li> </ul>
	URBAN DEVELOPMENT	Parliamentary precinct:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contractor appointed for Cenotaph upgrade.</li> <li>Construction commenced 1 September.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All demolition and ground works completed.</li> <li>Work commenced on new staircase and paving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Work completed and space opened up for public use.</li> </ul>	
		Memorial park:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Arras Tunnel opened and park construction commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Park construction underway. Australian Memorial construction commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Park construction complete.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Park opening and Anzac day commemoration.</li> </ul>
		Kilbirnie town centre phase two:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Deferred pending confirmation of design brief.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Design brief still to confirmed following consultation.</li> <li>Concept design in progress.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Detailed design completed and contract awarded (subject to suitable design being confirmed).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction underway (subject to suitable design being confirmed).</li> </ul>
		Victoria Street:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Funding and concept design approved and detailed design commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Detailed design completed and construction commenced.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Full construction work underway with construction commencing in southern block.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Major construction works to be completed by end of June.</li> <li>Minor additional works may continue.</li> </ul>
		Lombard Lane:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Design brief being confirmed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Concept design completed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Project placed on hold subject to adjacent building owner removing building and constructing a new one.</li> </ul>	
		Island Bay to City Cycle route:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section one (Shorland Park to Wakefield Park) design and consultation.</li> <li>Section two (Wakefield Park to John St) planning and preparation for public consultation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Section one (Shorland Park to Wakefield Park) design and consultation completed. Committee agreed to final design.</li> <li>Section two (Wakefield Park to John St) planning and preparation for public consultation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Council vote deferred while cycling framework is developed in more detail.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After adoption of a cycling framework, Councillors will consider the Island Bay cycleway.</li> <li>If approved by Council, construction is expected to commence in early 2015/16.</li> </ul>
Johnsonville road improvements:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Broderick Rd Bridge construction started.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Broderick Rd Bridge construction continues.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Broderick Rd Bridge construction continued.</li> <li>State Highway One off-ramp work commenced.</li> <li>Other work commenced: Signal works, street and crossing upgrades, and pedestrian and cycling improvements.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Broderick Rd Bridge construction to be completed.</li> <li>State Highway One off-ramp work continues.</li> <li>Other work continues: Signal works, street and crossing upgrades, and pedestrian and cycling improvements.</li> </ul>	
TRANSPORT	Public Transport Spine:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Undertake core spine assessments to determine physical corridor constraints and detailed assessment of core routes based on integration with the Council's cycle planning.</li> </ul>				

# 1. GOVERNANCE

## Pārongo ā-Tāone

**We want to maintain confidence in our decision-making.**

**We have an obligation to ensure the views of Māori and mana whenua are heard.**

### WHAT WE DO

- Governance, information and engagement
- Māori and mana whenua partnerships.

### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

- We equipped the council meetings rooms to enable elected members and the public to participate remotely in meetings via audio and audio-visual links.
- We interacted with over 78,000 customers through the Contact Centre.
- We co-hosted with Port Nicholson Block Settlement Trust, the Waitangi Day celebrations at Waitangi Park.
- The Mayor selected her Tuia Rangatahi (Young Māori Leadership Development Programme) representative - Māia Huriwaka, a Year 13 student nominated by Wellington East Girls College.
- 11 March – we sponsored Te Rā Haka where 400 college students from across the region came together at ASB Sports Centre to learn local haka.
- 15 March – we sponsored Te Rā o Kupe, which was hosted by The Kupe Charitable Trust, recognising local Māori music and food.

### SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES TO PERFORMANCE<sup>3</sup>:

#### SERVICE DELIVERY

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Variance explanation
Council, committee and subcommittee reports that are made available to the public five days prior to the meeting (%)	61%	80%	(24%)	Over 80% of agendas were with the elected members five days before meeting and in the public domain four days before the meeting. We continue to achieve 100% for our statutory target to make reports available to the public two days prior to meetings.

#### NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE

Activity	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
1.1 Governance, Information & Engagement	10,444	10,669	224	14,057	14,213
1.2 Māori Engagement (mana whenua)	99	169	70	225	225
Year to date variance is due to timing of MOU payments.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>10,543</b>	<b>10,837</b>	<b>294</b>	<b>14,281</b>	<b>14,438</b>

#### CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

No significant variances.

<sup>3</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

## 2. ENVIRONMENT

### Taiao

We aim to protect and enhance Wellington's natural environment.

#### WHAT WE DO

- Gardens, beaches and green open spaces
- Waste reduction and energy conservation
- Water
- Wastewater
- Stormwater
- Conservation attractions.

#### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

##### Gardens and green open spaces

- We hosted the Kirsten Reynolds photographic exhibition at the Treehouse in the Botanic Garden.
- We completed the fit out of the Sextons Cottage in the Bolton Street Cemetery for public hire.
- Te Kopahou Reserve Visitors Centre won 2 awards in the NZ Institute of Landscape Architecture awards, the George Malcolm Supreme Award and an award for outstanding design.
- Otari-Wilton's Bush won an international Green Flag Award. Green Flags are awarded for excellent management of the environment, historical features, safety and as great places to play and relax.
- We completed renewals and upgrade work on the Blue Trail at Otari-Wiltons Bush.
- Victoria University Summer Scholars completed work on a range of topics including the Great Kereru Count, visitor use of mobile technology in the Botanic Gardens and pest monitoring in rural areas.
- We developed a new trail at Makara Peak Mountain Bike Park (Peak Flow).
- We completed a pedestrian bridge build on the community track Silversky in Crofton Downs, on behalf of the local community group. This was a project funded by Transpower.
- We completed a new entranceway and car park on Alexandra Road, Mt Victoria to assist with vehicle congestion at the SPCA (in the old Chest Hospital).
- The success of the Southwest Peninsula goat project was reported to stakeholders in the Makara community, with a 4,950 goats killed over the length of the project (2011–14).
- We continued to maintain infrastructure within gardens and green open spaces including maintaining and repairing furniture, carparks and fencing. We installed new bike racks at Princess Bay and an outdoor shower at Surfers Corner in Lyall Bay. We also installed ten commemorative seats in reserves and coastal areas.
- We completed regular garden and turf maintenance over the quarter. Weather wise it was very dry, which impacted on turf areas with no irrigation. Overall we averaged 90% for our operational (mowing, horticulture and sportsfields) maintenance audits which met our targets.
- We completed removal of 1.2 hectares of hazardous trees on Te Ahumairangi. This is part of our ongoing management of high-risk areas.
- We celebrated Parks Week (7 -15 March) with 27 events, located in 25 different open spaces with more than 6000 participants. It was our biggest Parks Week yet and received good

media coverage. The week was launched with a Pop Up Forest in Bond Street where 700 native trees were given away.

- 3 University students from Germany completed a 3 month internship working on a range of tasks across Council including a Parks User Survey, street tree data collection and learning about different aspects of local government in NZ.

Climate change, smart energy and waste reduction

- Smart Energy challenge – five teams completed this year’s Smart Energy Challenge, with one team, Switched on Bikes, already launching a new business, a crowdfunding campaign, and gaining media profile.
- Ninety-five homes received a sustainability assessment as part of the Home Energy Saver Programme.
- Forty low-income families received insulation retrofits as part of the Warm Up Wellington programme.
- National Food Waste Prevention Program – a joint project involving all of the nine councils from the Wellington region identified organic waste (including food waste) as a key area to manage. A project was undertaken to understand exactly how much edible food is being thrown away and how people can be helped to reduce waste. A national promotional campaign was launched in March 2015, to publicise the results of the research and raise public awareness.

Water, wastewater and stormwater

- We renewed water mains in Knoll St, Drummond St, and Ranelagh St.
- We renewed sewer drains in Warwick St, Garden Rd, South Karori Rd and Fernlea Ave.
- Stormwater drains were replaced through Massey University out to Wallace St and in Braithwaite St. A section of culvert in Kent Tce was strengthened.

**SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES TO PERFORMANCE<sup>4</sup>:**

**SERVICE DELIVERY**

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Explanation
Visitors to Botanic Garden	1,180,189	1,027,686	15%	We had an increase in cruise ship visitors, and good weather resulted in high attendance at the Summer City Gardens Magic shows.
WCC Corporate energy use: main CCOs	5,487,118	7,327,696	25%	In previous years this measure included Wellington Waterfront Limited, which is now included in the WCC general result
WCC Corporate energy use: WCC general	14,911,311	13,480,065	(11%)	This result now includes City Shaper (previously called Wellington Waterfront Limited), which was previously included in the main CCOs result.
Freshwater sites (%) within acceptable faecal coliform counts	75%	95%	(21%)	Investigations are ongoing for the four areas where water quality is poor. We have corrected the faults we have found so far.
Zealandia – education programme attendees	4,750	5,277	(10%)	The Trust expects to achieve its year-end target.

**NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE**

Activity	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
2.1 Gardens, Beaches and Open Space	20,012	20,796	784	27,646	28,176
Under budget due to the timing of the grant funding for the Lyall Bay Surf Club and savings in rates for the Town Belt. This is partly offset by additional street cleaning costs.					
2.2 Waste Reduction & Energy Conservation	392	833	441	118	280
Year to date variance mainly due to timing of general expenditure. Forecast variance relates to increased revenue from rubbish bag sales and waste minimisation activities, which is offset by lower volumes of waste to the landfill.					

<sup>4</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

**Item 4.3 Attachment 2**

Activity	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
2.3 Water	27,456	29,907	2,452	36,994	39,879
Year to date and forecast variance mainly relates to savings on insurance costs and depreciation, following the revaluation of infrastructure assets.					
2.4 Wastewater	29,049	30,284	1,235	38,897	40,377
Year to date and forecast variance relates to savings on wastewater treatment due to reduced flows through Moa Point and savings on electricity.					
2.5 Stormwater	11,849	13,985	2,136	16,611	18,647
Year to date and forecast variance mainly relates to savings on insurance costs and depreciation, following the revaluation of infrastructure assets.					
2.6 Conservation Attraction	5,442	5,503	60	6,104	6,126
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>94,200</b>	<b>101,308</b>	<b>7,108</b>	<b>126,371</b>	<b>133,486</b>

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Activity	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
2.1 Gardens, Beaches and Open Space	2,132	1,968	(164)	3,079	3,073
Programme is ahead of schedule.					
2.2 Waste Reduction & Energy Conservation	316	467	152	979	979
2.3 Water	5,751	10,991	5,240	12,904	13,004
Several projects started later than expected but are scheduled to be completed by year-end.					
2.4 Wastewater	4,502	6,824	2,231	7,420	7,745
Several projects started later than expected but are scheduled to be completed by year-end.					
2.5 Stormwater	3,986	3,524	(462)	4,580	4,255
Some projects have been completed ahead of schedule.					
2.6 Conservation Attractions	1,429	2,872	1,443	4,160	4,160
Zoo upgrades and renewals are behind schedule but are expected to be completed by year-end.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>18,116</b>	<b>26,645</b>	<b>8,530</b>	<b>33,122</b>	<b>33,216</b>

## 3. ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT

### Whanaketanga ōhanga

By supporting city promotions, events and attractions, we underscore Wellington's reputation as a great place to live and visit.

#### WHAT WE DO

- City promotions and business support

#### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

##### Events

- Wellington hosted four Cricket World Cup matches that attracted more than 80,000 fans, with 30-35% of attendees coming from outside the Wellington Region. The matches were complimented with a full activation programme including twilight concerts, a quarter final harbour fireworks show, the village green fan zone, street entertainers and fan trails.
- The inaugural CubaDupa transformed Cuba Street into an immersive festival of light, sound and taste. This celebration of Wellington's unique creative energy and cultural diversity attracted thousands to explore the Cuba Quarter as it was filled with food, music, dance and live street art.
- The Homegrown music festival was again a sell-out event and a great success despite some challenges. For the first time in the event's 8 year history the event was postponed a day due to gale force winds. Homegrown then morphed into two days of celebrating Kiwi Music.
- Summer City 2014/15 – more than 90 events showcased the talents of over 500 performers to an audience of over 400,000. We supported this with a marketing campaign that included the 'Our Wellington' Summer brochure and a strong Social Media campaign.
- We welcomed Meridian Energy as a sponsor of Gardens Magic, and presented a stellar line up of over 100 local musicians to more than 50,000 people. Students from Massey University College of Creative Arts designed and built the lighting installations.
- Approximately 20,000 attended the biennial Southeast Asian Night Market, which for the first time ran across two nights.

##### Innovation

- The Local Heroes speaker series for staff continued with speakers presenting to staff in February and March.
- Following successful response to ICT Grad school request for expression of interest, consortium submitted response to Request for Proposal.
- Supported a second civic hack-a-thon in Miramar.
- Supported Venture-Up, New Zealand's first youth accelerator.
- Provided support to NZ's first Open Source, Open Society conference to be held in April.

##### Wellington Museums Trust

- The Great Anniversary Weekend Scavenger Hunt attracted 1,800 visitors to the waterfront to experience activity presented by Capital E in partnership with all our Trust institutions, and selected other institutions and precinct businesses.
- Capital E launched their 2015 Schools programmes in OnTV and MediaLab including a new format, Across the Trenches, which is already proving to be the most popular of the script offerings in the OnTV Studio this year.

- Nearly 1,000 people attended City Gallery Wellington’s February Tuatara Open Late with a performance by Lawrence Arabia.
- The Yvonne Todd: Creamy Psychology exhibition at City Gallery Wellington closed on 15 March with total attendance for the exhibition of 42,767 and 316 copies of the Yvonne Todd book sold in our shop.
- A major upgrade/replacement of the Planetarium at Carter Observatory was completed.
- The Museum of Wellington City & Sea launched their public fundraising campaign for the Development project with their *What Year Are You?* campaign.
- The Capital E 2015 National Arts Festival ran in March across 14 days, showcasing 11 New Zealand and international productions, four world premieres, one mini Film Festival, and 196 performances.

**SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES IN PERFORMANCE<sup>5</sup>:**

**SERVICE DELIVERY**

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Explanation
Estimated attendance at Council supported events	497,723	330,000	51%	

**NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE**

Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
3.1 City Promo & Business Support	18,487	19,466	979	24,770	23,774
Council approved a \$0.8m overspend in relation to Events (C581) on 30th September 2014. The heavy events calendar this year, has led to an additional forecasted overspend.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>18,487</b>	<b>19,466</b>	<b>979</b>	<b>24,770</b>	<b>23,774</b>

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
3.1 City Promo & Business Support	1,339	2,030	691	2,471	2,471
TSB Arena work is behind schedule.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>1,339</b>	<b>2,030</b>	<b>691</b>	<b>2,471</b>	<b>2,471</b>

<sup>5</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

## 4. CULTURAL WELLBEING

### Oranga ahurea

Supporting arts activity adds vibrancy to the city as well as promoting inclusive, tolerant and strong communities.

#### WHAT WE DO

- Arts and cultural activities

#### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

##### Public Art

- The Public Art Panel selected three light box exhibitions for a year's exhibition programme, from December 2015. One public art proposal for a photographic poster project from Newtown through the city was also selected.
- The Public Art Fund supported two innovative digital arts projects, Rainscape and Time Machine, which were presented in February as part of The Performance Arcade.
- In March, a Public Art Fund project took 400 passengers by ferry to the quarantine limit of Mokopuna Island for an artist's vocal performance that revisited the fate of a sick man who died there in 1904.
- Joe Sheehan's major sculpture and soundscape Walk The Line, commissioned by the Wellington Sculpture Trust, for the newly developed Cenotaph precinct, was successfully completed.
- A new exhibition, The Colour of Courtenay Place by artist Gary Peters was installed in the Courtenay Place Park light boxes.
- The international contemporary artists Sasha Huber and Petri Saarikko took up residence at Te Whare Hēra, the live-and-work space dedicated to the Wellington International Artist Residency programme.
- We purchased new artworks by Lucien Rizos, Shannon Te Ao and Shaun Waugh for the City Art Collection.
- Conservation of a number of historic works being presented as part of the upcoming Portrait Gallery exhibition, Capital Characters, was undertaken.
- Toi Pōneke delivered three exhibitions – Black Dog Failure by Mark Antony Steelsmith, Low Noise 2 curated by Jason Wright, and In Response by Connah Podmore and Maria O'Toole.
- The Toi Pōneke 2015 Whitireia NZ artist-in-residence moved into her studio.
- Work continues on repairs to the Zephyrometer and Kereru Sculptures. Both are scheduled for reinstatement next quarter.

##### Supported projects

- The inaugural Upstream Art Trail in Central Park, which was held from 5–8 March, showcased installations from emerging artists and local schools. It was supported by the Creative Communities Scheme and the Arts and Culture Fund.
- The second Putahi Festival of contemporary Maori Theatre was held at Victoria University from 24–28 February. The event was supported by an Arts and Culture Grant.

##### Community arts

- Artist Ellen Coup completed a series of murals at the corner of Mandalay Terrace and Cashmere Ave in Khandallah on a bus shelter, electricity substation and two service boxes.
- Artist Ash Sisson completed a mural on a bus shelter at Luxford Street, Berhampore.
- We partnered with the Goethe Institute and Toi Whakaari to welcome Berlin

performance artist Uta Plate to Wellington for three months as the artist in resident at the Bolton Street Cottage.

**SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES IN PERFORMANCE<sup>6</sup>:**

**SERVICE DELIVERY**

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Explanation
Te Papa visitors	863,995	1,052,500	(18%)	Highest quarterly attendance this year, but still well below budgeted numbers. Five exhibits have ended this quarter, including Tyrannosaurus which has the 2nd highest opening weekend.
Arts and cultural festivals estimated attendance	560,955	684,000	(18%)	Figures exclude CubaDupa attendance of 50,000, which was funded through the WEID fund.
Total visits to museums and galleries	542,648	452,670	20%	Capital E and Museum of Wellington City & Sea have already achieved their full year targets. Other institutions are also performing well. However, visits to Carter Observatory are below target.

**NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
4.1 Galleries and Museums	15,575	14,975	(600)	18,047	17,190
Council approved a \$0.8m overspend in relation to Community Events (C130E) on 30th September 2014.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>15,575</b>	<b>14,975</b>	<b>(600)</b>	<b>18,047</b>	<b>17,190</b>

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
4.1 Galleries and Museums	113	1,875	1,763	2,321	2,321
Work on the Cable Car precinct and Museum of City and Sea is behind schedule.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>113</b>	<b>1,875</b>	<b>1,763</b>	<b>2,321</b>	<b>2,321</b>

<sup>6</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

## 5. SOCIAL AND RECREATION

### **Pāpori me te hākinakina**

**We provide a wide range of services throughout the city to encourage quality of life and healthy lifestyles.**

#### **WHAT WE DO**

- Recreation promotion and support
- Community support
- Public health and safety.

#### **HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER**

##### **Recreation promotion and support**

- Our facilities hosted New Zealand Basketball Association (NZBA) Camps, Central Pulse v Melbourne Vixens Netball Match, College Sport Wellington Volleyball Regional Champs, College Sport Wellington Futsal Regional Champs, College Sport Wellington Athletes with a Disability Day, National Secondary Schools Futsal Champs, Wellington Regional Long Course Swimming Championships, New Zealand National Junior Swimming Championships, North Island Diving Championships and the Weetbix Tryathlon.
- We started the field preparation for the two training grounds for the FIFA U20 World Cup, Newtown Park and David Farrington Park.
- Summer sport ended and we began the transition of our sportsfields to winter layouts.
- We hosted the Colgate Games, Capital Classics, McEvedy Shield and the NZ Track and Field Championship at Newtown Park, National Lacrosse Tournament at Wakefield Park and PK Softball Tournament at Hataitai Park.
- We provided training fields for the International Rugby 7's competition.
- We converted the old bowling club at Terawhiti in Karori into a football training field for Waterside Karori Football Club.
- We delivered 23 Push Play Events, with 1274 people participating.
- We promoted recreation and programmes delivering four Pop-up Park events, focusing on Mountain Biking, Golf, ASB Programmes and PARKing Day.
- We continued to work with Alex Moore Park Sport and Community Inc. on their proposal for a new indoor sport building at Alex Moore Park, Johnsonville.
- We completed playground upgrades at Tui Park and Lyndhurst Park.

##### **Community support**

- We launched a Korean Corner in the Central Library in January. It provides a significant expansion of the Central Library's Korean collection and is the first of its kind in Oceania. It includes customer PCs, DVDs and K-pop music CDs as well as books.
- In March we launched a Chinese Corner at the Central Library. The corner is made up of 300 books including 200 Chinese Language teaching books. The initiative is a joint undertaking between China Hanban, the Confucius Institute and the China Educational Publications Import and Export Corporation.
- We completed the construction of 27 one-bedroom apartments at Marshall Court (Miramar) which has been shortlisted for a NZIA Award.
- We vacated Kotuku Apartments (Kilbirnie) and handed the site over to the construction company for upgrade.
- We presented at the construction industry's national conference on the housing upgrade programme and Council's social housing service.

**Item 4.3 Attachment 2**

- We engaged over 100 tenants in the first phase of the social housing policy review process.
- In partnership with the Police and Community Patrols New Zealand, Pasifika Community Patrol and Western Community Patrol have been set up and a work plan is being developed.
- Successful Neighbours Day Aotearoa 2015 Summer of Neighbourliness, including various programmes and events at summer community fairs and festivals, community gardens, libraries, retirement homes and streets and neighbourhoods.
- The Neighbours Day Aotearoa campaign, #wellynextdoor, was very successful with nearly 7,000 visits from people all over the world. Our partnership with NEC enabled the #wellynextdoor videos to be incorporated into the videowall at Wellington International Airport.
- We facilitated the completion of the Johnsonville Mural and the Bee/community orchard bus stop mural in Khandallah.
- We continued to deliver the Urban Agriculture Programme and coordinated the Heritage Fruit Tree programme, with many volunteers waiting to adopt trees.
- We are partnering with Enviroschools, to enhance our environmental programmes in schools including coordinating bee programmes into schools to enhance our Bee-friendly City programme. This includes providing bee-friendly flower seeds, and putting together Bee Guidelines for the public.
- We further delivered on the Positive Aging Policy with more SeniorNet programmes, and a pictorial emergency resource for older or disabled persons. We also provided more Neighbours Cards to the CCDHB for their Health Passports and facilitated Neighbours Day activities with various retirement homes across the city.
- Wellington City was registered as a Child & Youth Friendly City and as part held a joint forum with UNICEF, to promote and foster child-friendly initiatives to progress accreditation.

**Public Health and safety**

- We have developed CCTV guidelines which formalise the role of CCTV in the safe city programme and guide future consideration for further cameras.
- We are piloting (in Cuba Street) the Eyes On theft prevention communication network in Cuba St in partnership with the police and local retailers. Critical information regarding shoplifting is shared via text and email in real time. 37 stores have signed up to be part of the programme.
- Worked with the police and the universities to ensure a presence at the students O-weeks. Liquor ban flyers and posters distributed at events and to university halls to raise awareness amongst students. Used social media to promote "The Pack" app during O-week events.
- A dedicated Graffiti Volunteer Coordinator has begun to work with local communities to develop volunteer programmes that will reduce graffiti vandalism, develop community ownership, restoring community pride and responding to the zero tolerance approach to the management of graffiti in the city.

**SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES IN PERFORMANCE<sup>7</sup>:**

**SERVICE DELIVERY**

Measure	Actual	Target	Variance	Variance Explanation
Visits to facilities: ASB Sports centre (off peak)	237,779	268,522	(11%)	Off peak variation is due to reduced basketball training prior to school.

<sup>7</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

Measure	Actual	Target	Variance	Variance Explanation
Visits to facilities: ASB Sports centre (peak)	206,016	234,862	(12%)	Weekday evening and Saturday usage was strong. We are implementing initiatives to increase Sunday bookings.
ASB Centre courts utilisation (peak)	42%	71%	(41%)	Weekday evening and Saturday usage was strong. We are implementing initiatives to increase Sunday bookings.
ASB Centre courts utilisation (off-peak)	36%	35%	4%	
Libraries website visitor sessions	2,747,316	900,000	205%	In 2012/13 we changed the measurement methodology. We expected results to decrease and we reduced the target accordingly. The expected decrease has not occurred and we will increase the target in the next long-term plan.
Number of uses of Leisure Card	92,878	73,759	26%	Use is consistent with the same period last year.
Occupancy rates (%) of Wellington City Council Community Centres and Halls	36%	45%	(21%)	We changed the methodology for this measure, which now combines community centres and community halls. We also set a new stretch target that we will struggle to meet by year-end.
Dog control – complaints received (% of registered dogs)	2.0%	2.6%	23%	
Percentage of planned inspections carried out for high-risk premises (category 3)	83%	75%	11%	After a slow start to the year, we are on track to achieve this target at year end.
Percentage of inspections carried out for high-risk premises (category 3) carried out during high trading hours.	31%	25%	23%	After a slow start to the year, we are on track to achieve this target at year end.

Item 4.3 Attachment 2

**NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
5.1 Recreation Promotion & Support	20,144	19,260	(885)	26,799	25,126
Revenue is unfavourable mainly in the fitness centres and the ASB Sports centre. Also labour costs are over budget partly due to the introduction of the Wellington Wage. This has meant a higher allocation of corporate overheads to this activity.					
5.2 Community Support	11,385	12,841	1,455	14,586	16,821
Under budget primarily due to Social Housing. The key variances are the timing of the recognition of the Crown grant for the Housing Upgrade Project and savings in interest, insurance and depreciation.					
5.3 Public Health and Safety	6,323	6,218	(104)	8,560	8,281
Over budget due to additional cleaning, depreciation and labour costs.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>37,852</b>	<b>38,319</b>	<b>466</b>	<b>49,945</b>	<b>50,228</b>

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
5.1 Recreation Promotion & Support	5,048	5,629	581	7,243	7,243
Some projects have started later than anticipated but are expected to be completed by the end of the year.					
5.2 Community Support	14,895	16,902	2,008	22,987	22,222
Under budget mainly due to housing renewal works behind budget. The Housing Upgrade Project is currently expected to be ahead of schedule by year end.					
5.3 Public Health and Safety	989	909	(79)	1,191	1,310
Programme is ahead of schedule.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>20,913</b>	<b>23,440</b>	<b>2,527</b>	<b>31,421</b>	<b>30,775</b>

## 6. URBAN DEVELOPMENT

### Tāone Tupu Ora

Our focus is on enhancing Wellington as a compact, vibrant, attractive and safe city that is built on a human scale and is easy to navigate.

#### WHAT WE DO

- Urban planning, heritage and public spaces development
- Building and development control.

#### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

- An application for a new air traffic control tower has been received. This will be sited in a new location adjacent to the airport retail park.
- An application for the demolition and replacement of BP House on Customhouse Quay has been received. The building has been vacant since the 2013 Seddon earthquakes.
- The Council's planning report for the Site 10 Direct Referral application has been submitted to the Environment Court.
- The Karori and Tawa communities have been consulted regarding the prospect of medium density residential areas (MDRAs) being established. A draft plan change and town centre plan will now be prepared following this consultation. A full plan change will be notified later in the year.
- Detailed designs for the Masons Lane and Eva/Leeds Streets projects have been completed.
- The first tranche of special housing areas approved by Council in the first quarter have now been approved by Government as part of the implementation of the Wellington Housing Accord.
- Retailers on Bond Street launched a website [bondstcollective.co.nz](http://bondstcollective.co.nz) to complement the activation project.
- Enabling works for the Transmission Gully project have begun.

#### SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES IN PERFORMANCE<sup>8</sup>:

##### SERVICE DELIVERY

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Variance Explanation
Land Information Memorandums (LIMs) issued within 10 days	74%	100%	(26%)	Performance was affected by continued high work volumes and training of new staff, which was undertaken this quarter.
Earthquake strengthened council buildings: programme achievement	Partially-Achieved	Achieved	n/a	Partially achieved due to delays in work on the Town Hall and Portico.

##### NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE

Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
6.1 Urban Planning and Policy	8,887	8,792	(95)	12,011	11,951
6.2 Building & Development Control	6,234	5,622	(612)	8,336	7,319
Building and Resource consent volumes and income lower than budgeted.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>15,121</b>	<b>14,413</b>	<b>(707)</b>	<b>20,346</b>	<b>19,270</b>

<sup>8</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
6.1 Urban Planning and Policy	10,050	8,931	(1,119)	21,531	17,500
Victoria Street and Parliamentary Precinct projects - external funding received not included in original budgets.					
6.2 Building & Development Control	3,379	5,106	1,727	4,183	5,558
Under budget as the Earthquake Strengthening programme is behind schedule.					
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>13,430</b>	<b>14,037</b>	<b>608</b>	<b>25,714</b>	<b>23,058</b>

## 7. TRANSPORT

### Waka

**We manage the transport network so it is sustainable, safe and efficient.**

#### WHAT WE DO

- Transport
- Parking.

#### HIGHLIGHTS OF THIS QUARTER

##### Parking

- The parking sensor trial commenced in Blair and Allen streets with sensors embedded into the pavement. Customers can now enter their parking space number at the pay machine with no need to go back to their car to place a ticket on their dashboard. The trial will conclude in June 2015.

##### Transport

This quarter we:

- completed 5.4km footpath renewal against a target of 6.5km. The planned annual total for footpath renewal is 25km.
- completed 2.9km kerb and channel renewals against a target of 3.0km. The planned annual total for kerb and channel renewal is 12.0km.
- repaired or replaced nearly 6,000 signs and poles and 1.6km of handrails.
- undertook repairs at 18 of our bus shelters and maintained Lambton Interchange.
- installed and repaired 24 items of street furniture (seats, bins, cycle racks)
- maintained and/or renewed 41 'Give Way' triangles, 117 turning arrows, 6km of centre lines and 662 cats-eyes.
- replaced 14 faded accessibility parking symbols
- approved 1,730 Corridor Access Requests for utility network maintenance and other temporary activities on the transport network, monitoring activity as appropriate.
- provided nearly 600 approvals for significant temporary traffic management plans.
- completed lighting design work for the Cuba Mall lighting upgrade.

#### SIGNIFICANT VARIANCES IN PERFORMANCE<sup>9</sup>:

##### SERVICE DELIVERY

Measure	Actual	Target	Var	Variance Explanation
Quarry – legislative compliance	Not-achieved	Achieved	n/a	This quarter, there were two non-compliant events. The first incident, which occurred on 17 February, was an environmental breach of consent relating to the quality of water discharged to the stream. This breach resulted in a warning only from GWRC (no formal enforcement action was taken). The quarry operator responded to the incident by installing an additional valve which will prevent a similar incident from occurring again in the future. The second incident occurred on 16 March, when heavy rainfall resulted in significant surface run-off and floodwater entering the stream. The quarry operator tested the water entering the stream and identified that the suspended solids concentration was 209g/m <sup>3</sup> (120g/m <sup>3</sup> is permitted). GWRC was notified and took no action as the event was deemed to be beyond the quarry operator's control.

<sup>9</sup> Areas where performance varied from budgeted expectations by more than 10%.

**NET OPERATING EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
7.1 Transport	27,652	29,009	1,357	38,449	39,114
Year to date and forecast variance mainly relates to savings on insurance costs and depreciation, following the revaluation of infrastructure assets.					
7.2 Parking	(10,503)	(10,473)	29	(14,044)	(14,086)
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>17,149</b>	<b>18,536</b>	<b>1,387</b>	<b>24,405</b>	<b>25,028</b>

**CAPITAL EXPENDITURE**

Outcome Description	YTD			Full Year	
	Actual \$000	Budget \$000	Variance \$000	Forecast \$000	Budget \$000
7.1 Transport	28,478	30,564	2,086	42,492	39,623
Delays in several projects, including the Karori Road wall and Island Bay Cycleway network					
7.2 Parking	44	73	29	120	180
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>28,522</b>	<b>30,637</b>	<b>2,115</b>	<b>42,612</b>	<b>39,803</b>



---

## **5. Operational**

---

### **VICTORIA STREET TRANSFORMATION - PARK NAMING**

---

#### **Purpose**

1. To seek the Committee's agreement to the proposed name of the new park on the corner of Victoria and Vivian Streets.

#### **Summary**

2. As part of the Victoria Street transformation we have created one new park and upgraded one existing park.
3. The new park located on the corner of Victoria Street and Vivian Street requires a name. The other park on the corner of Dixon and Victoria Street will still be named 'Volunteer Corner'.
4. We have engaged with iwi. They have suggested the name Te Niho Park.
5. The proposed name aligns with the Open Spaces Naming Policy Kaupapa Whakainga Whenua Mahorahora (naming policy).

#### **Recommendations**

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.
2. Agree that the area identified in attachment 1 of this report be named 'Te Niho Park'.
3. Note that signage will be developed and installed as part of the Victoria Street transformation project.
6. Council's Open Space Naming Policy (adopted in 2001) guides the way Council determines names for open spaces.
7. Under the policy, when a new or unnamed open space needs to be officially named, the Council will, in the first instance, discuss with iwi whether the site is of significance to them. If it is, an appropriate name will be determined in conjunction with iwi.
8. If the open space holds little or no significance for iwi, or if iwi wish to consider the possibility of joint Maori-European naming, then the policy provides a process for recommending an appropriate name for consideration.
9. The Open Space Naming Policy's decision making framework requires officers to:
  - a. Determine if there are names in common usage.
  - b. Determine if any names have already been suggested.
  - c. Seek additional suggestions through targeted consultation, having regard to Council's Consultation Policy, with:
    - i. Local historians
    - ii. Local community groups
    - iii. Community boards in their respective areas
    - iv. Developers where appropriate

10. The suggested names are then considered against the policy's Style Guide and ranked against the weighted selection criteria.
11. As part of the Victoria Street transformation project we have developed a new open space on the corner of Victoria and Vivian Streets. It is important that we name this space to reflect the identity of the local area within the city and to ensure ease of identification for Council and the public.
12. Through Council's Treaty team we have met with Port Nicholson Block Settlement Trust and asked them to consider the park and whether it had significance to iwi.
13. The area has significance to iwi as the park is in the vicinity of the former Waimapihi Stream which also has links back to Ngai Tara. As such they responded with the name Te Niho Park or Te Niho o Te Whanganui a Tara. The reasons for the name are:
  - The slither of a park is shaped like a tooth. Te Niho in direct translation means 'the tooth'.
  - Te Niho is a name that ties back to Parihaka, so it carries a sense of Taranaki. Te Niho o Te Ātiawa is the name of one of the whare.
  - Tara Nihoniho harkens back to Ngai Tara who had a presence in Wellington thus Te Whanganui a Tara.
  - It could also be Te Niho o Te Whanganui a Tara, which will tie it into all of those things above and denote the difference between the Te Ātiawa whare and this park.
  - This name was gifted by Peter Jackson and Kura Moeahu.

## Discussion

14. The land under discussion is road reserve and to date, the land has never been officially named with a common name, simply a reference to the carpark which was located there.
15. No wider consultation about the proposed name has been done.
16. The proposed name passes all of the "rules" listed in the naming policy style guide. There are no alternative names proposed that require use of the selection criteria.

## Next Actions

17. Following the adoption of the name, the design and installation of signage on site will occur. This will be carried out in co-ordination with the Victoria Street works due for completion in early July.

## Attachments

Attachment 1. Land Area

Page 300

Author	Anna Harley, Senior Urban Designer
Authoriser	Anthony Wilson, Chief Asset Officer

---

## **SUPPORTING INFORMATION**

### **Consultation and Engagement**

We have not undertaken consultation and engagement on this proposal, however Port Nicholson Settlement Block Trust provided the name as per the open Space Naming Policy requirements.

### **Treaty of Waitangi considerations**

Port Nicholson Settlement Block Trust support the proposed name.

### **Financial implications**

None.

### **Policy and legislative implications**

The proposed name aligns with Council's Open Space Naming Policy Kaupapa Whakaingoa Whenua Mahorahora (2001).

### **Risks / legal**

None.

### **Climate Change impact and considerations**

None.

### **Communications Plan**

Not required.

Item 5.1 Attachment 1



---

## **FORWARD PROGRAMME 2015**

---

### **Purpose**

1. To present the Environment Committee with the forward programme, outlining the papers that will be considered by the Committee in 2015.

### **Recommendation**

That the Environment Committee:

1. Receive the information.

### **Discussion**

2. The forward programme reflects organisational and political priorities and emerging issues that requires decisions from the Environment Committee. The forward programme attached outlines the work programme of the Committee for this year.

### **Attachments**

Attachment 1. Forward Programme

Page 302

Author	Cara des Landes, Governance Advisor
Authoriser	Helga Sheppard, Acting Governance Team Leader

**Thursday, 6 August 2015**

DEADLINES			
Date due to interested ELT member for review	Date due to ELT member for approval	Date due to Democratic Services by 9am (agenda build date)	Agenda release to Councillors
Friday, 24 July 2015	Monday, 27 July 2015	Wednesday, 29 July 2015	Friday, 31 July 2015

Environment Committee				
Report Title	Description	Portfolio	Officer	ELT Member Responsible
Our Living City Fund	Recommendations for the Our Living City Fund		Mark Farrar	Greg Orchard
Camping Bylaw: Oral hearings	Oral hearings on the Camping Bylaw		Nigel Taptiklis	Greg Orchard

**Thursday, 17 September 2015**

DEADLINES			
Date due to interested ELT member for review	Date due to ELT member for approval	Date due to Democratic Services by 9am (agenda build date)	Agenda release to Councillors
Friday, 4 September 2015	Monday, 7 September 2015	Wednesday, 9 September 2015	#####

Environment Committee				
Report Title	Description	Portfolio	Officer	ELT Member Responsible
Camping Bylaw: final report on proposed amendments	Agree to recommend the Council adopt the proposed amendments following consultation		Nigel Taptiklis	Greg Orchard

Environment Committee

**Thursday, 15 October 2015**

**DEADLINES**

Date due to interested ELT member for review	Date due to ELT member for approval	Date due to Democratic Services by 9am (agenda build date)	Agenda release to Councillors
Friday, 2 October 2015	Monday, 5 October 2015	Wednesday, 7 October 2015	Friday, 9 October 2015

**Environment Committee**

Report Title	Description	Portfolio	Officer	ELT Member Responsible
CCOs - Annual Reports	Annual reports from the Zoo, Zealandia and Wellington Water		Richard Hardie/Warwick Hayes	Derek Fry

**Thursday, 26 November 2015**

**DEADLINES**

Date due to interested ELT member for review	Date due to ELT member for approval	Date due to Democratic Services by 9am (agenda build date)	Agenda release to Councillors
Friday, 13 November 2015	Monday, 16 November 2015	Wednesday, 18 November 2015	#####

**Environment Committee**

Report Title	Description	Portfolio	Officer	ELT Member Responsible
CCOs - Q1 reports	Quarter one reports from Zoo, Zealandia and Wellington Water		Richard Hardie/Warwick Hayes	Derek Fry
CCOs - Letters of expectation	Letters of expectation from Zoo and Zealandia.		Richard Hardie/Warwick Hayes	Derek Fry
Our Living City Fund- October 2015	Consider recommendation and allocate funding		Mark Farrar	Greg Orchard

**To be scheduled**

**Environment Committee**

Report Title	Description	Portfolio	Officer	ELT Member Responsible
Preliminary work on possible options to remediate the Houghton Valley leachate	Oral Report			
Drinking Water Fountains	Oral Report		Paul Andrews	Greg Orchard

Environment Committee

**Item 5.2 Attachment 1**

Review of the Trade Waste bylaw	Legislative requirement to review by 2016. No significant problems with current bylaw. Trade Waste bylaw likely to be updated in 2015/16 to reflect the regional integration of trade waste regulation and Capacity's roles in this.		Wellington Water Ltd	Anthony Wilson
Feasibility of building a pipeline under the harbour and a reservoir at the Prince of Wales Park	Oral Report to inform decision-making as part of LTP		Greater Wellington	Anthony Wilson
City Growth Agenda	Evaluate natural environmental impacts (water, waste, climate change and the general environment)		Danny McComb	Derek Fry
Strategic Transport documents	Environmental impacts: Regional Land Transport Strategy, Government Transport Policy Statement, Public Transport Spine Study. Specific Transport Projects: Petone to Granada, Mt Vic Duplicated Tunnel, Cycling Infrastructure		Geoff Swainson	Anthony Wilson
District Plan Review	Appropriate chapters relating to the Natural Environment - briefing for councillors and chance for input. Decisions will be made by the Transport and Urban Development Committee		Alison Newbald	Anthony Wilson
South Coast Management Plan review			Mike Oates	Greg Orchard
Porirua Harbour and Catchment Strategy			Malcolm Sparrow	
Spicer's Recreation Park			Mike Oates	Greg Orchard
Wellington Plan	Updates on progress of Spatial Plan Natural environment impacts		Warren Ulusele	Anthony Wilson
Our Living City update			Zach Rissel	Director Policy and External Relations
Miramar Peninsula			Warren Ulusele	Anthony Wilson
International Peace Symbol in the Botanic Gardens.	Resolution from June Committee: Request Officers work with Mr Tingey to look at an alternative site and design options for a peace symbol and report back to the Environment Committee.		David Sole	